

**MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND SCIENCE OF UKRAINE**  
**UNIVERSITY OF CUSTOMS AND FINANCE**  
Faculty of Economics, Business and International Relations  
Department of International Economic Relations and Regional Studies

**TEXTBOOK**  
**FOR STUDYING OF FOREIGN LANGUAGE**  
**(ENGLISH)**

for preparation of the specialists of higher education of degree «bachelor»  
area of knowledge 29 «International Relations»  
specialty 291 «International Relations, Social Communications and  
Regional Studios»

Dnipro  
2021

Textbook for studying of foreign language (English) for preparation of the specialists of higher education of degree «bachelor» of the knowledge area 29 «International relations», specialty 291 «International relations, social communications and regional studios» / compilers: Parshyna M.Y., Parshyna O.A. Dnipro: University of Customs and Finance, 2021. 329 p.

Textbook must be followed during lectures, practical classes and independent student's work of foreign language (English) for preparation of the specialists of higher education of degree «bachelor» of the knowledge area 29 «International relations», specialty 291 «International relations, social communications and regional studios».

Compilers:

**Parshyna Marharyta Yuriivna**, PhD in Economics, Associate Professor of the Department of International Economic Relations and Regional Studies of the University of Customs and Finance.

**Parshyna Olena Anatoliivna**, Doctor of Economic Sciences, Professor, Professor of Cyber security and Information Technology Department, Professor of the Department of International Economic Relations and Regional Studies of the University of Customs and Finance, Academician of the Academy of Economic Sciences of Ukraine

## CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION .....	4
<b>PART I. COUNTRY RESEARCH</b> .....	<b>5</b>
I. METHODOLOGICAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR SEMINAR (PRACTICAL) CLASSES .....	5
II. METHODOLOGICAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR STUDENTS' INDEPENDENT WORK .....	58
<b>PART II. INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS</b> .....	<b>88</b>
I. METHODOLOGICAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR SEMINAR (PRACTICAL) CLASSES .....	88
II. METHODOLOGICAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR STUDENTS' INDEPENDENT WORK .....	126
<b>PART III. THEORY OF TRANSLATION</b> .....	<b>157</b>
I. METHODOLOGICAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR SEMINAR (PRACTICAL) CLASSES .....	157
II. METHODOLOGICAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR STUDENTS' INDEPENDENT WORK .....	180
III. CHECK OF KNOWLEDGE .....	186
<b>PART IV. SOCIAL COMMUNICATIONS</b> .....	<b>192</b>
I. METHODOLOGICAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR SEMINAR (PRACTICAL) CLASSES .....	192
II. METHODOLOGICAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR STUDENTS' INDEPENDENT WORK .....	272
EXAM.....	305
REFERENCES .....	328

## INTRODUCTION

Textbook intend to mastering of the four parts: «Country research», «International relations», «Theory of translation» and «Social communications». They are worked out for students on specialty «International Relations, Social Communications and Regional Studios» and aimed to develop the students` ability to the proper translation.

Textbook acquaint students with the most important issues related to international relations and the peculiarities of the world international industries.

The purpose of studying of these disciplines is to master students` vocabulary, phonetics, grammar of modern business English, writing and speaking skills based on the acquired language knowledge of the students; study specialized economic terminology, familiarization of specifics of economic translation literature; formation of skills and abilities of communication on professional subjects, drawing up of contracts, business letters, bank documents, ability to work with the English-language press and professional literature.

The main task of studying these disciplines are the formation of communicative competence, which has several components: linguistic, sociolinguistic, sociocultural, social and discursive. Familiarization of this knowledge promotes the professional development competence of the future specialists, which means the ability to act successfully on the basis of practical experience, skills and knowledge in solving professional tasks.

Tasks are made on the basis of modern requirements taking into account development communicative competence. Methodical recommendations correspond to modern requirements of the educational literature.

Textbook are designed for professionals in international industries who need English for their job and wish to increase their professional competence via English, develop their speaking skills in international relations, social communications and regional studios.

## PART I. COUNTRY RESEARCH

### I. METHODOLOGICAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR SEMINAR (PRACTICAL) CLASSES

#### UNIT 1. Researching a Country

##### Task 1. Learn the verbs used in the professional and scientific texts:

**1) accompaniment** (noun): a food eaten with a main dish

- *Sunday roast can be served with accompaniments like Yorkshire pudding, gravy and cauliflower cheese.*

**2) afternoon tea** (noun): a light afternoon meal of tea with finger sandwiches, cakes or scones

- *There's a tea house nearby if you'd like afternoon tea.*

**3) bangers and mash** (noun): British meal of sausages, mashed potatoes, onions in gravy and green peas

- *I really love bangers and mash.*

**4) black pudding** (noun): a sausage made of pork fat, pork blood and oatmeal, usually sliced and fried

- *Does your full breakfast come with black pudding?*

**5) bread and butter pudding** (noun): a baked dessert made of stale bread, raisins and custard

- *We used all the old bread to make a bread and butter pudding.*

**6) British Isles** (noun): the islands of Great Britain, Ireland and over six thousand other smaller islands

- *The Republic of Ireland and the United Kingdom are both in the British Isles.*

**7) cauliflower cheese** (noun): a baked savoury dish of cauliflower and cheese sauce

- *I'll heat up the leftover cauliflower cheese.*

**8) Devonshire tea (also «Cornish cream tea»)** (noun): afternoon tea with fresh scones, clotted cream and jam - *We had Devonshire tea in a little tea house in the gardens.*

**9) fish and chips** (noun): a popular British meal of deep-fried fish and potato chips

- *You'll have to try fish and chips while you're in England.*

**10) full English breakfast or full breakfast** (noun): English-style breakfast of eggs, bacon, sausage, toast, baked beans, etc.

- *I'll have the full breakfast with scrambled eggs and tea, thanks.*

**11) gravy** (noun): a sauce made from the juices of cooked meat

- *Is there any more gravy?*

**12) haggis** (noun): a Scottish dish made from the stomach and other organs of a sheep

- *Do you really want to order haggis?*

**13) Irish stew** (noun): a stew made of mutton, potatoes, carrots and onions

- *The Irish stew here is really delicious.*

**14) mulligatawny** (noun): a spicy Indian-style soup

- *Mum made mulligatawny soup and we loved it.*

**15) pasty or Cornish pasty** (noun): a baked food made by folding pastry around a savoury vegetable filling with or without meat

- *I can make vegetarian pasties if you like.*

**16) pub (also «tavern»)** (noun): a place that serves alcoholic drinks and food typical of the British Isles

- *Everyone goes to the pub for a drink after work.*

**17) roast vegetables** (noun): vegetables baked in a pan, often served with roast meat

- *The roast vegetables were perfect as usual.*

**18) shepherd's pie** (noun): a baked dish of minced lamb or mutton covered with a layer of mashed potato

- *You haven't tried shepherd's pie yet, have you?*

**19) stale** (adjective): no longer fresh, esp. of bread, cakes, pastries, etc.

- *I'll throw this stale bread out unless it's for bread and butter pudding.*

**20) steak and kidney pie** (noun): a pie filled with diced beef, kidney, fried onions and gravy

- *One of Britain's most famous foods is steak and kidney pie.*

**21) Sunday roast (also «roast dinner»)** (noun): roast meat and vegetables with gravy, often with other dishes like Yorkshire pudding

- *Please join us for our traditional Sunday roast.*

**22) Welsh rarebit (original name «Welsh rabbit»)** (noun): a savoury dish of toasted bread and cheese sauce

- *For some Welsh rarebit recipes you also need mustard and Worcestershire sauce.*

**23) Yorkshire pudding** (noun): a baked food made with eggs, flour and water or milk

- *Yorkshire pudding has very little flavour, so you have to eat it with gravy or a sauce.*

**Task 2. Read the text «British Food». Make the questions as many as you can so that your colleagues could answer them after reading the text.**

## **British Food**

Places that serve traditional British food can now be found in most of the world's big cities. International hotels usually offer a **full English breakfast** of eggs, bacon, sausage and toast, plus a choice of fried tomatoes, mushrooms, baked beans and a British blood sausage called **black pudding**. Most big hotels also have one or two British dishes on their dinner menus. But if you want to explore British food while practising your English, find somewhere with a name like *The Royal Oak* or *The Rose and Thistle* or *The King's Tavern*. These places model themselves on British **pubs** and serve many of the same drinks and meals that pubs across the **British Isles** serve.

### **Meals for Britain's poor**

When asked for an example of British food, many people think of **fish and chips**. There are thousands of takeaway fish and chip shops all across the British Isles selling deep-fried fish in batter and potato chips. Like many British dishes, fish and chips began as a cheap meal for poor workers who had to survive on the very low wages their wealthy upper-class employers paid them. Takeaway fish and chips are still cheap, but more expensive versions are also now served in up-market restaurants and pubs. These can include **accompaniments** like prawns, calamari, oysters, coleslaw, salads and various sauces.

Another famous British pub meal is **bangers and mash**. This also began as a meal for the poor, consisting of nothing but sausages in onion **gravy** plus mashed potatoes, with green peas sometimes added. Sausages are generally cheaper than meats like beef and steak, so the poor ate dishes like bangers and mash instead of dishes like beef Wellington and **steak and kidney pie**. Vegetables are also generally cheaper than meats, so the poor often ate vegetable-based foods like the Cornish **pasty** that was made by folding pastry around a spicy filling of diced vegetables with just a little meat added when possible.

Many of the most famous British desserts were also invented by poor people. One of these is **bread and butter pudding** which is made with **stale** bread that would otherwise be wasted. The stale bread is put in a baking dish and covered in custard, with raisins sometimes added as well. Even though it's cheap and easy to make, many people say bread and butter pudding is one of their favourite desserts.

For most people the best meal of the week was eaten after church on Sundays. It was usually a big roast dinner called a **Sunday roast**, and this is still one of the most popular British meals. It consists of roasted meat, usually beef, lamb or chicken, with gravy and **roast vegetables** such as potatoes, onions, carrots and parsnips. A

Sunday roast can also include accompaniments like **Yorkshire pudding**, green peas or beans, broccoli, and a baked dish called **cauliflower cheese**.

### **Meals from Britain's past**

Since the 17th century the British have used their military power to invade and control countries all over Africa and Asia. They didn't often eat the local food, but in India they discovered dishes that were so delicious they took them back home. Some, like chutney, chicken vindaloo, kedgeree and a spicy soup called **mulligatawny**, became so popular that many people now think they're traditional British foods.

The British forced Indian farmers to grow crops for British traders instead of food for their families. This caused food shortages and huge famines in India, but it also helped the British make huge profits and become even richer. One of these crops was tea, and the tea trade led to the British custom of taking **afternoon tea** in expensive tea houses where the wealthy enjoyed cups of tea with delicious cakes, delicate pastries and finger sandwiches. Afternoon tea is still part of British life, and one of the most popular forms is **Devonshire tea** in which tea is served with freshly-baked scones, jam and clotted cream.

British food includes dishes from many parts of the British Isles, and like the dishes mentioned above, these dishes also reflect the past in various ways. After England invaded Ireland in the 17th century, they used Irish land, crops and farm animals to feed English armies. This made Irish people so poor that their main food became the potato, one of the cheapest foods at the time. And to this day many of the most famous Irish dishes are based on potatoes, including **Irish stew**, a simple dish of potatoes, mutton, carrots and onions, and **shepherd's pie** in which a mixture of minced meat and diced vegetables is covered with a thick layer of mashed potato. Famous dishes from other parts of the British Isles include **haggis**, a Scottish dish made of sheep stomach and other internal organs, and **Welsh rarebit**, a savoury dish from Wales made of bread covered in cheese sauce.

**Task 3. Read the professional talk of tour guides and name the epithets describing the preferable way of talk in the speech of tour guide. Find information about professional skills of tour guide and name them.**

### **Professional Skills of Tour Guide**

**Characters:** Daisy Smith and Thomas Anderson

**Daisy:** Hello, Thomas. Nice to meet you.

**Thomas:** Nice to meet you too, Daisy. I haven't seen you in a while.

**Daisy:** I've become a tour guide in Europe.

**Thomas:** Ah, tell me about it! That's must have been interesting!

**Daisy:** It's great, but not easy. Tour guiding or, rather, conducting tours, requires a lot of professional skills of being a tour leader, public speaking, accurateness, necessity of knowing your topic and audience. You have to keep your talk light and positive, personalise information.

**Thomas:** And it's also the way how you say it all. The presented information doesn't have to be too serious, boring, but it does have to be witty and humorous. By the way, had you practiced before conducting your first tour?

**Daisy:** Yes, very much. I had learned everything by heart. During the walking tour I never read notes, although I always carry a clipboard. There are also some other tips about conducting tours.

**Thomas:** Perhaps, we'll discuss them next time, if you're in a hurry?

**Daisy:** All right.

## UNIT 2. Environmental Issues

### Task 1. Look again through the text in unit 1. Make the test.

- 1) One of the most famous British meals is fish and \_\_\_\_\_ .
  - a) rice
  - b) spaghetti
  - c) chips
- 2) Which are not part of a full English breakfast?
  - a) pancakes
  - b) sausages
  - c) eggs
- 3) Which is a dessert?
  - a) bread and butter pudding
  - b) Yorkshire pudding
  - c) black pudding
- 4) Shepherd's pie is a dish of minced \_\_\_\_\_ covered with mashed potato.
  - a) fish or lobster
  - b) lamb or mutton
  - c) shepherds
- 5) Tea served with freshly-baked scones, jam and clotted cream is called
  - a) high tea
  - b) English tea
  - c) Devonshire tea
- 6) Which is a Scottish dish made of sheep stomach and other internal organs?
  - a) haggis
  - b) yakitori
  - c) stomach pie

7) Bangers and mash is a meal of \_\_\_\_\_ with mashed potato, onions and gravy.

- a) very hot chillies
- b) roasted meats
- c) sausages

8) From which former British colony did mulligatawny soup come?

- a) Nigeria
- b) India
- c) Jamaica

9) Which is another word for «pub»?

- a) publican
- b) tavern
- c) court

10) What's the opposite of «stale»?

- a) ripe
- b) fresh
- c) hard

**Task 2. Fill the gaps in the sentences using the correct words and phrases from the box below.**

<i>word of mouth</i>	<i>efficiently</i>	<i>potential</i>	<i>return</i>	<i>bankruptcy</i>
<i>anticipate</i>	<i>effectively</i>	<i>warehouse</i>	<i>incur</i>	<i>stockpiled</i>

1) A \_\_\_\_\_ customer is someone who doesn't yet buy from you but might do in the future.

2) To \_\_\_\_\_ a situation is when you know that something is going to happen and act before it does.

3) \_\_\_\_\_ is when people talk about something (e.g. a new product) among themselves, so that it becomes known.

4) When a large quantity of products are stored ready for use, they are \_\_\_\_\_.

5) A \_\_\_\_\_ is a place where goods are stored.

6) When your actions mean you have to pay for something (usually unnecessarily), you \_\_\_\_\_ costs.

7) When you do something \_\_\_\_\_, you do it in a way that does not waste time, effort or money.

8) When you do something \_\_\_\_\_, you do it in a way that produces the effect you intended.

9) A \_\_\_\_\_ on investment is the profit you make when you invest in something.

10) \_\_\_\_\_ is when a company or person can't pay what they owe.

**Task 3. Read the text «Communication» and make questions to it. Let your colleagues answer them.**

### **Communication**

Communication is an interactive process including perception and exchange of information, its transmission and comprehension. We achieve communication at the levels of practical aspects, subjects, and relations. In the case if the cultural background is similar or the same, communication is achieved without any difficulties. Problems arise if the cultural backgrounds of communicators differ.

Communication comprises several stages. At the first stage one of the speakers initializes the process of communication.

The second stage means spoken language or transmitted information. We call it encoding. At the third stage the communicator produces the physical product such as, for example, writing the letter. At the fourth stage we can differentiate standardised products, e. g.: books, journals; partially standardised products, e. g.: letters; and non-standardised products, e. g.: telephone conversations. The fifth stage is decoding information. At the sixth stage the receiver gets and interprets information in accordance with its group in the society, including cultural group and individuality. Feedback is succeeded at the seventh stage.

**Task 4. Study the list of the evaluative adjectives. Find or guess the meaning of the words. Analyse their derivation.**

*Adjectives of evaluation:* comprehensive, detailed, different, extensive, external, favourable, final, formal, formative, future, good, independent, individual, initial, internal negative objective, periodic, personal, poor, positive, previous, psychological, qualitative, quantitative, recent, regular, retrospective, scientific, separate, specific, statistical, subjective, subsequent, such, summative, systematic.

**Task 5. Arrange the words to make the sentence.**

1. Summer, France, travelled, in, last, I, solo.
2. Me, singing, greatly, and, music, impressed, Thai.
3. Glorious, Ancient, the, saw, friend, of, my, Rome, sights.
4. Stayed, hotel, Thailand, I, 4-star, in, the, at, modern.
5. Amenities, airport, hotel, at, an, among, there, shuttle, the, was.

### **UNIT 3. Natural Resources**

**Task 1. Read the words denoting the levels of communication and pronounce them.**

- 1) be aware of;

*I am aware of four levels of communication. I am also aware of their content.*

**2) break;**

*Paraverbal communication deals with problems of breaks during the talk. In some cultures, the breaks are long, but in others they are extremely short.*

**3) frequency;**

*Frequency is referred to the fourth level of communication. This level also includes frequency of transmission.*

**4) language;**

*Body of language is the first level of communication. There is a variety of languages in the world.*

**5) level;**

*Some scientists consider that there are three levels of communication. All these levels are closely connected.*

**6) mode;**

*Mode of transmission is also a part of the fourth level of communication. There can be simplex, half-duplex and full-duplex data transmission or data communication modes.*

**7) reveal;**

*Nonverbal communication clearly reveals itself. It reveals itself at the third level.*

**8) sound;**

*Sounds include vowels and consonants. We study sounds at the level of paraverbal communication.*

**9) stress;**

*Stress is important in words. Stress makes an impact on the meaning of the words.*

**10) syllable;**

*Prosody studies such elements of speech as, for example, syllables. Syllables are units of speech.*

**11) utterance;**

*My friend's utterances are experienced. My other friend's utterances are knowledgeable.*

**12) volume;**

*Volume of sounds is significant in paraverbal communication. Volume is vital in sound waves.*

**Task 2. Read the text about Organic Foods. Discuss it with your colleagues.**

### **Organic Foods**

**Organic** food is very popular these days. It can also be very **expensive**. Some organic food costs twice as much as non-organic food. Parents of young children, and even some pet owners, will pay high prices for organic food if they think it's healthier. But many others think organic food is just a **waste of money**.

There is one main difference between organic and non-organic food. Organic farms do not use **agricultural** chemicals such as **pesticides** that stop insects from damaging crops. In many countries foods that claim to be organic must have special **labels** that guarantee they're grown organically.

Some people think organic also means «locally grown», and originally this was true. But over time organic farming has become big business, with many organic foods now being grown by large agricultural companies that sell their products far from where they're grown. **Processed** food made with organic **ingredients** has also become more popular. At first, only small companies **produced** these products. But as **demand** overtook **supply**, big food companies that had been selling non-organic products for many years also began selling organic products. Small organic food companies found it difficult to compete with these big companies, and many didn't **stay in business** much longer.

Is organic food safer and more **nutritious**? This is an important part of the **debate**. Many farmers and **consumers** believe it is. They think agricultural chemicals can cause serious illnesses like cancer, but there isn't much **evidence** proving this is true. However recent studies have shown that eating organically-grown **produce** reduces your chances of developing heart disease. Many doctors think it's more important to stop dangerous bacteria from **contaminating** foods. These bacteria can contaminate both organic and non-organic fruit and vegetables, and doctors recommend washing produce carefully before eating it. Meat, fish and chicken can also become contaminated, so washing your hands before **handling** these foods is also very important. Many doctors also believe we should reduce the amount of sugar in our diets, and there is a lot of evidence to support this idea. They recommend carefully checking the list of ingredients on processed food and drinks for all the words that really mean sugar, like glucose, sucrose and fructose. And they remind us that the aim of most big food companies is to make lots of money, even if they damage our health while doing so. This means processed foods that are called «organic» can also be very unhealthy if they contain lots of sugar.

Most people agree that naturally grown food tastes better. Is tastier food worth the extra money? That's a matter of opinion. Whether organic food is healthier or not is still not clear, so more research is needed. However, consumers of organic food often say «**better safe than sorry**» when it comes to what we eat.

### Task 3. Memorise the words from the text above.

Word	Meaning
<b>agricultural</b> <i>adj.</i>	related to farming
<b>bacteria</b> <i>noun</i>	tiny organisms that can live in our bodies
<b>better safe than sorry</b> <i>idiom</i>	being careful is better than taking risks

<b>Word</b>	<b>Meaning</b>
<b>consumer</b> <i>noun</i>	a person who buys something
<b>contaminate</b> <i>verb</i>	to make something a carrier of disease
<b>debate</b> <i>noun</i>	a discussion in which opposing ideas or arguments are expressed
<b>demand</b> <i>noun</i>	a product's popularity as shown by the number of people who want it
<b>evidence</b> <i>noun</i>	facts that prove something is true
<b>expensive</b> <i>adj.</i>	highly-priced or costing a lot of money
<b>handle</b> <i>verb</i>	to touch, hold or move with the hands
<b>ingredients</b> <i>noun</i>	the different foods, spices, etc used to make a meal or a dish
<b>label</b> <i>noun</i>	the sticker, tag, etc. with information about a product
<b>nutritious</b> <i>adj.</i>	good for your health (of food and drinks only)
<b>organic</b> <i>adj.</i>	grown naturally without the use of pesticides
<b>pesticide</b> <i>noun</i>	a chemical that stops insects from destroying crops
<b>produce</b> <i>noun</i>	food that comes from a farm, like fruits, vegetables, eggs, meat, etc.
<b>produce</b> <i>verb</i>	to make or create something
<b>process</b> <i>verb</i>	to make something with technology and machines in a factory
<b>stay in business</b> <i>idiom</i>	to survive (of a company or person in business)
<b>supply</b> <i>noun</i>	the amount or number of products ready to be sold
<b>waste of money</b> <i>idiom</i>	a poor choice when spending money

**Task 4. Arrange the words to make the sentence.**

1. Reserve, would, an, like, airline, to, I, ticket.

2. Airlines, the, serves, airport, fifty.
3. Plane, to, Terminal, have, the, you, at, 4, board.
4. Disabled, the, provides, Heathrow, passengers, for, airport, amenities.
5. Germany, will, with, he, to, Lufthansa, fly.

**Note:** Lufthansa is the biggest and the most well-known German air company.

**Task 5. Read the text «Organic Foods» again. Make the test.**

1) What is the main difference between organic and non-organic food?

- a) use of pesticides
- b) size of the company
- c) location of the farm

2) Which is usually more expensive?

- a) pet food
- b) organic food
- c) non-organic food

3) Many small organic food companies found it difficult to \_\_\_\_\_ .

- a) waste money
- b) stay in business
- c) find cheap pesticides

4) Recent studies show that eating organic produce can \_\_\_\_\_ your chances of having heart disease.

- a) develop
- b) increase
- c) reduce

5) Dangerous bacteria can contaminate

- a) organic food only
- b) non-organic food only
- c) organic and non-organic food

6) All processed foods should have a label listing the product's

- a) ingredients
- b) pesticides
- c) organics

7) Many doctors now believe eating too much \_\_\_\_\_ food is bad for our health.

- a) fresh

- b) sweet
- c) organic

8) Processed organic foods can also be unhealthy if they contain lots of

- a) nutritious ingredients
- b) organic produce
- c) glucose

9) The aim of most big food companies is to make the healthiest \_\_\_\_\_ they can.

- a) profits
- b) products
- c) customers

10) Most people agree that naturally grown food tastes

- a) safer
- b) better
- c) worse

**Task 6. Read the text «Splendour of the Greek Islands» and make questions to it. Let your colleagues answer them.**

### **Splendour of the Greek Islands**

Greece is one of the countries attractive for tourists from Europe and the United States. There exist more than six thousand Greek Islands, islets, peninsulas, but only a small amount of them is inhabited and even less serve as the main holiday destinations.

Among the most popular islands are Crete, Corfu, Mykonos, Paros, Rhodes, Santorini, and Samos. Ferries carry people from one island to another. During ferry trips one can enjoy the beauty of the Greek coast and the sea. Holidays in Greece are accessible for most of people and in summer the Greek Islands are overcrowded.

What makes Greece a famous world resort? One of the factors is the splendour of nature, mountains, sea, waterfalls, sand beaches with pebbles. Scuba diving is very popular. Another factor is a cultural one. Greek islands are a paradise for the devotees of antiquity. Castles, early cities, fortresses, monasteries, caves.

Among the top Greek attractions are Acropolis; canyon the Samariá Gorge; Delphi Theatre; medieval village Lindos; Myrtos Beach; Mystras, an antique capital of the Peloponnesus; Parthenon; volcanic island Santorini.

If you choose Athens, the Greek capital, as the travel destination, first see the ancient city of Acropolis with its memorable historical buildings and its new museum. Visit Parthenon, watch the Temple of Athena Nike, tour the National Archeological Museum. Take a walk in the National Garden among flowers and millennial statues.

**Note:** Splendour is the spelling of the British variant (with the letter u); splendor is the spelling of the American variant (without the letter u).

**Task 7. Find information about tourist trip to Greece on the Internet or in books and define specific features of the travel. Present this information to the professor.**

## UNIT 4. Economy

**Task 1. Learn the verbs used in the professional and scientific texts:**

1) **appreciate;**

*Modern society highly appreciates the ability to communicate. This ability is appreciated in various cultures.*

2) **determine;**

*In the process of communication, we determine and take into account social status of communicators. We also have to determine time and space, that is, when and where the process of communication occurs.*

3) **effect;**

*Culture effects communication. It effects its development.*

4) **evolve;**

*Means of communication are constantly evolving. Mediated communication evolves every year.*

5) **interrelate;**

*Culture and communication interrelate. They interrelate on the levels of the speaker, receiver and environment.*

6) **make an impact;**

*Communication makes an impact on culture. Intention of the speaker makes an impact on communication.*

7) **motivate;**

*The result of communication is better when it is motivated. It is motivated by needs and interests of the parties, which are the participants of communication.*

8) **stimulate;**

*The process of communication is stimulated by mutual agreement of communicators. It is also driven by communication purposes.*

**Task 2. Make the questions to the words in italics.**

1) People recognize *the therapeutic value of being in the water*.

2) This is not a *commercial* facility.

3) Europe is building *wave pools* nowadays.

4) There is a surfing pool *in Arizona*.

5) Point Mallard in Decatur, *Alabama*, is the first pool with oceanlike waves.

6) *Some* of the additions include an aquatic centre, open-air skating rink, etc.

7) The development of the *commercial sites* is becoming more rapid now.

- 8) Private corporations *build* parks as stand-alone attractions.
- 9) *The day of the barren pool environment* is dying.
- 10) New constructions include *interactive water activities*.

**Task 3. Arrange the words to make the sentence.**

1. Purchase, delay, for, reason, of, the, insurance, is, flight, travel.
2. Reason, of, travel, loss, another, purchase, insurance, for, luggage, is.
3. Occurs, weather, breakdown, cancellation, the, or, of, mechanical, to, flight, due.
4. Hotel, and, insurance, accommodation, covers, meals.
5. Transportation, costs, during, insurance, delays, airline, covers.

**Task 4. Read about the nature of Switzerland. Find additional information. Choose the landscapes you like best. Say whom you would advise to visit these places and why. Give your opinion.**

### Mountainous Nature of Switzerland

Switzerland is one of the countries of Central Europe loved and visited by thousands of tourists every year.

What attracts tourists from the whole world? Does Switzerland have a rich culture with its famous museums, music and watches? Landscapes or sport and leisure? We'll have a look at Switzerland's mountainous nature. What place shall we begin with? If you are fond of roaring water and its splashes, you can choose the Rhine Falls, which had been formed in the Ice Age. From the height of 150 metres the water rushes with the speed of twenty-three metres per second. It's an unforgettable sight!

Or one can choose Simme Falls with the height of 200 metres. Several springs feed the river Simme and they create the cascade over rocks. It's well worth seeing it. The Trümmelbach Falls, the only one among the glacier waterfalls, always carries the melted glacier's water to the valley of seventy-two waterfalls. Enormous rock Creux du Van was shaped by glaciers and brooks. There's an unusual flora both arctic and alpine and there are animals of mountains. Areuse Gorge is also destined for hiking. There are also other gorges with rare orchids and numerous species of birds. Welcome to the mountainous world of Switzerland with its pristine rivers, glaciers, waterfalls, unique flora and fauna!

**Task 5. Insert the adjectives in brackets with the words:**

*as...as, not as...as.*

- 1) My parents are \_\_\_\_\_ yours (not / strict).
- 2) A holiday by the sea is \_\_\_\_\_ the holiday in the mountains (good).
- 3) The weather this month is \_\_\_\_\_ the last month (not / bad).
- 4) The hotel was \_\_\_\_\_ we expected (comfortable).
- 5) This yoghurt is \_\_\_\_\_ the one I bought yesterday (not / tasty).

- 6) Going by ship is \_\_\_\_\_ going by train(interesting).  
 7) Your mobile phone is \_\_\_\_\_ mine (not / trendy).  
 8) Chilean wine is \_\_\_\_\_ Italian (popular).  
 9) Silver is \_\_\_\_\_ gold (not / expensive).  
 10) Swimming is \_\_\_\_\_ rugby (not / violent).

**Task 6. Imagine you are a travel insurance manager. How would you persuade your customers to purchase the insurance policies? Write and present the dialogue between your customer and you as the travel insurance manager.**

## UNIT 5. Culture and People

**Task 1. Choose the correct answer and write down the whole sentence.**

- 1) The chalets have everything a guest could require. They are:  
 a) self-catered;                      c) self-made;  
 b) self-formed;                      d) self-contained.
- 2) The building has fallen into a state of \_\_\_\_\_ and now need a lot of work.  
 a) despair;                              c) disrepair;  
 b) dispersal;                            d) distress.
- 3) The restaurant is closed for two months while it is being:  
 a) renewed;                            c) renovated;  
 b) remade;                              d) reformed.
- 4) There will be ten new bedrooms when the builders finish the \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a) extension;                          c) enlargement;  
 b) extent;                                d) utility.
- 5) Remove the outer skin of the potatoes. It is to:  
 a) peel;                                    c) dice;  
 b) mash;                                  d) cut.

**Task 2. Read the words referring to diversity of cultures and learn them.**

1) **ability;**

*My friend's ability to cultural communication is known to everyone. She is especially successful at paraverbal communication.*

2) **boundary;**

*Each culture exists within its boundaries. It can also exist outside the boundaries.*

**3) community;**

*In the USA a lot of people live within the communities. They have similar ways of communication within their community.*

**4) consequence;**

*The consequence of the world integration is the development of the global culture. The integrity itself is the consequence of the events in the modern informative industrial world.*

**5) capacity, capacity for culture;**

*The capacity for culture is connected with the community. The capacity for similar culture is determined by the homogeneous sets of behaviour within the community.*

**6) diversity;**

*Diversity of cultures is provided by the ways of forming culture. It is also ensured by the capacity for culture.*

**7) due to;**

*Each culture lives due to reproduction of generations. Inclusive education of children can be realised due to the use of computers in learning.*

**8) fission;**

*Fission of cultures occurs due to flexibility of boundaries between the communities. This fission leads to the diversity of cultures.*

**9) set of behavioural traits and rules;**

*Set of behavioural traits and rules is determined by culture of the community. Sets of behavioural traits and rules are transmitted through generations.*

**10) species;**

*Not all living species acquire their culture. Species of apes differ from each other.*

**Task 3. Study the method of creating international projects. Write out the essence of method using the development order.**

### **Key Factors for Development of the International Project**

In development of project in international sphere, at first it is necessary to take account of the cultural heritage of the country, work out and implement national strategy on heritage and cultural tourism.

The cultural heritage includes so many things, such as:

- historical buildings and places;
- oral history and traditions;
- declared heritage sites;
- cultural objects and collections;

- rituals and cultural performances;
- artefacts and crafts;
- art performances and creative arts;
- skills and techniques of fine arts;
- natural and cultural aspects of the environment;
- archeological artefacts;
- cultural values and respect of culture and heritage;
- cultural festivals;
- paleontological remains;
- sacred and spiritual sites.

Next to it, project developers, to make tourism sustainable, have to consider social cohesion, public participation of the local communities and private participation in tourist activities and initiatives. They make the analysis of the demand for cultural tourism, considering socio-demographic characteristics of consumers of Heritage products: age, gender, race, education, and social status.

By the means of situational analysis and comparative studies the specialists in the sphere of tourism make the analysis of current situation and project future developments in this sphere, its monitoring and evaluation with periodic reports, presenting information on current trends and best practices by means of integrated management.

The specialists also determine:

- the approach for execution of strategies;
- purposes and activities;
- development of medium and long-term action plan;
- level of knowledge of existing and potential tourist products;
- expectations of customers for visiting the product;
- services offered, customers' needs and their satisfaction with the products and recommendations for their improvement;
- enhancing the customers' experience in cultural heritage.

**Task 4. Identify which parts of speech the given words belong to and translate them.**

*Whilst, proceed, tranquility, linen, beneath, expect, unique, location, until, haven, provide, combine, shopping, facility, along, locate, exclusive, stay, own, informal, nearby, experience, you, true, a.*

Noun	
Pronoun	
Verb	
Adverb	
Adjective	
Preposition	
Article	

**Task 5. Make the sentences with the words below.**

1. France, make, on, project, will, Jane, a, in, tourism.
2. Paris, of, project, the, sights, includes.
3. Exciting, tour, is, sightseeing, Paris, to.
4. Fascinating, in, performances, art, of, France, are, creative.
5. Cultural, attention, of, collections, attract, French, tourists', objects.

**Task 6. Compare information about Nordic countries. Name similar and different features.****Similar and Different Features of Nordic Countries**

Under the name Nordic countries, we understand Denmark, Finland, Iceland, Norway and Sweden. They have a lot in common, but, at the same time, there are properties that are unique to a particular country.

These countries have the range of characteristics in common:

- geographical situation (Northern Europe, North Atlantic);
- Lutheran Christianity as a belief;
- cooperation in Nordic Council;
- unicameral parliament (all the states) and the monarchy (Denmark, Norway, Sweden);
- developed welfare state apparatus;
- respect of behavioural rules;
- high level of trust, punctuality;
- social cohesion;
- flat hierarchy, dislike of obvious signs of status and frequent use of informal address;
- low level of crime, corruption and conflict;
- rather low population density;
- direct communication, saying what the person thinks, respect of being modest;
- high respect for women.

**UNIT 6. Healthcare****Task 1. Read and translate the text into your own language:****Mobile Phones and their influence on health**

Can talking on a **mobile phone** be **hazardous** to your health? It is difficult to know for sure. Some research suggests that heavy users of mobile phones are at a greater risk of developing cancerous brain tumours. However, many other studies suggest there are no links between cancer and mobile phone use.

The main problem with the current research is that mobile phones have only been popular since the 1990s. As a result, it is impossible to study **long-term exposure** to mobile phones. This concerns many health professionals who point out that certain cancers can take over twenty years to develop. Another concern about these studies is that many have been **funded** by the mobile phone industry or those who benefit from it.

Over five billion people now use mobile phones on a daily basis, and many talk for more than an hour a day. Mobile phone antennas are similar to microwave ovens. While both rely on **electromagnetic radiation** (EMR), the radio waves in mobile phones are lower in frequency. Microwave ovens have radio wave frequencies that are high enough to cook food, and they are also known to be dangerous to human **tissues** like those in the brain. The concern is that the lower-frequency radio waves that mobile phones rely on may also be dangerous. It seems **logical** that holding a heat source near your brain for a long period of time is a potential health hazard.

Some researchers believe that other types of wireless technology may also be dangerous to human health, including cordless phones, wireless **gaming consoles**, and laptop or tablet computers with wireless connections. They suggest replacing all cordless and wireless **devices** with wired ones where possible. They also say that many cordless phones can emit dangerous levels of Electromagnetic Radiation even when they are not in use. They even suggest keeping electronic devices such as desktop and tablet computers out of the bedroom, or at least six feet from the head while we're sleeping.

A growing number of health professionals worldwide are recommending that mobile phone users **err on the side of caution** until more **definitive** studies can be **conducted**. They use the example of **tobacco** to **illustrate** the **potential** risks. Many years ago, people smoked freely and were not concerned about the effects of cigarettes on their health. Today, people know that cigarettes cause lung cancer, though it is still unknown exactly how or why. Some doctors fear that the same thing will happen with mobile phones. In May 2016, the UK's Independent newspaper reported on research by the US government's National Toxicology Program that showed a slight increase in brain tumours among rats exposed to the type of radio frequencies commonly emitted by mobile phones. This doesn't prove that mobile phones can cause brain tumours in humans, but it does show that it's possible. As a result, many experts now recommend texting or using head sets or speaker phones instead of holding a mobile phone to the ear.

**Task 2. Look through the words that have been used in the text above. Write them down in your copybook and remember them.**

Word	Meaning
<b>conduct</b> <i>verb</i>	to carry out an activity like a survey, experiment, musical performance, etc.

<b>Word</b>	<b>Meaning</b>
<b>definitive</b> <i>adj.</i>	certain; unlikely to be challenged or improved upon
<b>device</b> <i>noun</i>	a piece of technology with a specific purpose
<b>electromagnetic radiation (EMR)</b> <i>noun</i>	electromagnetic energy that spreads in waves, incl. light waves, radio waves, microwaves, X-rays, etc.
<b>err on the side of caution</b> <i>idiom</i>	to not take a risk, esp. when you're unsure of the level of danger
<b>fund</b> <i>verb</i>	to provide money or a budget for something
<b>gaming console</b> <i>noun</i>	a hand-held device used for playing video games
<b>hazardous</b> <i>adj.</i>	likely to cause health problems; dangerous
<b>illustrate</b> <i>verb</i>	1. to use examples, evidence, records, etc. to explain something 2. to draw
<b>logical</b> <i>adj.</i>	rational, reasonable or making good sense
<b>long-term exposure</b> <i>phrase</i>	close proximity to a hazard for a long time
<b>mobile phone</b> <i>noun</i>	a wireless telephone with a network connection
<b>potential</b> <i>adj.</i>	possible, esp. in the future
<b>tissue</b> <i>noun</i>	a group of cells in the body that work together
<b>tobacco</b> <i>noun</i>	dried leaves smoked in cigarettes, cigars and pipes

**Task 3. Make the test that is based on the material that you have learnt.**

1) According to the text, do mobile phones lead to brain tumours?

- a) Yes, definitively
- b) Definitively not
- c) Too early to say

2) The text mentions the 1990s because this was when mobile phones

- a) were invented
- b) caused cancer
- c) became popular

3) Why does the article mention microwave ovens?

- a) They also use EMR
- b) They cause tumours
- c) They can be wireless

4) Which of the following is NOT mentioned in the article?

- a) video game consoles
- b) digital televisions
- c) laptop computers

5) If mobile phones are shown to be hazardous, the mobile phone industry's profits will

- a) increase
- b) decrease
- c) stay the same

6) Which are NOT a form of electromagnetic radiation?

- a) sound waves
- b) radio waves
- c) microwaves

7) Many experts say electronic devices should be at least six feet from our heads when we're

- a) keeping them
- b) using them
- c) sleeping

8) Many health professionals say we should be careful until \_\_\_\_\_ studies on safety are done.

- a) definitive
- b) logical
- c) scientific

9) How is mobile phone use compared to tobacco use in this article?

- a) Both cause brain tumours
- b) Both need long-term studies
- c) They are equally hazardous

10) Which is recommended when using a mobile phone?

- a) Holding it to your ear
- b) Doing a handstand
- c) Using a headset

**Task 4. Insert the correct preposition.**

*at, on, into, to, in, by*

- 1) The sports results are \_\_\_\_\_ the back page of the paper.
- 2) Her brother lives \_\_\_\_\_ a small town \_\_\_\_\_ the south coast of Spain.
- 3) We usually go to work \_\_\_\_\_ car.
- 4) I must go \_\_\_\_\_ the bank today to change money.
- 5) He has just returned \_\_\_\_\_ France.
- 6) She arrived \_\_\_\_\_ the airport at 6.
- 7) Have you ever been \_\_\_\_\_ Ireland?
- 8) They got \_\_\_\_\_ the car and drove off.
- 9) Get \_\_\_\_\_ the train. It's going to leave.
- 10) I didn't see her \_\_\_\_\_ the party.

**Task 5. Open the brackets and put the verb in Past Simple.**

- 1) Yesterday, I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the restaurant with a client.
- 2) We \_\_\_\_\_ (drive) around the parking lot for 20 minutes in order to find a parking space.
- 3) When we \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive) at the restaurant, the place \_\_\_\_\_ (be) full.
- 4) The waitress \_\_\_\_\_ (ask) us if we \_\_\_\_\_ (have) reservations.
- 5) I \_\_\_\_\_ (say), «No, my secretary \_\_\_\_\_ (forget) to make them».
- 6) The waitress \_\_\_\_\_ (tell) us to come back in two hours.
- 7) My client and I slowly \_\_\_\_\_ (walk) back to the car.
- 8) Then we \_\_\_\_\_ (see) a small grocery store.
- 9) We \_\_\_\_\_ (stop) in the grocery store and \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) some sandwiches.
- 10) That \_\_\_\_\_ (be) better than waiting for two hours.

**Task 6. Think of the roleplay between representatives of different European countries. Take into account specific cultural features determining the behaviour of people in each country.**

**Task 7. Make the research of the examples of homogeneous and heterogeneous nations within intrapopulation and inter-population variations, ethno-linguistic groups, providing the diversity of cultures and report it.**

## UNIT 7. Geography And Climate

### Task 1. Learn the verbs used in the professional and scientific texts:

1) **attitude;**

*Attitude is one of the components of cultural competence. Attitude makes people analyse culture.*

2) **awareness;**

*Awareness is another component of cultural competence. It is a key component for people of some professions.*

3) **creation;**

*Creation of inclusive systems is a part of knowledge perfection. This creation is essential.*

4) **cultural awareness;**

*Cultural awareness is one of the cognitive components of cultural competence. Cultural awareness is compulsory.*

5) **inclusive;**

*Inclusive systems are a part of cultural competence. Inclusive systems help to reinforce knowledge.*

6) **improve;**

*Inclusive systems improve the level of cultural competence. Creation of inclusive systems improves cultural competence.*

7) **perfection;**

*Perfection of knowledge is an important part of cultural competence. This perfection is an essential part of it.*

8) **possess;**

*Everybody must possess cultural awareness. Teachers, in particular, must possess cultural awareness to educate students from different ethnic groups.*

9) **reinforce;**

*The components of cultural competence need to be reinforced. It is basic to reinforce them.*

**Task 2. Read the text about French Food and make the dialogue between you and your colleagues whether you French food or not.**

### French Food

French food and French cooking took hundreds of years to develop, and like food everywhere it reflects the history of the country in which it developed. By the 17th century the French class system had created great inequality, and this meant rich, upper-class people could employ chefs and eat expensive **delicacies** and fancy dishes, while poor lower-class people had to eat very cheap, low-quality food.

By the 19th century the high-quality food of the rich was called **haute cuisine** or «high cooking», and the low-quality food of the poor was

called **peasant** food. But a lot of these peasant dishes, including hundreds of soups and stews, had gradually become part of haute cuisine after chefs began making them with better ingredients and cooking techniques, and these dishes are still an important part of haute cuisine today.

In the 1960s, a new cooking style called **nouvelle cuisine** or «new cooking» developed. It modernized French cooking by using fewer of haute cuisine's basic **stocks** and sauces like the rich and creamy **Hollandaise sauce**. It also introduced regional cooking styles with more natural flavours and healthier ingredients. As a result, French restaurants now serve a greater range of cooking styles than ever before. Some serve traditional haute cuisine, others serve nouvelle cuisine, and some focus on regional or home-style cooking. You can also find many French restaurants and **bistros** that offer a mix of these styles.

### **French meals**

Most French people eat a light breakfast of **French bread** or **croissants** with honey or jam, and tea or coffee. For a bigger breakfast, they might have bread with ham and cheese or a savoury paste called **pâté**, or a grilled ham and cheese sandwich called **croque monsieur**. Breakfast is often a small meal, but lunch and dinner are much bigger meals that can last for two hours or more. Both are usually three-course meals taken with wine and cheese plus tea or coffee. The three courses are an **entrée** consisting of soup or savoury foods, a main course including meat and vegetable dishes, and a dessert or pastries.

### **Entrée dishes**

Entrée choices can include clear soups like **French onion soup**, thick soups like lobster **bisque**, and small savoury dishes known as **hors d'oeuvre**. Popular hors d'oeuvre include meat, fish or vegetable-filled **vol-au-vents** and a dish called **crudités** in which raw vegetables like carrot, cucumber and celery sticks are dipped in a **vinaigrette** sauce. Some hors d'oeuvre are made with expensive delicacies such as caviar, **truffle**, or a kind of oversized liver made by force-feeding ducks or geese called **foie gras**. Another dish often served as an entrée is **escargot**, or cooked snails. Even though snails were peasant food at first, they became a delicacy when haute cuisine chefs began removing the flesh and flavouring it before returning it to the shells.

### **Main course dishes**

The second course is usually the main course in which a meat, fish or poultry dish is served with side dishes of vegetables. Like escargot, many haute cuisine and nouvelle cuisine main course dishes originated from lower-class dishes. For example, a spicy fish and vegetable stew called **bouillabaisse** was first invented by poor fishermen in Provence as a way of using bony fish they couldn't sell in the market. A peasant dish that's also from Provence is a beef or lamb stew cooked in wine called **daube**. **Beef bourguignon** from the eastern region of Burgundy is another famous stew. It's made by slowly cooking pieces of beef in red wine before adding

garlic, onions and mushrooms. Burgundy is also where the famous chicken dish **coq au vin** is from. Another peasant dish that later became a haute cuisine favourite is **cassoulet**, a casserole of pork sausages and pork skin, duck or goose meat and haricot beans.

As well as meat dishes, main course options can include vegetarian dishes like **ratatouille**, a popular vegetable stew. Vegetables are also prepared in various ways as side dishes. They can be fried, as in French fries, or sliced and baked in milk as in **dauphinois** dishes like *gratin dauphinois*. Many other vegetables like eggplant, carrot, zucchini, leek and mushrooms are also important in French cooking.

### Desserts

The third course in a French lunch or dinner is usually dessert, and some of the most popular of all French foods are desserts and pastries. They're made by a special chef called a **pâtissier** and sold in bakeries called **pâtisseries**. The most well-known French desserts include the custard-like **crème brûlée** and the light and creamy **mousse**. Favourite pastries include the **éclair**, a long, cream-filled pastry, and the **profiterole**, a small ball-shaped pastry sometimes called a cream puff. There are many other delicious French desserts, all worth trying if you have the chance.

### Other dishes

One of the most versatile of French dishes is the **quiche**, a savoury flan with a filling made of eggs and cream plus other ingredients like cheese, spinach, mushrooms, ham or bacon. Quiches can be served hot or cold as entrées or as main course dishes. Another versatile French dish is the **crêpe**, a thin pancake that can be served with savoury fillings as an entrée or as a dessert in dishes like *crêpes Suzette*. The **soufflé** is another versatile food that can be both savoury as in a cheese soufflé, or a sweet dessert like chocolate soufflé served with cream or ice-cream.

### Task 3. Learn the words which were used in the text.

**1) beef bourguignon (also «beef Burgundy»)** (noun): beef braised or stewed in red wine sauce.

- *I'm trying this new recipe for beef bourguignon.*

**2) bisque** (noun): a thick soup made from shellfish.

- *May I recommend this evening's lobster bisque?*

**3) bistro** (noun): a small French restaurant serving affordable home-style food and drinks.

- *There are thousands of little bistros in Paris.*

**4) bouillabaisse** (noun): a spicy stew of fish and vegetables.

- *Did you know that fishermen in Provence invented bouillabaisse?*

**5) cassoulet** (noun): a southern French casserole made of various meats and haricot beans.

- *Is there anywhere around here that serves cassoulet?*

**6) coq au vin** (noun): chicken cooked in red wine sauce.

- *Our mum makes the best coq au vin in the world!*

**7) crème brûlée** (noun): custard with a burnt caramel top.

- *I'll have the crème brûlée for dessert, please.*

**8) crêpe** (noun): a very thin pancake.

- *They serve crêpes with savoury as well as sweet fillings.*

**9) croque monsieur** (noun): a ham and cheese sandwich that's toasted or grilled.

- *I could eat half a croque monsieur if you want to share one.*

**10) croissant** (noun): a light, flaky crescent-shaped roll eaten for breakfast in France.

- *Let's get some croissants and jam and lots of coffee.*

**11) dauphinois** (adjective): sliced and cooked in milk, usually with a cheese topping.

- *How many potatoes do you slice up to make gratin dauphinois?*

**12) daube** (noun): a beef or lamb stew cooked slowly in wine.

- *The poor ate cheap dishes like daube, while the rich ate haute cuisine.*

**13) delicacy** (noun): a rare and expensive food seen as a symbol of wealth.

- *Why are foods like truffles and shark fins called delicacies?*

**14) éclair** (noun): a tube-shaped pastry with cream inside and chocolate on top.

- *The éclairs in that pâtisserie are amazing.*

**15) entrée (also UK «starter» and US «appetizer»)** (noun): the first course of a meal.

- *In France entrée means «starter» but in North America it means the main course.*

**16) escargot** (noun): cooked snails eaten as a delicacy in France and Catalonia.

- *Did you know you'd get snails when you ordered escargot?*

**17) foie gras** (noun): a delicacy made from the fatty livers of force-fed ducks and geese.

- *Foie gras livers are up to ten times bigger than normal ones, you know.*

**18) French bread (also «baguette» or «French stick» or «French loaf»)** (noun): a long, thin loaf of soft white bread with a crunchy crust.

- *Let's get some French bread.*

**19) French onion soup** (noun): a soup made from onions and meat stock.

- *Do you like grated cheese in your French onion soup?*

**20) haute cuisine** (French for «high cooking») (noun): high-class French cooking served in expensive restaurants and luxury hotels.

- *Poor people lived their whole lives without ever eating haute cuisine.*

**21) hollandaise sauce** (noun): a creamy sauce made with butter, egg yolks and vinegar.

- *Hollandaise sauce is one of the five basic sauces haute cuisine is based on.*

**22) hors d'oeuvre** (noun): a small savoury dish served as entrée (or starter or appetizer) before the main course.

- *How many kinds of hors d'oeuvre can you make?*

**23) mousse** (noun): a smooth, light-textured dessert made with cream and eggs.

- *I'll have the chocolate mousse, please.*

**24) nouvelle cuisine** (French for «new cooking») (noun): new style of French cooking with simpler techniques and fresher ingredients than haute cuisine.

- *French chefs started creating nouvelle cuisine dishes in the early 60s.*

**25) pâté** (noun): a smooth savoury paste made from finely-minced meat or fish.

- *Could you pass the duck liver pâté, please?*

**26) pâtisserie** (noun): a shop that sells French pastries, desserts and breads.

- *I got some éclairs from the pâtisserie.*

**27) profiterole** (noun): a small ball-shaped pastry with cream inside and chocolate on top.

- *I love profiteroles, but I'll get fat if I eat too many.*

**28) peasant** (noun): a poor farmer forced to work for wealthy aristocrats.

- *Most of the food peasants grew was taken off them and sold.*

**29) quiche** (noun): a dish in which a mixture of eggs, cheese and other ingredients is baked in a round flan base.

- *Isn't the quiche with bacon in it called quiche Lorraine?*

**30) ratatouille** (noun): stewed vegetables, incl. tomato, garlic, onions, zucchini, eggplant and various herbs.

- *There's no meat in ratatouille, is there?*

**31) soufflé** (noun): a dish made with eggs that rises into a high, round shape when baked.

- *My soufflé collapsed when I took it out of the oven.*

**32) stock** (noun): a liquid used to make soups, stews, sauces, etc. that's made by boiling bones, meat or vegetables.

- *Did you make the beef stock yourself?*

**33) vinaigrette** (noun): a mixture of oil, vinegar, herbs and spices used as a salad dressing or a marinade.

- *Which herbs did you put in the vinaigrette?*

**34) vol-au-vent** (noun): a small round pastry case filled with a mixture of meat, fish or vegetables.

- *Let's fill the vol-au-vents with salmon mornay.*

**Task 4. Read the text about the culture of the USA and identify approaches to solving their problems.**

### **Culture of the USA**

The USA is a multiethnic state. It is much easier to visit a certain culture abroad and bring back productive ideas than to remove the borders between the cultures within the country.

There exist contrary approaches on the problem of the culturalism of the American culture: pluralism and particularism. From the pluralists' view, different cultures communicate with each other and influence one another. This approach determines the diversity of cultures, which form one common culture of the country. The pluralists suppose this phenomenon causes the uniqueness of American culture.

A lot of people in the country are now supporting pluralistic multiculturalism and think it is a forming standard for the American society. On the other hand, there still exists another approach of the particularism stating that no common culture is thinkable or wanted.

Sometimes under pluralistic ideas people understand tolerance and sympathy towards some nationalities taking into consideration assertion of the American unity. As a matter of fact, notions of ethnic diversity and cultural diversity are quite different. The new tendency is that the USA is developing as a more ethnically and culturally diverse country. And together with these changes there has appeared the idea of assimilation of cultures with Anglo-conformity, the melting pot, and cultural pluralism. But the American society is based on individual rights, determining the approval of particularism in the society. The culture of the USA is multiethnic and not multicultural. The problems of culturalism are complicated and have to be resolved in the future as well as new approaches have to be developed concerning the problem with the changes in the society.

**Task 5. Look one more time through the text in task 2 and the words in task 3. Make this test below.**

1) A typical French breakfast includes light, flaky rolls called

a) baguettes

- b) crêpes
- c) croissants

2) A small French restaurant serving affordable home-style meals is

- a) a bistro
- b) a pâtisserie
- c) a buffet

3) Restaurants that serve «haute cuisine» are usually

- a) cheap
- b) expensive
- c) informal

4) «I'll have the French \_\_\_\_\_ soup, please.»

- a) fries
- b) onion
- c) bread

5) Which is a savoury paste made from finely-minced meat or fish?

- a) pâté
- b) foie gras
- c) daube

6) What will you get if you order a plate of «escargot»?

- a) spiders
- b) snails
- c) worms

7) «Coq au vin» means «chicken in \_\_\_\_\_».

- a) wine
- b) vinegar
- c) vine leaves

8) Which egg-based dish puffs up and gets taller while being cooked?

- a) soufflé
- b) quiche
- c) mousse

9) Which is a salad dressing made by mixing oil and vinegar with herbs and spices?

- a) vol-au-vent
- b) hollandaise sauce

c) vinaigrette

10) What are the tube-shaped French pastries with cream inside and chocolate on top called?

- a) éclairs
- b) ratatouilles
- c) crêpes

**Task 6. Write an essay which of the cultural approaches meets modern requirements (100–120 words).**

## UNIT 8. Foreign Relations

**Task 1. Read the words and learn them.**

1) **admit;**

*Cultural competence admits various cultures. It also admits unique sets of rules in these cultures.*

1) **belief;**

*The belief is a part of culture. It is also a part of cultural competence.*

2) **development;**

*Cultural competence development is a complex process. This development is comprehensive.*

3) **change;**

*Dynamic processes change culture. They also change the cultural competence of people.*

4) **contemporary;**

*Contemporary society is informative. Contemporary people deal with rapidly changing information.*

5) **cross-cultural;**

*Cross-cultural relations are developing rapidly at this time. Crosscultural relations are important for countries.*

6) **exist;**

*Cultures can still exist separately. They exist together with other cultures.*

7) **gender;**

*Gender determines the attitude to the culture.*

*Different genders may have different cultural competencies.*

8) **informative;**

*Contemporary society is informative.*

*My friend's report was informative.*

10) **intercultural;**

*The theory of intercultural communication should be studied in various specialties. Studying the theory of intercultural communication is part of tourism education.*

11) **multicultural;**

*Contemporary world has a tendency to become multicultural. In the European Union, some countries are following multicultural trends.*

**12) occupation;**

*At customs, people are often asked about their profession. The profession is indicated in all applications.*

**13) speed;**

*The modern world is changing with increasing speed. Here the speed is constantly growing.*

**14) subculture;**

*Subcultures are part of a large culture. There are many subcultures in Africa.*

**15) well-being;**

*Well-being influences the development of cultural competence. Well-being contributes to its improvement.*

**Task 2. Define the basics of the words, suffixes, prefixes of the words and parts of speech of the newly-formed words:**

*Development, changing, contemporary, crosscultural, informative, intercultural, multicultural, occupation, subculture, well-being.*

**Task 3. Express your opinion on the development of cultural competence in the modern multicultural world.**

**Task 4. Study background knowledge. Read the dialogue and background knowledge.**

**Background Knowledge:**

1. Tanzania is the country in East Africa. Tanzanian is a resident of this country.
2. The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Island (the UK) is an island country north of the European continent.
3. The European Union (EU) is an economic and political organization in Europe with twenty-eight member states.

**Customs Check**

**Characters:** Border Force officer and the passenger from Tanzania

**Border Officer:** So, where have you come from?

**Tanzanian:** Tanzania. East Africa.

**Border Officer:** Where is your home in Tanzania?

**Tanzanian:** I'm from Tanga.

**Border Officer:** And what's your occupation?

**Tanzanian:** I'm a retailer.

**Border Officer:** Are these your bags?

**Tanzanian:** Yes, they are.

**Border Officer:** I'll have to look inside them. What is it? Skins of crocodiles! Do you know products of animals are banned? It's smuggling.

**Tanzanian:** Sorry, I didn't know.

**Border Officer:** These skins have to be seized. Did you give correct information? If you didn't, you can face a penalty of up to £5, 000.

**Tanzanian:** I've never done it before.

**Border Officer:** Do you have any partners or friends here?

**Tanzanian:** No. I travel on my own.

**Border Officer:** How long will you stay in the UK?

**Tanzanian:** I'm leaving today at 5 p. m.

**Border Officer:** Where are you leaving?

**Tanzanian:** Home.

**Border Officer:** We'll see to it. The skins will be seized. Now you can go. Next time, if you decide to come to Great Britain, you'll have to study all the allowances for the people from non-EU countries.

**Task 5. Read the text and outline it. Find the topic and supporting sentences, introduction and conclusion.**

### **Great Lakes Region in Canada**

The specific feature of Great Lakes region is that it belongs both to the USA and Canada. It's a part of territory of eight American states and the Canadian province of Ontario. The region is unique. It borders Great Lakes and has its own cultural identity. That is why bi-national authorities preserve and guard it.

Lakes Erie and Ontario are usually referred to as the lower lakes. Correspondingly, Lakes Michigan, Huron, and Superior are called the upper lakes. Lake Superior justifies its name. It is the longest, the deepest and has the greatest water volume. Lakes Superior, Huron, Michigan and Erie have almost the same elevation above the sea, while the Lake's Ontario elevation is lower. All the lakes are forested on the shores.

The environment of Lake Superior is less influenced by the urbanization, while the ecology of the Lake's Erie is suffering. There exist hardwood-conifer mixed forests, conifer mountain forests and boreal forests with red spruce, balsam fir, eastern hemlock, red maple and sugar maple, yellow birch and American beech. In the north grow lichens, mosses and plants of the Alpine flora. Sea fauna is rich with various kinds of fishes and sea products. On the lakes live ducks and on the shores of the lakes in the forests live animals, including rare eastern wolves, North American cougars, moose, American black bears, Canada lynxes, snowshoe hares, coyotes, white-tailed deer, and eastern chipmunks. The uniqueness and magnificence of the region is obvious and people ought to take care of it and preserve it.

**Remember:** The words moose and deer have in English only one, singular form.

**Task 6. Read the information about how to write an informative essay.**

**Informative Essay**

An informative essay follows the purpose of educating other people on a chosen topic. The information provided should be clearly and well organised.

*There are several stages of writing an informative essay.*

**1) Select and research the topic of writing, which means:**

- a) try to understand your assignment;
- b) choose a topic and conduct a thorough research;
- c) take notes of information and sources during your research;
- d) think over your ideas.

**2) Make an outline:**

- a) write an introduction;
- b) identify supporting details;
- c) write a conclusion.

**3) Write a draft:**

- a) include a topic sentence or sentences in each paragraph;
- b) structure your essay;
- c) revise and edit your writing.

**4) Write the final version and publish your essay**

**Task 7. Write an informative essay about any Lakes Region of the country you choose. Present it to the professor.**

**UNIT 9. Living conditions**

**Task 1. Learn the words used in the professional and scientific texts:**

**1) apply;**

*Various measurements are applied to research in the field of cross-cultural communication.*

*Scientists use level analysis in the study of cross-cultural communication.*

**2) approach;**

*Scientists apply numerous approaches to intercultural research. The approach can be considered as a method of science.*

**3) complicated;**

*A study of intercultural communication is a complicated process.*

**4) connect;**

*All types of communication are closely connected.*

*Concepts are connected to evaluations.*

**5) incorporation;**

*The incorporation of the work of other scientists is important in research. We analyse the incorporation of the theory of intercultural communication in communication theory.*

**6) intend;**

*Students in our group intend to conduct a study of intercultural communication. They also intend to explore approaches to intercultural communication.*

**7) investigate;**

*The problems of intercultural communication require further study. They should be investigated at the subculture or co-culture level.*

**8) versatile;**

*The studies of cross-cultural communication are versatile.  
Cross-cultural communication approaches are versatile.*

**Task 2. Analyse the morphological structure of the words:**

*cross-cultural, intercultural, intergroup, intracultural.*

**Do you know other similar complicated words? Describe them and give examples.**

**Task 3. Give examples, illustrating the theory of cross-cultural communication on the base of cultural attitudes, stereotypes, values and feelings.**

**Task 4. Read the text about Indian Food and retell it.**

## **Indian Food**

When thinking of Indian food, many people think of **curries** and rice. But there's much more to Indian food than this. There are dozens of regional Indian cuisines, each with its own special dishes. To make it easier to understand Indian cuisine, it's often divided into two main types; North Indian and South Indian. In many cases they use different cooking methods, different ingredients, and even different **spices**. For example, wheat-flour flatbreads are common in the North while in the South rice is more common. This is because North Indian food was greatly influenced by Middle Eastern cuisines of the Islamic Mughal Empire in which flatbreads were the staple foods, while South Indian food is more like traditional Hindu cuisine of ancient India in which rice was the staple food.

### **Ordering and etiquette**

Three of the world's major religions - Hinduism, Buddhism and Jainism - developed in ancient India, and Islam was introduced when North India was conquered by the Mughal Empire in 1526. Each of these religions has its own set of rules about food, and because Indian meals usually include many dishes that are shared, ordering is complicated if people of different religions are eating together. In

Hinduism the cow is a sacred animal, so most Hindus don't eat beef. Eating pigs is strictly forbidden in Islam, and most Muslims also refuse to eat other animals unless they're killed in a certain way. Jains never eat meat of any sort, and many don't eat onions, potatoes or garlic either, while many Buddhists also prefer a vegetarian diet. In fact, it might be best to let others order an Indian meal unless you know everyone's religion, or unless you're only ordering vegetarian dishes that everyone can eat like potato and cauliflower **aloo gobi** or a simple dish like **dal** that only contains lentils and spices.

Using the fingers to eat is common in India, and foreigners are welcome to eat this way too. But if you eat with your fingers, you must never touch the food with your left hand. Hold it between the fingertips of your right hand or scoop it up with a piece of flatbread. Try to eat without putting your fingers in your mouth or licking them. Wash them instead in one of the small bowls of water on the table.

### **Appetizers**

Even though Indian meals aren't normally served in separate courses like European meals, many Indian restaurants now list their dishes in this way. They offer traditional Indian snack foods as appetizers. These can include deep-fried **pakor**s of various kinds such as vegetable pakoras and cheese-filled **paneer** pakoras. *Paneer* is an Indian cheese similar to cottage cheese, and if you see this word in a dish's name it means it contains this cheese. Other popular snack foods now served as appetizers include deep-fried **bhajis** and **samosas** of various kinds, some with a meat filling and others with a vegetable filling. Many Indian restaurants also serve **kebabs** as an appetizer these days.

### **Main courses**

Most restaurants in India serve main course dishes from one region only, but Indian restaurants in other countries usually serve dishes from both North and South India. North Indian dishes include many that came from Mughal cuisine like **korma** in which meat or vegetables are braised with yoghurt or cream, and many that are cooked in a large clay-pot oven called a **tandoor**. These include roasted **tandoori chicken** and a dish called **chicken tikka** in which marinated pieces of boneless chicken are grilled on a skewer inside a tandoor oven. Pieces of chicken tikka are also used in a spicy North Indian curry called *chicken tikka masala* that's often flavoured with a mix of spices called **garam masala**.

Tandoor ovens are also used for baking thin, round flatbreads like **tandoori roti** as well as thicker, longer flatbreads like **nan** and its popular variants *garlic nan* and the spicy lamb-filled *keema nan*. Not all Indian flatbreads are baked, however. Many are fried in shallow pans, including plain roti or **chapati**, a staple food that's often topped with Indian butter or **ghee**. Another is **paratha** which can be plain or stuffed with vegetables or paneer. Flatbreads like these are made with wheat flour, a staple in the North, while the South's very thin and crisp **papadums** are usually made from lentil flour instead.

The pancake-like **dosa** is also from South India, as are main course dishes like **madrass curry** and many other curries made with a wide range of ingredients. Curries in the South are eaten with rice rather than bread, and rice is also found in **biryani** dishes between layers of chicken, mutton, beef, fish or mixed vegetables. Rice is also cooked along with meat or vegetables in a spicy broth to make many kinds of **pilau**. Biryani and pilau dishes are good choices if you don't like food that's too hot and spicy, but if you love spicy food, try a hot **vindaloo** curry and you should be satisfied.

While sharing dishes is normal when a group of people eat Indian food, it's also possible to order a meal for one person. You can do this by ordering a food platter called a **thali**. Both meat-based and vegetarian thalis are available, and they usually include a main dish like korma or curry as well as some dal, a hot chutney and some cooling yoghurt plus rice and rotis or papadums. And you'll also get some dessert, of course.

### **Desserts and Indian drinks**

There are hundreds of delicious Indian desserts, and most restaurants serve quite a few. Some of the most popular are a soft pudding made with coconut or banana or carrot called **halva**, a creamy rice and milk pudding called *payasam*, and a very sweet dessert called *gulab jamun* in which soft dough-like balls are soaked in a sugary syrup. But the most popular dessert of all is probably a very rich traditional Indian ice-cream called **kulfi**. It comes in many flavours, and if you get the chance try one of the more traditional ones like rose, saffron, cardamom, mango or pistachio.

Indian meals are best enjoyed with traditional Indian drinks. In hot weather cool drinks like coconut water, a palm nectar drink called *neera* and the spicy *jal-jeera* are popular. In cold weather a cup of hot tea or **chai** that's made with milk, sugar and spices is a good choice. A great drink for all seasons is a yoghurt shake called **lassi**. You can order sweet lassi, salty lassi or a fruit lassi like the very popular mango lassi.

### **Task 5. Learn the words which have been used in the text before.**

**1) aloo gobi (also alu obi)** (noun): a dish of potato and cauliflower flavoured with garam masala and tumeric.

- *Can we have some aloo gobi as well, please?*

**2) bhaji (also bhajji)** (noun): a deep-fried Indian appetizer with a spicy vegetable filling covered in batter.

- *The bhajis they sell on the street around here are really good.*

**3) biryani (also biriyani or biriani)** (noun): a dish with layers of meat, fish or vegetables mixed with spices cooked between layers of rice.

- *Most Indian restaurants have biryani dishes on the menu.*

**4) chai** (noun): tea made by boiling tea leaves along with milk, sugar and a blend of spices.

- *They sell cups of chai on railway platforms all over India.*

**5) chapati (or roti)** (noun): thin pancake made of whole wheat flour that's cooked on a hotplate.

- *Would you like chapatis with that?*

**6) chicken tikka** (noun): small pieces of boneless chicken cooked on a skewer in a tandoor oven.

- *I love the chicken tikka they make here.*

**7) curry** (noun): a meat or vegetable dish cooked in a spicy Indian-style sauce, often eaten with rice.

- *Jason makes a pretty good vegetable curry.*

**8) dal (also dhal)** (noun): lentils cooked with various spices and flavourings.

- *If you order a thali, it'll come with some dal.*

**9) dosa** (noun): a thin Indian pancake made with rice flour and black beans.

- *My grandma makes the best masala dosa in the world!*

**10) garam masala (or masala)** (noun): a mixture of powdered spices used in Indian cooking.

- *Add a teaspoon of garam masala and stir.*

**11) ghee** (noun): a type of butter used in Indian cooking.

- *Grandma still uses ghee when she cooks.*

**12) halva (also halwa)** (noun): a sweet pudding made with semolina and added ingredients like carrot, coconut, cashew nuts, etc.

- *I love that carrot halva that Kumar makes.*

**13) kebab** (noun): meat and vegetable pieces grilled or roasted on a skewer.

- *Have you tried the shami kebab they make here?*

**14) korma** (noun): meat, fish, or vegetables braised with cream or yoghurt.

- *Would you like to try our vegetable korma?*

**15) kulfi** (noun): traditional Indian ice-cream.

- *I really love mango kulfi!*

**16) lassi** (noun): an Indian drink made of yogurt, water and spices, with fruit sometimes added.

- *I'll have a sweet lassi, please.*

**17) madras curry** (noun): a hot curry, either meat-based or vegetarian, from South India.

- *I had the madras curry on rice.*

**18) nan (also naan)** (noun): a soft, thick, leavened flatbread that's baked in a tandoor oven.

- *Let's get one garlic nan and two plain nans.*

**19) pakora** (noun): a deep-fried North Indian snack or appetizer.

- *Didn't your mum teach you how to make pakoras?*

**20) paneer** (noun): Indian cooking cheese similar to cottage cheese.

- *It's got «paneer» in its name, so it must have cheese in it.*

**21) papadum (also pappadam)** (noun): a thin, crisp, disc-shaped flatbread made with lentil flour.

- *Let's have some papadums as well.*

**22) paratha** (noun): a thick, fried flatbread with extra ingredients like potato or cauliflower often added.

- *I'll have a potato paratha to go, please.*

**23) pilau (also pilaf or pulao)** (noun): rice cooked in a broth with meat, vegetables or lentils often added.

- *Let's try the lamb pilau this time.*

**24) samosa** (noun): an appetizer in which a filling of cooked meat or vegetables is wrapped in pastry and deep-fried.

- *Do you have real Indian-style samosas?*

**25) spice** (noun): a dried plant part that's added to food to give it flavour.

- *Do you have any spices imported from India?*

**26) tandoor (also tandoor oven)** (noun): an oven traditionally made of clay in which flatbreads, samosas, roast meats and vegetables, etc. are cooked.

- *They serve hot nans straight out of the tandoor.*

**27) tandoori chicken** (noun): marinated chicken pieces roasted in a tandoor oven.

- *Don't you love the smell of tandoori chicken?*

**28) tandoori roti** (noun): roti flatbread that's baked in a tandoor rather than fried.

- *Don't forget to order the tandoori roti, will you?*

**29) thali** (noun): a meal for one person served on a platter (also called a «thali») with several different dishes.

- *I'll have a vegetarian thali, please.*

**30) vindaloo** (noun): a very hot and spicy type of Indian curry.

- *Are you sure you can eat a really hot curry like beef vindaloo?*

**Task 6. Solve the problem, using the method of brainstorming. Write a short essay.**

*If you were a member of the Australian government, how would you solve the problems of preservation of national minorities and their cultures and integrating them into a contemporary world?*

**Task 7. Write about some most interesting facts about Australia. Select the facts confirming the uniqueness of the world Australia. Present the report to the professor. Prepare five or six questions for your colleagues on subject of the research. Discuss them.**

## **UNIT 10. Ethnic Groups**

**Task 1. Imagine that tourists belonging to other cultures of foreign countries are going to come to your country. How would you promote your culture? Present a strategic plan.**

**Task 2. Read the text and give answers to the questions.**

### **Central Australian Natives**

The tribes of the aborigines living in Central Australia occupy the territory of about 700 square miles. The relief of the terrain is Steppe and desert with few rainfalls and a lot of sun, rugged red rocks and gum-trees. In the desert the draught is longer and the life is harder, but on the territory of the Steppes the life is neither miserable nor hard.

Each tribe speaks its own dialect. The aborigines of the tribe live in small local groups with wellknown boundaries of the given area. The men with spears and boomerangs hunt for wallabies, kangaroos, and emus. The women catch small animals, supply the group with seeds, tubers, and native plums. The individuals in these groups call themselves by names of the animals or plants, forming the Totemic groups of kangaroo men, emu men, etc.

There are no chiefs in the tribes. The decisive role in the tribe plays a council of older men of the tribe, dealing with all the tribe problems, i.e., the problems of punishment for violation of tribal customs, sacred rites, ceremonies, funerals.

The tribes had previously been numerous and various, but nowadays they are rare because of the influence of white people. Thus lessens the influence of the old men of the tribe on the young men. Young aboriginals, communicating with white people, forget their old traditions and customs, but, at the same time, they do not always take the best of the culture of white people. This process leads to new diseases and reduction in the number of aborigines.

The Australian government is facing the problems of preservation of national minorities and their cultures in a contemporary multicultural world. It is important to find the best ways of solving them.

### Questions:

- 1) What is the terrain inhabited by indigenous Australians?
- 2) Is it right that every tribe speaks a common language?
- 3) The aborigines of the tribe live in small local groups, aren't they?
- 4) Are there any borders between the territories on which the tribes live?
- 5) Which animals are hunted by local residents?
- 6) What weapons do they use for hunting?
- 7) How do women of the local group get food?
- 8) Who plays a decisive role in the tribe?
- 9) What questions does the council of older men of the tribe solve?
- 10) How do white people influence the young generation of Aboriginal people?
- 11) What problems do the local tribes currently face?

**Task 3. Read the text about Mexican Food and translate it into your own language.**

### Mexican Food

The people of Mexico were among the first to develop agriculture. Around 10,000 years ago early **Mesoamerican** cultures that later developed into the **Mayan** civilization grew crops like corn (also called «maize»), beans, tomatoes, sweet potatoes, chayotes and other squash, avocados and papayas. These foods are still the basis of Mexican cuisine, and Mayan foods still eaten today include a thin flatbread made from cornflour called a **tortilla**, and an easily-carried snack called a **tamale** in which a meat or vegetable filling is wrapped in a corn husk. Mayans also grew cocoa beans to make chocolate drinks like **champurrado** that are still popular in Mexico today.

#### Aztecs and the Spanish invasion

But this was just one of many periods in the history of Mexico. By the 13th century, Mayan culture had declined and most of Mexico was governed by the **Aztec** civilization. The Aztecs built some of the biggest and most magnificent cities in the world at the time, with their capital city Tenochtitlan being five times the size of London in 1500. The cuisine of the Aztecs was similar to Mayan cuisine, but with ingredients like chilli peppers, salt and honey now used more widely. They used chilli peppers to make a hot and spicy sauce called **salsa** that's still popular in Mexico today. They poured salsa on fried tortilla strips to make **chilaquiles**, one of the most famous of all Mesoamerican dishes from the Aztec period.

In the 16th century, Mexico was invaded by soldiers from Spain. Within a few months millions of Aztec people had been killed by the soldiers or died from the diseases they brought. This made it impossible for the Aztecs to resist the invasion, and when the Spanish destroyed their capital city of Tenochtitlan in 1521, it signaled the end of thousands of years of Mesoamerican civilization and the beginning of Spanish rule. Along with their deadly weapons and diseases, the Spanish brought

foreign animals like sheep, pigs and cows for meat and dairy foods like milk and cheese. They also brought foreign plants like wheat, rice, onions and garlic as well as new spices. Since then, Mexican cuisine has combined the Mesoamerican cuisine of Mayans and Aztecs with the European cuisine of Spain.

### **Appetizers and main courses**

If you visit Mexico today, you'll see many snack foods being sold from carts, trailers and street stalls. These foods are called **antojitos** and many are also served in Mexican restaurants, either as appetizers or in main course dishes. Many of these antojitos are made with tortillas and fillings of various kinds. They include meat or vegetable-filled **tacos**, cheese-filled **quesadillas**, deep-fried tacos called **flautas**, chilli sauce-covered **enchiladas**, and toasted tortillas called **tostadas** covered in various taco-style toppings.

Tortillas are also used in an American variation of Mexican food called **Tex-Mex** (from Texan and Mexican). Tex-Mex dishes are tailored to American tastes, with more of the ingredients Americans love such as grated cheese, fried onions, refried beans and lots of meat. They include tortilla wraps filled with meats and beans called **burritos**, spicy **fajitas** stuffed with grilled meat, fried onions and chilli peppers, cheese-topped tortilla chips called **nachos**, and beef or chicken tacos made with prefabricated hard-shell tortillas. Fast food restaurants that sell Tex-Mex food like Taco Bell have spread across the USA and are now spreading around the world. These places are becoming more and more popular, but if you want to try real Mexican food go to a proper Mexican restaurant instead.

Many of the main-course dishes you can order in a Mexican restaurant are made with tortillas or tortilla chips, but not all. Exceptions include a spicy dish of beef and beans called **chilli con carne**, stuffed cornflour pancakes called **gorditas**, a traditional beef-stomach soup called **menudo**, a marinated fish or seafood dish called **ceviche**, stuffed peppers deep-fried in batter called **chile relleno**, and pork or chicken **carne adobada** flavoured with the delicious **adobo** paste. Another traditional flavouring is **mole**, a chilli-based sauce that's used in popular dishes like *mole poblano chicken*. If you order any of these dishes as a main course it should come with condiments like *salsa mexicana* or *salsa roja*, a bowl of **guacamole** avocado dip, *pepita* pumpkin seeds, sour cream to cool the tongue and a hot sauce to spice things up. You should also get side dishes like a bowl of shredded lettuce and some diced or sliced tomato and onion.

### **Desserts and pastries**

If you visit Mexico you'll have no trouble finding delicious pastries and desserts. No matter where you go you'll find sweet **pan dulce** breads and pastries like the strips of deep-fried dough called **churros** that many people eat for breakfast, usually with a cup of hot champurrado. Pan dulce pastries can also be ordered in restaurants, as can traditional Mexican desserts like **capirotada**, a delicious oven-baked bread pudding. Others include a creamy rice pudding called *arroz con leche*, a

rich caramel custard known as *flan Mexicano* or *Mexican flan*, and deep-fried pastries called **sopapillas** that are usually served with ice-cream.

**Task 4. Arrange the words to make the sentence.**

1. Some, goods, would, duty-free, purchase, I.
2. Fasten, you, belts, to, seat, have, please, your.
3. Attendant, am, your, flight, I.
4. Ham, take, Jane, sandwich, and, a, fruit, would, some, with.
5. Minutes, in, plane, off, five, the, takes.

**Task 5. Look again through the text in task 3. Now remember the words that are used in the text.**

**1) adobo** (noun): a paste or marinade of chillies, vinegar, herbs and spices for flavouring meat or fish.

- *This pork adobo's really good, isn't it?*

**2) antojitos** (noun): Mexican street foods and snacks, sometimes served as appetizers in restaurants.

- *Antojitos are sold in street stalls and markets all over Mexico.*

**3) Aztec** (adjective): of the Mesoamerican civilization in Mexico when the Spanish invaded.

- *Mexican food is a mix of Mayan, Aztec and Spanish cuisines.*

**4) burrito** (noun): a tortilla that's folded over and filled with meat, beans and cheese.

- *They sell the best burritos in those old markets.*

**5) capirotada** (noun): a dessert similar to British bread pudding.

- *Would you like some capirotada for dessert?*

**6) carne adobada** (noun): meat or chicken covered with a spicy adobo paste or sauce.

- *If you order carne adobada, get a side salad as well.*

**7) ceviche** (noun): an appetizer or main course dish made of marinated raw fish or seafood.

- *If you're making prawn ceviche, use freshly-squeezed lime juice.*

**8) champurrado** (noun): a warm, thick, frothy Mesoamerican chocolate drink.

- *Would you like champurrado and some churros for breakfast?*

**9) chilaquiles** (noun): a dish of fried tortilla strips topped with a salsa or chilli sauce and cheese.

- *Shall we order chilaquiles as an appetizer?*

**10) chile relleno** (noun): stuffed chilli pepper covered in batter and deep-fried.  
- *Javi makes really good chile relleno.*

**11) chilli con carne (US spelling «chili»)** (noun): a stew made of ground beef, beans and fresh or powdered chilli.  
- *If you order chilli con carne, say you want it «mild».*

**12) churro** (noun): a strip of sweet fried dough sprinkled with sugar and cinnamon.  
- *Having churros for breakfast isn't very healthy, is it?*

**13) enchilada** (noun): a tortilla with a filling of meat or cheese served with chilli sauce, eaten as an appetizer or main course.  
- *Enchiladas have been part of Mexican cuisine since Mayan times.*

**14) fajita** (noun): a Tex-Mex dish of cooked meat slices, onions and peppers rolled up inside a tortilla.  
- *The fajitas come with lettuce, sour cream, guacamole, salsa, and grated cheese.*

**15) flauta** (noun): a tortilla filled with meat and cheese and then fried.  
- *I'll have the flautas and a beer, please.*

**16) gordita** (noun): a thick cornmeal pancake filled with meat, cheese or vegetables.  
- *Let's get a vegetable gordita as well.*

**17) guacamole** (noun): a thick green dip or sauce made from mashed avocado.  
- *Can you teach me how to make guacamole?*

**18) Maya or Mayan** (adjective): of the Mesoamerican civilization in Mexico circa 2000 BC to 1300 AD.  
- *Many of today's Mexican dishes are from Maya cuisine.*

**19) menudo** (noun): a spicy Mexican soup made from beef stomach.  
- *Mexicans love menudo, but most foreigners don't like it.*

**20) Mesoamerican** (adjective): related to the civilizations in Mexico and Central America before the Spanish invasion.  
- *Mesoamerican farmers have been growing maize for over 10,000 years.*

**21) mole** (noun): a rich sauce made from chilli peppers and other local ingredients.  
- *There are many varieties, but my favourite is «mole poblano».*

**22) nachos** (noun): tortilla chips covered with cheese and various other ingredients.  
- *Nachos were invented near the border of Mexico and Texas in the 1940s.*

**23) pan dulce** (noun): any of the sweet breads and pastries sold in Mexican street stalls and restaurants.

- *There are hundreds of different panes dulces, and they're all delicious!*

**24) quesadilla** (noun): a cheese-filled tortilla that's grilled, with vegetables and spices sometimes added.

- *Quesadillas are like a Mexican version of the grilled cheese sandwich.*

**25) salsa** (noun): a spicy sauce made from tomatoes, onions, chilli peppers, etc.

- *Could you pass the salsa, please?*

**26) sopapilla** (noun): a small, pillow-shaped fried pastry dough mostly eaten as a dessert.

- *Could I have sopapillas with vanilla ice cream, please?*

**27) taco** (noun): a folded or rolled tortilla filled with minced beef or chicken, beans, spices, etc.

- *I don't like the hard-shell tacos they sell in Tex-Mex fast food joints.*

**28) tamale** (noun): a Mayan dish in which a filling of meat or vegetable is rolled in cornmeal, wrapped in a corn husk and then steamed or grilled.

- *Don't forget to bring the tamales, will you?*

**29) Tex-Mex** (adjective): of a type of food in which Mexican dishes are tailored to typical American tastes and ingredients.

- *There are Tex-Mex restaurants in Asia these days.*

**30) tortilla** (noun): a thin flatbread traditionally made of cornflour, but also made of wheat flour since the Spanish invasion.

- *I got some tortillas on my way home.*

**31) tostada** (noun): an appetizer made of tortillas (often old or stale) that are toasted and used as a base for taco-style toppings.

- *The shrimp tostadas were really delicious.*

**Task 6. Make the research and write an essay about the ways of developing cultural competence in a multiethnic country. Present the results of your work and discuss them. Consider the questions relating to the investigation.**

**Task 7. Write about some most interesting facts about any country you choose. Select the facts confirming the uniqueness of its nation. Present the report to the professor. Prepare five or six questions for your colleagues on subject of the research. Discuss them.**

## **UNIT 11. Family relationships**

**Task 1. Read the text and find key features of Egyptian culture.**

### **Customs and Traditions of Egypt**

The contemporary culture of Egypt is a fusion of versatile customs and ethnic traditions. There still exist the traditions of Ancient Egypt, the Arabic culture of native tribes and even the elements of the British culture.

Ethnically Egypt is a part of wider Arabic world, Arab League. Arab League headquarters is in Cairo. Egypt is an Arabic-speaking country with its own dialect. English is the second widely-spoken language. Three fourths of the population are the followers of Sunni Islam and the others are Coptic Christians. That is why the masculine type of leadership prevails in the society and in the family as a part of the society.

Religious customs are essential for people of both religions with their riots and rules. Mosques and churches are numerous. Ramadan is the most important holiday. The Islamists do not drink alcohol and do not eat pork. That is why it is better for both men and women to abstain from drinking in Egypt and the women should follow stricter rules of behaviour in society. For women it is better to choose the modest way of behaviour, adopted in the Egyptian society, and the women's clothes ought to be common and covered.

The Egyptian family as in the most eastern cultures is integrated. Family values and relations are greatly respected, hospitality as the part of Arabic culture is welcomed, but, at the same time, the foreigners have to be careful in their words and actions not to offend the hosts and not cause aggression towards themselves. All kinds of invitations in Egypt have to be repeated more than once.

**Task 2. Write an essay about:**

- a) Egyptian ethnicity;
- b) languages spoken in Egypt;
- c) beliefs of the country;
- d) family.

**Task 3. Write a short report where explain why theoretical studies of eastern and western cross-cultural communication are so important.**

**Task 4. Arrange the words to make the sentence.**

1. Room, to, like, I, a, would, book.
2. Month, suits, available, next, are, junior.
3. Euros, the, night, is, price, a, three.
4. And, outdoor, provide, services, we, pool, spa.
5. Internet, for, free, provide, tourists, we.

**Task 5. Imagine the situation: You need to book a hotel. Make up the conversation between hotel receptionist and you. Write the dialogue and present it to the professor.**

**Task 6. Read the text and name the castes, religions and languages of India.**

### **Castes and Religions in India**

Culture of India is multiethnic and multilingual. India is the second most populous country in the world after China.

There are two official languages in India: Hindi with the alphabet called Devanagari script and English. In addition to these languages, the Indians speak other languages belonging to several language groups: Kannada, Malayalam, Odia, Sanskrit, Tamil, and Telugu.

The beliefs are also multiple. They include Buddhism, Hinduism, Jainism, and Sikhism, but all the religions have one thing in common: they all follow Dharma rules.

Manifestations of the religions have found their implementation in Indian art, i.e., architecture, music and dance, literature, and films.

The Indian society is socially heterogeneous. It is divided into social groups, called castes. It is a hard social stratification, determining the level of life, education and occupation of population in India.

Brahmans are investigators and priests; Kshatriyas are chiefs among the warriors; Vaishya are artisans, farmers or traders; Shudras are servants and Dalits belong to lower classes. Dalits are deprived of good education and do the hardest work.

**Task 7. Find and present additional information on castes and religions of India. Discuss it with your colleagues.**

**Task 8. Investigate one of the languages of India according to the plan:**

- a) name;
- b) family group;
- c) alphabet;
- d) people speaking the languages;
- e) language features.

**Present your report.**

**Task 9. Prepare information about the ancient Egyptian architecture. Discuss it with the professor.**

**Task 10. Write an informative essay about some historical places of the country you choose. Present it to the professor.**

## UNIT 12. Gender equality

### Task 1. Learn the words.

1) **appear;**

*Intercultural communication appeared before interracial communication. It appeared in the early development of the theory of communication.*

2) **challenge;**

*Challenges must be solved. Challenges are universal.*

3) **clarification;**

*There should be clarification of the style of communication. There should be clarification of perceptions and values.*

4) **deepen;**

*We need to deepen our knowledge of another culture. We must deepen our knowledge of another language.*

5) **enough;**

*This knowledge is enough to solve the problem. The amount of knowledge should be sufficient to understand the processes of intercultural communication.*

6) **explanation;**

*We base intercultural relationships on the explanation of another culture. This explanation of theory is not valid.*

7) **interracial communication;**

*Interracial communication is a multidimensional process. Interracial communication is insufficiently studied process.*

8) **justify;**

*These theoretical investigations are justified. The practice of implementation of this theory is justified.*

9) **part;**

*The theory of intercultural communication is part of the theory of communication. The theory of cross-cultural communication is also part of the theory of communication.*

10) **purpose;**

*The purpose of this investigation is to find similarities of the cultures.*

*The purpose of the paper is presented in introduction.*

11) **respect;**

*We must respect the values of another culture.*

*We must respect the feelings of the others.*

12) **share;**

*Intercultural communication takes place during shared work. It can also take place during shared learning.*

## Task 2. Read the text about Thai Food and retell it.

### Thai Food

Many food experts say Thailand has one of the world's great cuisines, so if you love food you should definitely try it. Whether you do this by visiting Thailand or by going to Thai restaurants in your home country, you're sure to find dishes you like. And you might even discover some of the most delicious food you've ever eaten!

#### Northeastern food

If you visit Thailand and walk around any big city like Bangkok, you'll see people selling street food of many kinds from mobile carts. If they're selling food to workers from a building site, they're probably selling **Isan** food from the northeast of Thailand. An Isan meal almost always includes a spicy salad called **som tam** that's freshly-made with grated green papaya for every customer. Som tam is usually eaten with grilled fish, pork or beef and lots of glutinous **sticky rice**. Other dishes might include a ground meat salad called **larb**, or dishes made with a fermented fish paste called *pla ra* that most foreigners find too smelly and strong-tasting to try. Because of its low rainfall, Isan is a poor region in which people have learned how to eat whatever they can find, including insects of many kinds. These are now sold from carts all over Thailand, and if you get the chance you should try some deep-fried grasshoppers. They're surprisingly good!

#### Southern food

While people from Isan prefer very spicy dishes and sticky rice, people from the Muslim areas of southern Thailand prefer milder dishes and steamed rice, preferably Thailand's top-quality **jasmine rice**. Many of the most delicious southern dishes are curries made with **coconut milk** or coconut cream from which they get their smooth, creamy texture and rich, sweet flavour. The most famous southern curries are **Thai yellow curry** with chicken and potato (*kaeng ku-ree gai*) and **massaman curry**, a rich and creamy Indian-style curry made with beef or chicken that was voted the world's most delicious dish by CNN viewers in 2011.

#### Central Thai food

Thai restaurants usually include a few Isan and southern Thai dishes on their menus, but most of the dishes are from central Thailand. In central Thai cuisine, like all Thai cuisine, a wide range of sauces, pastes, spices and condiments are grouped into the four basic tastes of Thai cooking; salty, hot, sour and sweet. For example, **fish sauce** is used to add «saltiness» to a dish, chilli peppers add heat or «spiciness», lime and tamarind add «sourness», and cane sugar or palm sugar add «sweetness». These ingredients, and many others like them, are combined in various ways to create the unique balance of flavours found in dishes like the popular noodle salad **yum woon sen** and soups like **tom kha gai**, a spicy chicken and coconut soup,

and **tom yum kung**, a popular hot and sour shrimp soup that's served in Thai restaurants all around the world.

Stir-fried dishes are also flavoured with the same range of ingredients. The most popular include **chicken with cashew nuts** (*gai pat med mamuang*), stir-fried **morning glory** (*pak boong fai daeng*), stir-fried vegetables (*pad pak luam-mit*) and the very popular **pad ka-prow** to which **holy basil** adds its unique flavour and aroma.

While soups and stir-fried dishes are always popular, when asked which Thai dish is their favourite most people say it's a Thai curry. Many of these are from central Thailand, including **Thai green curry** (*kaeng khiao wan*), **Thai red curry** (*kaeng phet*) and **panaeng**, a very rich and nutty coconut-cream curry that's always a favourite. Another favourite is **hor mok pla**, a delicious fish mousse made with red-curry paste and coconut cream that's wrapped in banana leaves and cooked in a steamer.

### Thai street food

Thailand is famous for tasty, cheap street food that's cooked on a cart or in a small shop-house kitchen while customers wait at a roadside table. Most dishes are for one person, unlike in a restaurant where dishes are usually shared. The most common street-food dishes include **noodles with red pork** (*ba mee moo daeng*), **khao moo daeng** (red pork on rice), **khao man gai** (chicken on rice), **khao na ped** (duck on rice) and a delicious dish of braised pork leg served on rice called *khao kha moo*. Other favourites include **khao pat** (Thai fried rice) and **khao soi**, a curry-flavoured chicken noodle soup, and popular fried noodle dishes like **pad see ew** and **pad thai**.

No matter which of these dishes you choose, you'll be given a set of condiments as well. There are usually four condiments, one for each of the four basic tastes of Thai cooking, including fish sauce or **prik nam pla** (fish sauce with chilli) for saltiness, dried chilli for spiciness, vinegar or squeezed lime for sourness, and sugar for sweetness. It's fun to watch as people keep adding a little of each until the dish tastes just the way they like it, and this is something you can try too.

### Thai desserts

Thailand is blessed with many natural desserts in the form of delicious tropical fruits. The mango is among the most delicious of these, and one of Thailand's most famous desserts is **mango and sticky rice** served with a sweet coconut-cream sauce. But there's another fruit that's so good that most people eat it without any preparation or added ingredients. This is **durian**, the so-called "King of Fruits" with its heavenly custard-like flesh protected by a thick skin of sharp spikes. If you ever get the chance to try it, you must!

Other popular desserts include **pumpkin custard**, **sticky rice in banana leaves**, and **sweet roti** which you can buy from one of the many street vendors who make it on their carts. You can have plain sweet roti or one with banana or coconut

filling, but however you have it, it'll be dripping with sweetened condensed milk. It isn't very healthy, but can you resist it?

**Task 3. Look through the words which most likely are new to you.**

**1) chicken with cashew nuts (or *gai pat med mamuang*)** (noun): one of Thailand's most famous and delicious stir-fried dishes.

- *Jason's favourite Thai dish is chicken with cashew nuts.*

**2) coconut milk** (noun): a milky white liquid that's squeezed from coconut meat and used in cooking.

- *All those creamy Thai curries are made with coconut milk, aren't they?*

**3) durian** (noun): a large tropical fruit covered in sharp spikes with a delicious creamy custard-like flesh.

- *How can you tell which durian is the best?*

**4) fish sauce (or *nam pla*)** (noun): a salty liquid used in cooking and as a table condiment.

- *Instead of sprinkling salt on food, Thais add fish sauce.*

**5) holy basil (or *ka-prow*)** (noun): an Indian herb used as a tea, a medicine and as an ingredient in certain dishes.

- *«Khao phat ka-prow ghai» is a stir-fried dish of chicken and holy basil on rice.*

**6) hor mok pla (or *Thai fish mousse*)** (noun): a steamed mousse made of fish mixed with red curry paste and coconut cream that's cooked in a banana leaf wrapping.

- *I'll get some hor mok pla from the market.*

**7) Isan or Isaan** (adjective): of the region in northeastern Thailand where Lao food, language and culture survive.

- *For real Isan food, find a cart selling grilled fish or chicken, papaya salad and sticky rice.*

**8) jasmine rice (or *kao som mali*)** (noun): a fragrant long-grain variety of rice that Thailand is famous for.

- *Jasmine rice is known for its sweetness and light but firm texture.*

**9) khao man gai** (noun): Thai street dish based on China's «Hainanese chicken rice», but with Thai-style topping of soy sauce plus chilli, ginger, garlic and vinegar.

- *I can get some khao man gai on my way home if you like.*

**10) khao moo daeng** (noun): slices of red barbecue pork served on rice with a sweet red sauce, boiled egg, sliced cucumber and coriander leaves.

- *Montree has khao moo daeng for lunch most days. He loves it!*

**11) khao na ped** (noun): street dish based on China's duck rice, served with fresh ginger, a sweet dark soy sauce and stewed green vegetable.

- *That lady makes the best khao na ped in the village.*

**12) khao pat** (noun): Thai fried rice, made with pre-cooked rice, fish sauce, chilli and garlic plus vegetables, chicken, pork, beef or prawns.

- *If you want fried rice with chicken, ask for «khao pat gai».*

**13) khao soi** (noun): a Burmese-style curried noodle soup usually made with chicken and often topped with crispy egg noodles.

- *I'd love a bowl of khao soi right now.*

**14) larb** (noun): a Lao-style salad made of raw or cooked ground meat, roasted ground rice, chillies, garlic, herbs, fish sauce, etc.

- *Pork larb is «larb moo» in Thai, chicken larb is «larb gai» and beef larb is «larb neua».*

**15) mango and sticky rice (or khao niao mamuang)** (noun): sliced fresh mango served with sticky rice and a sweet topping of coconut milk and palm sugar.

- *To order mango and sticky rice, ask the waiter for «khao niao mamuang».*

**16) massaman curry** (noun): a sweet, mild curry usually made with chicken or beef plus potatoes, peanuts or cashews, coconut cream and sweet spices like cinnamon and cloves.

- *In a survey of the world's most delicious dishes, massaman curry came top.*

**17) morning glory** (noun): a green leafy vegetable that's the main ingredient of stir-fried morning glory (*pak boong fai daeng*)

- *Let's order the stir-fried morning glory as well.*

**18) noodles with red pork (or ba mee moo daeng)** (noun): Chinese-style barbecued red pork with egg noodles.

- *Wow! This is the best noodles with red pork I've ever had!*

**19) pad ka-prow** (noun): a popular street dish in which holy basil is stir-fried with chilli, garlic, various sauces and either chicken, pork, beef, shrimp or tofu.

- *Can you teach me how to make pad ka-prow?*

**20) pad see ew** (noun): a stir-fried street dish made with wide, flat noodles, dark soy sauce, Chinese broccoli and chicken, beef, pork or shrimp.

- *There are pad see ew stalls all over Bangkok.*

**21) pad thai** (noun): a popular street dish made with thin noodles stir-fried with eggs, tofu, tamarind, fish sauce, dried shrimp, garlic, chilli and palm sugar.

- *Why don't we have pad thai for lunch?*

**22) panaeng** (noun): a popular red curry with a sweet, nutty coconut-cream based sauce, usually made with chicken, pork, beef or tofu.

- *My favourite Thai dish is panaeng curry with chicken.*

**23) prik nam pla** (noun): sliced chilli in fish sauce, an essential Thai table condiment that's both spicy and salty.

- *Can you pass the prik nam pla, please?*

**24) pumpkin custard (or sangkaya fuk tong)** (noun): a dessert of steamed pumpkin wedges filled with creamy coconut custard.

- *Pumpkin custard is cheaper if you buy it from a street vendor.*

**25) som tam (or green papaya salad)** (noun): a spicy Isan salad made of grated green papaya and nam pla or pla ra and many other ingredients.

- *To make som tam, start by grating lots of green papaya.*

**26) sticky rice (or khao nee ow)** (noun): soft glutinous rice, a staple of Isan cuisine, that's often served in small rattan baskets.

- *Would you like sticky rice with that?*

**27) sticky rice in banana leaves (or khao tom mat)** (noun): a dessert of sticky rice sweetened with banana and coconut milk in a banana leaf wrapping.

- *Let's have sticky rice in banana leaves for a change.*

**28) sweet roti** (noun): a street dessert cooked on a hot plate, often with added coconut or banana, that's topped with sweetened condensed milk.

- *Would you like a plain sweet roti or one with banana or coconut?*

**29) Thai green curry (or kaeng khiao wan)** (noun): a Thai curry made with green curry paste, green chillies, Thai eggplant or pea aubergines, and either chicken, beef, shrimp, tofu, etc.

- *I'll have Thai green curry with chicken, please.*

**30) Thai red curry (or kaeng phet)** (noun): a spicy curry made with coconut milk and red curry paste.

- *The Thai red curry with roast duck at See Fah Restaurant is amazing!*

**31) Thai yellow curry (or kaeng ku-ree)** (noun): a mild curry from South Thailand most often made with chicken and potato.

- *I'll have the Thai yellow curry with chicken, please.*

**32) tom kha gai** (noun): a cream-coloured chicken soup made with coconut milk, galangal, mushrooms, lemongrass, fish sauce, etc.

- *Our special today is tom kha gai, or chicken coconut soup.*

**33) tom yum kung** (noun): a hot and sour clear shrimp soup that's very popular in Thai restaurants all over the world.

- *We always get the tom yum kung.*

**34) yum woon sen** (noun): a salad made with pre-cooked glass noodles (or cellophane noodles), pork, shrimp, peanuts, chilli, coriander, etc.

- *Anyone can make yum woon sen. It's really easy.*

**Task 4. Read information about ethnic relations and languages of China. How do you think this relationship will develop?**

### **Ethnic Relations and Languages of China**

China's population is the biggest in the world with over 1,2 billion people, representing more than one-fifth of the world's population.

Chinese society is surprisingly homogeneous. It has the same way of life, customs and traditions. More than ninety percent of the population are Han Chinese. The Chinese government officially recognises fifty-five minorities, only eight percent, living on its territory. Among them are the Chuang, Uyghurs, Tibetans, Manchus, Mongols, Koreans. They all have their customs and traditions.

The government of China tries to increase its influence on the minorities by means of migration of Han Chinese to the territories of minorities. The government controls the birth of Han children, but the minorities are often out of control and there is the rise in population in minority groups. The Chinese Government believes that the increase in births among minorities is threatening the country's stability.

The official language is Mandarin Chinese. This language is based on the Beijing dialect. There also exist oral dialects in some provinces. The writing system has not changed and remains the same for all dialects. The Chinese alphabet is not phonetic. It does not represent sounds. It has sixty thousands of pictographs and ideographs, representing concepts. The Chinese differentiate words not by sounds but by means of falling or rising tone. The language is tonal.

**Task 5. What can you say about the nationalities living in China? Make a short report.**

**Task 6. Is writing in Chinese difficult in your opinion? How would you overcome these difficulties?**

**Task 7. Make a research work about the interesting facts from the history of China. Discuss it with the professor and your colleagues.**

## II. METHODOLOGICAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR STUDENTS' INDEPENDENT WORK

### UNIT 1. Researching A Country

**Exercise 1. Read the text about travellers. Choose the most suitable headings from the list (A-J) for each part (1-8) of the text. There is an example at the beginning (0). There is one extra heading which you don't need to use.**

- A) International Visitor
- B) Excursionist or Same-Day Visitor
- C) Tourist on Pilgrimage
- D) International Tourist
- E) WTO Definitions
- F) Domestic Visitors
- G) Climate
- H) Travel Motivation in International Tourism
- I) Personal Motives
- J) Price

<b>0</b>	<b>E) WTO Definitions</b>
----------	---------------------------

The World Tourism Organization's definition of the traveller moves away from the concept of the «visitor» and distinguishes between the «tourist» and the «excursionist».

*A tourist* describes someone who has taken a holiday to visit a different place away from his or her home.

*A traveller* travels, usually for a longer period than a tourist, in order to learn more about a different culture.

In everyday language the word visitor is not strongly associated with tourism at all.

In fact travellers can be categorised in four ways:

- domestic visitors;
- international visitors;
- international tourists;
- excursionists.

<b>1</b>	
----------	--

A «domestic visitor» is a person residing in a country, who travels to a place within the country, outside his / her usual environment for a period not exceeding 12 months and whose main purpose of visit is other than an activity for which he / she is paid within the place visited.

*Domestic tourism* is very significant in world tourism as it represents over 80 percent of all tourism movements.

2	
---	--

It is a person visiting a country other than that in which he / she has usual place of residence but outside his / her usual environment for a period not exceeding 12 months and whose main purpose of visit is other than the exercise or an activity remunerated from within the country visited.

Two factors differentiate visitors from other international travellers: their country of residence and their motivation for travel.

Certain types of travellers are excluded from the category of “tourist” for reasons other than that of residency. These are:

- people travelling for political reasons: refugees;
- people travelling for political / professional reasons: migrants, members of the armed forces, diplomats, embassy staff;
- people travelling for professional reasons: nomads, border workers, seasonal workers, couriers;
- people sent abroad by their companies or government. They are considered residents of the country where they normally live (temporary immigrants);
- transit passengers and permanent immigrants.

People who travel to work in a foreign country and are paid by this country have different motives for travelling than other visitors to the country. The WTO has devised a system of classifying international travellers which separates visitors that should be included in international tourism statistics from those that should not.

3	
---	--

A visitor whose length of stay in a country reaches or exceeds 24 hours, thus spending at least one night in the visited country, is classified as a tourist. If his length of stay in the country is less than 24 hours he is called a same-day visitor.

Temporary visitors staying at least 24 hours in a country whose motive for travel can be described as being either for leisure (pleasure, holidays, health, study, religion or sport); or for business, family or work assignments are called international tourists.

But it is often difficult to identify and classify accurately each traveller in the global movement of people crossing borders.

4	
---	--

An excursionist is a foreign visitor whose stay does not exceed 24 hours.

In fact, visitors spending the night on board ship are classified as same-day visitors and not tourists. The excursionist does not spend the night in the country he / she is visiting.

*Excursion tourism* is practically important for small insular countries like the Caribbean islands. A large proportion of their market is tourists arriving on cruise ship, who visit during the day but are actually accommodated on board.

5	
---	--

**Travel motivation** in international tourism can be divided into three main categories: price, climate and personal motives.

6	
---	--

**Cost** is a major motivation factor in international tourism. The low prices for tourism services in certain countries explain their success in attracting tourists from countries that have a higher general price level.

The survey carried out by American Express shows that such European countries as Spain, Greece and Portugal are relatively inexpensive, compared to France and Italy. This and the favourable climate in these countries explain their success as mass-market destinations.

The USA and Thailand are popular destinations for Europeans and they are very competitive. The cost of travel to these countries has fallen with the introduction of charter flights.

The **differential** in tourism prices between countries is a result of their different salary levels. It follows that tourists from high-wage countries are attracted to the low tourism prices in low-wage countries. Price differential is an important factor in the motivation of Northern European tourists to visit Southern European destinations and the motivation of North American tourists to visit Mexico and Latin America.

7	
---	--

**Climate** is another determining motive for international tourism. Southern European countries with their guarantee of sunshine, also benefit from this factor.

8	
---	--

*Personal motives* include:

- a) **leisure** and **holidays** – the motivation factors are rest, cultural discovery, visiting friends and relatives, sports, etc.;
- b) **business travel** – this category includes commercial travellers, airline crews, government and international organization officials, specialists employed by companies, etc.;
- c) **congresses and other meetings** (seminars, conferences, etc.) – for non-profit motives;
- d) **health** – trips for medical reasons either to receive medical care or for health improvement;
- e) **study** – to attend courses or to undergo training in a study centre for one or more academic years;
- f) **religion** – pilgrimages and trips to holy places.

**Exercise 2. Match the terms with their definitions.**

a tourist	a) a person residing in a country who travels within it outside his home for a period not exceeding 12 months
an international visitor	b) a person whose stay in other country exceeds 24 hours and who travels for leisure, business, family or work assignments
a traveller	c) a person on holiday visiting a different place away from his home
an international tourist	d) a visitor whose stay does not exceed 24 hours
excursionist	e) a person visiting another country for a period not exceeding 12 months
a domestic visitor	f) a person travelling for a longer period than a tourist who wants to learn more about different culture

**Exercise 3. Look through the tests and choose the right answer.**

1) Buying large amounts of goods or services in order to get a lower price is a:

- a) bulk purchase;                      c) wholesale purchase;  
b) complete purchase;                d) bought goods.

2) Planned method of work is a \_\_\_\_\_ .

- a) strategy;                                c) aim;  
b) goal;                                        d) planning.

3) The last term when the product can be used is known as:

- a) expiry date;                            c) valid date;  
b) produce date;                          d) term date.

4) When I need a band-aid I go the:

- a) drug-store;                                c) grocery;  
b) butcher's;                                 d) baker's.

5) You can improve the taste of the sauce with vanilla. It is:

- a) season;                                    c) garnish;  
b) flavor;                                      d) roast.

6) Remove the outer skin of the potatoes. It is to:

- a) peel;                                        c) dice;  
b) mash;                                        d) cut.

7) Could you remove the skin and bones from the fish, please? It is to make a:

- a) skeleton;                                  c) fillet;  
b) soup;                                        d) sandwich.

8) Water required for a building may be stored in a:

- a) saucepan;                      c) tank;  
b) garage;                         d) bottles;

9) The restaurant is closed for two months while it is being:

- a) renewed;                        c) renovated;  
b) remade;                         d) reformed.

10) There will be ten new bedrooms when the builders finish the \_\_\_\_\_.

- a) extension;                      c) enlargement;  
b) extent;                         d) utility.

## UNIT 2. Environmental Issues

**Exercise 1. Write the opposites of the following words in bold:**

*inbound* tourists, *high-wage* countries, *permanent* home, *carelessly*,  
*include in* the classification system, *continental* countries,  
*expensive*, *outside* the usual environment

**Exercise 2. Write the synonyms to the following words in bold:**

to carry out an <i>investigation</i>	to <i>live permanently</i> in a country
to <i>get some use</i> from smth	in <i>simple (plain)</i> language
the main <i>goal</i> of visit	to <i>classify</i> to the groups

**Exercise 3. Fill in the correct preposition, then make 2-3 sentences with each of the items.**

1. to be strongly associated ...	5. to distinguish ... 2 concepts
2. to carry ... a research	6. to exclude ... the classification system
3. to spend a night ... board ship	7. ... least
4. to be employed ... companies	8. to be attracted ... smth.

**Exercise 4. Look through the tests and choose the right answer.**

1) The chalets have everything a guest could require. They are:

- a) self-catered;                      c) self-made;  
b) self-formed;                      d) self-contained.

2) The building has fallen into a state of \_\_\_\_\_ and now need a lot of work.

- a) despair;                         c) disrepair;  
b) dispersal;                        d) distress.

- 3) This room is very quiet and it's not at the front of the hotel. It is \_\_\_\_\_ .
- a) back-looking;                      c) rear-looking;  
b) rear-facing;                        d) back-facing;
- 4) The expected number of guests is known as \_\_\_\_\_.
- a) estimated attendance;              c) list;  
b) guests listing;                        d) attendants.
- 5) The people who come to the conference are known as the \_\_\_\_\_.
- a) attendants;                          c) officials;  
b) delegates;                            d) participants.
- 6) All the tourists may enjoy a boat \_\_\_\_\_ on a river or canal.
- a) trip;                                    c) cruise;  
b) tour;                                    d) hike.
- 7) Many hotels will arrange \_\_\_\_\_ tours by coach, or on foot.
- a) escorted;                            c) escorting;  
b) guiding;                                d) guide.
- 8) Glove is an item of clothes that is worn on:
- a) toes;                                    c) a hand;  
b) a waist;                                d) a thumb.
- 9) The restaurant is closed for two months while it is being \_\_\_\_\_ .
- a) renewed;                              c) renovated;  
b) remade;                                d) reformed.
- 10) There will be ten new bedrooms when the builders finish the \_\_\_\_\_.
- a) extension;                            c) enlargement;  
b) extent;                                 d) utility.

### UNIT 3. Natural Resources

#### Exercise 1. Choose the correct answer and write down the whole sentence.

- 1) The chalets have everything a guest could require. They are:
- a) self-catered;                        c) self-made;  
b) self-formed;                        d) self-contained.
- 2) The building has fallen into a state of \_\_\_\_\_ and now need a lot of work.



**The American guest.** The American guest particularly appreciates ice water with every meal, free coffee refills, a large selection of beverages, bread and butter with lunch and dinner.

**The German speaking guest.** The Austrian, German and Swiss guest prefers an extended breakfast. Besides lunch and dinner, there is a mid-morning break and an afternoon break (with coffee, cakes and pastries).

**The Italian guest.** He or she particularly likes plenty of white bread and grissini, parmesan, water, wine vinegar and olive oil, lemon wedges with all fish and meat dishes.

**The Spanish guest.** The Spanish guest particularly appreciates white bread with all dishes, a pitcher of tap water, friendliness towards children, employees` knowledge of Spanish, consideration of later dining times.

**The Swedish guest.** Swedish guest is used to three meals a day. They prefer flexible mealtimes, fish dishes, water and bread included in the price, a choice of dressings.

**The Japanese guest.** He or she particularly appreciates a greeting by the host or the service employee. Because Japanese people greet each other by bowing, handshakes should be offered with discretion. They are used to fast service and full dedication from service employees. One should avoid eye contact and be aware of the fact that a Japanese guest is not familiar with food from other countries.

**The Chinese guest.** The Chinese guest particularly appreciates Chinese cuisine. They usually travel on business and in groups. Therefore the menus are often ignored and the restaurant manager should recommend a variety of courses. Hot towels to clean the hands before the meal and continuous tea service with free refills are expected.

**The Jewish guest.** Jewish cuisine is originally based on strong religious beliefs. Since Jewish people have dispersed all over the world, their cuisine is heavily influenced by many other cuisines. Nevertheless general rules are detailed in the Talmud, a collection of religious rules written in the 6th century. Their rules divide foods into Kosher (permitted, clean), Treife (not allowed), and Parve (neutral foods, always pure). Since Judaism forbids any kind of work on the Sabbath, meals are prepared in advance and kept warm.

**The Middle Eastern/North African guest.** In these countries breakfast consists of black tea, fresh pita, white bread, sheep and goat`s cheese, black and green olives, hard-boiled eggs, all kinds of nuts and fresh fruit. Lunch usually consists of a light meal, but dinner is extensive. Mohammed`s teaching prohibits alcohol consumption. Common beverages are spring and mineral water, fruit juices, milk and ayran, a Turkish yoghurt beverage. Fasting during Ramadan lasts for forty days. It is forbidden to eat during the day. The faithful are allowed to eat from sunset to sunrise.

**Exercise 4. Look through the tests and choose the right answer.**

1) The town \_\_\_\_\_ under the rock of Cefalu on which the temple of Diana

\_\_\_\_\_ .

- a) sits; was built;                      c) situates; was destroyed;  
b) sleeps; was built;                    d) sits; is destroyed.

2) Put yourself in the employer's \_\_\_\_\_.

- a) boots;                                    c) head;  
b) shoes;                                  d) mind.

3) Participation in sports can show your \_\_\_\_\_ for team work.

- a) capacity;                                c) availability;  
b) disability;                              d) power.

4) While filling in the form try to research the name ( \_\_\_\_\_ correctly!) of a specific person to write to.

- a) introduced;                            c) presented;  
b) spelt;                                    d) organized.

5) A return ticket is a ticket \_\_\_\_\_ the destination.

- a) from;                                      c) to;  
b) to and from;                          d) from Japan.

6) Braille's books are specially designed for people who can't:

- a) read;                                      c) taste;  
b) see;                                        d) understand.

7) This person directs a plane at take-off and landing:

- a) pilot;                                      c) cosmonaut;  
b) flight attendant;                    d) coach.

8) A person dealing with people arriving at a hotel is a:

- a) bell boy;                                c) chambermaid;  
b) receptionist;                         d) housekeeper.

9) If the weather is bad, the children at the hotel can use the \_\_\_\_\_ on the ground floor.

- a) resident nurse;                      c) kitchen;  
b) playroom;                              d) lobby.

10) In order to cater for guests who have babies, we have installed facilities in the toilets.

- a) high chairs;
- b) nappy-changing;
- c) ramps;
- d) necessary.

## **UNIT 4. Economy**

**Exercise 1. Many factors affect the level of international tourism throughout the world. Write down explaining how each of the following can affect the volume of international tourism between one country and another, giving, wherever possible, actual examples.**

- a) Terrorism, war and political unrest;
- b) A special occasion, celebration or anniversary;
- c) The differences in exchange rates of currencies between the countries of origin and destination;
- d) Industrial action;
- e) Natural and man-made disasters.

**Exercise 2. Think about the trends in tourism in Ukraine. Write down justifying your answers.**

- 1) What forms of tourism are best developed in Ukraine?
- 2) Is domestic tourism popular in Ukraine? If yes, give your grounds. If no, why not?
- 3) What are the main motives for travelling in Ukraine?
- 4) What categories of foreign visitors are most frequent in Ukraine?
- 5) Are there many commuters in Ukraine? Why (not)?
- 6) What do you know about excursionist tourism in Ukraine?
- 7) Where do Ukrainians prefer to spend their holidays? Why?
- 8) What other personal motives for travelling make Ukrainian people move around?
- 9) What are the latest trends in Ukrainian tourism?

**Exercise 3. Open the brackets, using verbs in Present Simple (Active or Passive) or in Present Continuous (Active or Passive).**

- 1) All over the world people (to enjoy) and (to build) amusement parks.
- 2) Ocean Park (to sit on) a steep promontory in Hong Kong.
- 3) Ocean Park (to use) its surplus revenue for development.
- 4) America (not to have) a monopoly on the amusement industry.
- 5) Blackpool (to have) the world's only operating Steeplechase ride.
- 6) Euro Disneyland (to locate) in Marne-la-Vallee.
- 7) A revolving restaurant (to rotate) while you (to eat) and (to look down).
- 8) Countries in Asia just (to start to organize) their own leisure industries.
- 9) The Walt Disney Company (to remain) an adaptable and capable organization.

10) Many of the Canadian projects (to build) by municipalities at present.

**Exercise 4. Look through the tests and choose the right answer.**

1) Legal agreements between two companies are:

- |               |             |
|---------------|-------------|
| a) contracts; | c) memos;   |
| b) decisions; | d) reports. |

2) An agreement to pay money as compensation for loss or accident (in tourist industry):

- |                  |                        |
|------------------|------------------------|
| a) compensation; | c) travel insurance;   |
| b) points;       | d) insuring documents. |

3) Company which transport passengers (such as airline) is known as:

- |                 |                      |
|-----------------|----------------------|
| a) Eurobus;     | c) carrier;          |
| b) transporter; | d) Lincoln airlines. |

4) «Hard man» and «Soft man» is a:

- |                        |                                 |
|------------------------|---------------------------------|
| a) tactic of behavior; | c) way of signing an agreement; |
| b) manner of dressing; | d) way of looking at people.    |

5) \_\_\_\_\_ everyone Mackenzie Airport, I wish you a very pleasant journey.

- |                  |                  |
|------------------|------------------|
| a) on behalf of; | c) on behalf to; |
| b) at behalf of; | d) due to.       |

6) The flight attendant tells the seat number while:

- |                  |                         |
|------------------|-------------------------|
| a) checking in;  | c) landing;             |
| b) checking out; | d) introducing herself. |

7) You must declare any goods \_\_\_\_\_ the allowances listed on page 6.

- |          |           |
|----------|-----------|
| a) down; | c) over;  |
| b) at;   | d) above. |

8) If you arrive by air and are \_\_\_\_\_ a flight to another EU country ...

- |                     |                     |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| a) transfer to;     | c) transferred to;  |
| b) transferring to; | d) transferring at. |

9) Payment for treatment or medication should be \_\_\_\_\_ on board direct to the medical personnel.

- |          |          |
|----------|----------|
| a) paid; | c) made; |
| b) done; | d) make. |

10) Bed linen \_\_\_\_\_ twice a week.

- a) is changed;                      c) has changed;  
b) is changing;                    d) will change.

## **UNIT 5. Culture and People**

### **Exercise 1. Read the text and make the test.**

#### **Overview of the Past of Tourism**

People started travelling long ago. The word «travel» has a French origin (travail), meaning «toil and labour». Travel thus meant adventure, hardship, and risk, especially in ancient times.

Ancient people travelled for various purposes, such as pleasure, trade, scientific exploration, and religious pilgrimage. So, first travellers were nomads and pilgrims, merchants and traders. They travelled along rivers, lakes and seas.

The first travellers used simple means of travelling: boats and ferries on the water and camels in the desert. The most famous travellers were explorers. Among them were Marco Polo from Venice in the 13th century, Afanasy Nikitin from Russia, Christopher Columbus and Vasco de Gama from Portugal in the 15th century, Magellan from Spain, Amerigo Vespucci from Italy in the 16th century, James Cook from England in the 18th century and other adventurers from Spain, Italy, Portugal, France, England and Holland. They made journeys to Asia, Africa and America. Travel grew and developed as long as means of transport kept on growing.

With the 19th century the age of modern trains came. In the late 19th century the first motor-cars appeared. The age of airplanes changed travel crucially. In the early 20th century jet planes emerged. They made air travel available to all people. Air travel is the fastest and the most convenient mode of travelling. No place in the world is more than 24 hours away by jet. Passengers eat, sleep, watch movies, listen to music on airplanes.

#### **According to the text choose the correct item.**

1) The word «travel» has a ... origin

- a) Italian;  
b) Latin;  
c) Greek;  
d) French.

2) Why did ancient people travel?

- a) For a few purposes such as pleasure and trade;  
b) For some reasons such as scientific purposes and religious pilgrimage;  
c) For various reasons such as pleasure, trade, scientific exploration and religious pilgrimage;

- d) For one purpose religious pilgrimage.
- 3) So the first travellers were ...
- a) nomads, pilgrims, traders, merchants;
  - b) sportsmen and traders;
  - c) pilgrims and traders;
  - d) nomads, pilgrims, traders and explorers.
- 4) What made tourism grow and develop?
- a) explorations by the most famous travellers;
  - b) adventures and pleasure from travelling;
  - c) the growth of means of transport;
  - d) the appearance of airplanes.
- 5) The travel in the early 20th century changed crucially because
- a) of the appearance of jet planes;
  - b) of the emerge of fast trains;
  - c) the motor-cars appeared;
  - d) the ferry and ships became more available.

**Exercise 2. According to the text answer to these questions.**

1. When did people start travelling?
2. Who were the first travellers?
3. What means of travelling did they use?
4. Who were the most famous travellers?
5. What kind of journeys did they make?
6. Why did travel grow and develop?
7. What were the new means of travelling in the 19th century?
8. What kind of transportation emerged in the early 20th century?
9. What are the advantages of air travel?

**Exercise 3. Make the questions to the words in italics.**

- 1) People recognize *the therapeutic value of being in the water*.
- 2) This is not a *commercial* facility.
- 3) Europe is building *wave pools* nowadays.
- 4) There is a surfing pool *in Arizona*.
- 5) Point Mallard in Decatur, *Alabama*, is the first pool with oceanlike waves.
- 6) *Some* of the additions include an aquatic centre, open-air skating rink, etc.
- 7) The development of the *commercial sites* is becoming more rapid now.
- 8) Private corporations *build* parks as stand-alone attractions.
- 9) *The day of the barren pool environment* is dying.
- 10) New constructions include *interactive water activities*.

**Exercise 4. Look through the tests and choose the right answer.**

1) Cabaret \_\_\_\_\_ very evening in the cocktail lounge.

- a) is taken place;                      c) will be taken;  
b) will take place;                      d) will take places.

2) A large, single platform boat with most of the deck used for carrying cars and other vehicles is:

- a) catamaran;                              c) landing craft ferry;  
b) hydrofoil;                                d) passenger boat.

3) Ticket prices are regulated \_\_\_\_\_ the government.

- a) by;    c) with the help of;  
b) within;                                      d) at.

4) I do want to relax. \_\_\_\_\_ the idea was that this would be a cheap holiday.

- a) so;    c) though;  
b) nevertheless;                              d) as.

5) You can have unlimited access to the Theme Park's facilities and enjoy them to your \_\_\_\_\_ .

- a) heart's disaster;                          c) heart's content;  
b) heart's desire;                              d) heart content's.

6) I can't find my handbag! It's got my \_\_\_\_\_ and all my money.

- a) credit vouchers;                          c) credit cards;  
b) credit bonuses;                              d) credit points.

7) All the rooms have \_\_\_\_\_.

- a) air bags;                                    c) aired ventilation;  
b) air-conditioning;                              d) aromas.

8) I am delighted \_\_\_\_\_ the travel documentation.

- a) to enclosing;                              c) to enclose;  
b) enclose;                                      d) to add.

9) Their car broke \_\_\_\_\_ on the way to the airport and they missed their flight.

- a) down;                                        c) too;  
b) into;    d) up.





b) kilowatt seconds;                      d) volt hours.

8) In large building complexes, fresh air will be supplied to rooms through an \_\_\_\_\_ system.

a) humidity;                                  c) heating;  
b) air-conditioning;                      d) water-supplying.

9) Heating may be underfloor or a \_\_\_\_\_ may be fitted to the wall in each room.

a) radar;                                      c) radiator;  
b) lamp;                                      d) pipe.

10) Waste water is removed through \_\_\_\_\_ .

a) drains;                                    c) radiator;  
b) pipes;                                    d) thermos.

## UNIT 7. Geography And Climate

### Exercise 1. Match the words to have correct phrases.

1. ancient	a) holy sites
2. travelling for	b) Greeks
3. travel to	c) times
4. visit	d) pleasure
5. medieval	e) get away

### Exercise 2. Cross out one odd term in each line.

- 1) pilgrim, nomad, explorer, adventurer, desert, trader, merchant;
- 2) motor-car, raft, boat, canoe, steamboat, mode, kayak;
- 3) meals, means, arts, overseas, races, waterways, sports, sales;
- 4) leisure centre, resort, spa, travel destination, health resort, society holiday centre;
- 5) grow, develop, tour, spring up, appear, emerge;
- 6) medieval, Renaissance, ancient, future, past, further.

**Exercise 3. Look up in the dictionary the meanings of the words in bold and group them according to the titles in the chart (3 terms in each group).**

***pilgrim, inn, races, jet, adventurers, health resort, raft, caravansary, recreation, nomad, tavern, steamship boat***

Means of traveling	Lodging	Travellers	Holiday making







b) passenger list;                      d) room list.

10) List of guests in a hotel, with their room number \_\_\_\_\_ .

a) rooming list;                      c) room's list;  
b) hotel list;                      d) guests' list.

## UNIT 9. Living conditions

**Exercise 1. Choose from the list the proper term to the following definitions.**

*a raft, a caravansary, a nomad, a spa, a merchant, a pilgrim, a steamboat, an inn*

- 1) a person who travels to an important religious place, the so-called holy sites;
- 2) a place where mineral water comes out of the ground and where people go to drink the water or to bathe in it;
- 3) a place that provides accommodation, food and drinks for travellers;
- 4) a passenger ship powered by steam;
- 5) a large Eastern inn with a court in the middle;
- 6) a flat boat made of logs tied together;
- 7) a person who has no permanent place of residence;
- 8) a person who travels buying and selling goods.

**Exercise 2. Choose the right definition.**

1) **an inn**

- a) a place serving alcohol drinks;
- b) the name of hotels which are members of a chain;
- c) the name of all cheap hotels;
- d) a place serving drinks and offering accommodation for travellers.

2) **a mode**

- a) a method;
- b) a type;
- c) a fashion;
- d) a model.

3) **a raft**

- a) a small boat;
- b) a ferry;
- c) a flat boat;
- d) an old steamer.

4) **a resort**

- a) a place of residence;
- b) a hotel at the seaside;
- c) a pleasant occupation for spare time;
- d) a popular place for recreation and treatment.

**5) an overseas trip**

- a) a tour abroad;
- b) a boating trip;
- c) a cruising tour;
- d) a round-the-world tour.

**Exercise 3. Read the text about the tourism in Ukraine, then make up 10 sentences and write them.**

### **The Outset of Tourism in Ukraine**

The origin of travels in Ukraine can be traced back to the times of the first ancient Rus state called «Ruska Zemlia» (X-XI centuries). Written literary works mention that Rus of X-XIth centuries had broad and mutual relations with different countries: Byzantine, Poland, Hungary, France, Germany, Scandinavian countries. But even before that time, in VI-X centuries when Byzantine emperors fought with Kyiv pre-Christian princes the Rusins travelled by boats on the Dnipro and along the Black Sea Coast to Tsarhorod (Constantinopol).

The first European traveller in Ukraine was Bruno from Querfurt (Germany) who visited Volodymyr the Great in Kyiv and wrote a letter about it to the emperor Heinrich II in approximately 1008. Titmar, the Bishop of Merserburg (X-XI centuries) mentioned in his chronicle that Kyiv was a big city, a capital with more than 400 churches and 8 markets and a lot of inhabitants. During Tatar-Mongol invasion Ukraine was not a much visited country as it, surely, wasn't appealing to travellers. And it was only in XV-XVI centuries when the country became more and more visited, mainly by those who travelled from the Western and Southern Europe to the East, they were mostly Italians.

An interesting visit was made by Erik Liasota, a messenger of the German Emperor Rudolph II to Cossacks into Zaporizhia Sich in 1594. All those French, German, Italian, English, Dutch people who first stepped on Ukrainian land at the Cossacks times usually described Ukraine with excitement and sympathy.

A German traveller, Ulrick von Verdum, travelled through Ukraine not once in the XVII century and described his impressions about Volyn and Podillia in his 508-page «Diary». All in all, he paid 4 separate visits to Ukraine.

Not only foreigners came to Ukraine. Ukrainians, as well, travelled to West Europe and Middle East searching for new trading contacts or to conquer neighbour territories.

The Princess Olha may be called the first Ukrainian woman-traveller. She toured around the whole territory of Kyiv Rus and paid a visit to the Byzantine emperor in Constantinopol.

But the main reason for travelling in ancient times was religion. St Antoni from Chernihiv territory, the founder of Kyiv-Pechery Monastery is regarded to be the first pilgrim-traveller in Ukraine. He went to Greece to Aphon mountain as a pilgrim. And for the second time he went there to protest against Boris and Hlib's murder by Prince Sviatopolk.

Other famous pilgrims who travelled to the east holy places in XI-XII centuries, were Hegumen Varlaam from Dmytriy Monastery in Kiev, Hegumen Niphont (Volynskyi), Hegumen Yephrem from Kyiv-Pechery Monastery.

Undoubtedly, Ukrainian Cossack Yakiv Malyk, a brave traveller, should be mentioned as well. In the mid XVI century he travelled to India, became Hudzharat's councillor and there constructed a fortress in Renaissance style.

Due to different motives: pilgrimage, desire to get good knowledge and education in the XVII-XIX centuries, Ukrainian famous travellers Vasyl Hryhorovich-Barskyi, Hrihoriy Skovoroda, Mykola Miklukho-Maklai made a great contribution to the development of tourism in Ukraine.

Ukrainians contributed into geographical study of the Earth. For instance, one of the leaders of the first Russian round-the-world expedition on ships «Nadia» and «Neva» was Y. F. Lysianskyi (1773-1837) from Nizhin in Chernihiv area; M. M. Przhevalskyi (1839- 1888) who headed 5 expeditions into Central Asia, etc.

So, in result of all those and travels expeditions of native and foreign travellers, much information in geography and history of Ukraine and other countries was collected. And it gave solid grounds to develop tourism in the second half of the XIXth century in Ukraine.

#### **Exercise 4. Look through the tests and choose the right answer.**

1) To keep meat moist when roasting, cover it regularly with melted fat:

- |            |            |
|------------|------------|
| a) baste;  | c) mince;  |
| b) simmer; | d) fillet. |

2) A chess set, draughts and children's games, etc. are available on \_\_\_\_\_ from Reception.

- |            |                |
|------------|----------------|
| a) asking; | c) loan;       |
| b) borrow; | d) permission. |

3) The couple \_\_\_\_\_ the hotel to celebrate a birthday.

- |              |           |
|--------------|-----------|
| a) went to;  | c) drive; |
| b) moved to; | d) run.   |

4) Filthy apartment is one that is:

- |                |                          |
|----------------|--------------------------|
| a) very clean; | c) filled with aroma;    |
| b) very dirty; | d) moderately furnished. |

5) Your car will be delivered to your hotel free of \_\_\_\_\_ with a full \_\_\_\_\_ of patrol.

- a) payment, trunk;                      c) charge, bank;  
b) charge, tank;                         d) money, tank.

6) If you have problems with the car hired it will be \_\_\_\_\_ without any problems.

- a) destroyed;                                c) changed;  
b) sold;                                        d) exchanged.

7) \_\_\_\_\_ economy class, business class can be quite expensive.

- a) unlike;                                    c) like;  
b) whereas;                                 d) when.

8) A very large show of goods, advertising, etc., for people who work in a particular industry is:

- a) exhibition;                                c) vanity fair;  
b) rack display;                             d) trade fair.

9) This conference hall has a seating \_\_\_\_\_ of sixty.

- a) capacity;                                 c) sits;  
b) amount;                                 d) numbers.

10) It can take \_\_\_\_\_ sixty people.

- a) in to;                                      c) up too;  
b) up to;                                      d) at to.

## UNIT 10. Ethnic Groups

**Exercise 1. Complete the table of nouns and adjectives.**

	<b>Noun</b>	<b>Adjective</b>
1	enthusiasm	enthusiastic
2		experienced
3	friend	
4		able
5	relevance	
6	permanence	
7		responsible
8	availability	
9		aware
10	suitability	

**Exercise 2. Fill in the gaps in the following sentences using either the noun or the adjective in each pair in the table. The sentences are not in the same order as the table.**

*e.g.: She'd be marvelous at organizing children's activities because she's got lots of enthusiasm*

- 1) I'm rather shy and reserved, so I don't think a job in Reception would be \_\_\_\_\_ for me.
- 2) Please send us a letter and a CV giving details of your qualifications and \_\_\_\_\_ experience.
- 3) I'm surprised that she has decided to leave. I wasn't \_\_\_\_\_ that she wasn't happy here.
- 4) If you want to work in Front Office, you have to develop the \_\_\_\_\_ to do three things at the same time.
- 5) She is always happy, smiling, and \_\_\_\_\_, so everyone likes her.
- 6) I have several years' \_\_\_\_\_ of working in a large hotel.
- 7) The Head Housekeeper is \_\_\_\_\_ for making sure that the rooms are kept in good condition.
- 8) Could you phone Mr. Peters and ask him when he would be \_\_\_\_\_ for the interview?
- 9) I worked there on a three-month contract but I did well and at the end they offered me a \_\_\_\_\_ job.

**Exercise 3. Sum up the duties of the mentioned employees (Product Manager, Trainee Hotel Manager, Conference Coordinator, Travel Consultant, Cabin Attendant, Business Travel Consultant) by answering the questions.**

*What does ... have to do?*

*What things might you enjoy about the work?*

*What things would you not enjoy about it?*

**Use the phrases:**

*He or she has to ...*

*It would be interesting to ...*

*It would be awful to have to ...*

*Something I wouldn't enjoy is ...*

*Another thing he or she has to do is ...*

**Exercise 4. Look through the tests and choose the right answer.**

- 1) With a \_\_\_\_\_ the current economic situation, we can expect fewer visitors this year.
  - a) demand to;
  - b) view into;
  - c) view at;
  - d) view to;

- 2) \_\_\_\_\_ is a trip which informs people about resorts.
- a) business trip;                      c) luxurious trip;  
b) familiarization trip;              d) holiday trip;
- 3) A plan of a journey is known as:
- a) itinerary;                              c) scheme;  
b) route;                                    d) map;
- 4) A piece of advertising material sent to potential customers by post is called:
- a) mailing list;                            c) post notice;  
b) mailshot;                                d) advert leaf;
- 5) If we had more money, we \_\_\_\_\_ our winters abroad.
- a) would spend;                        c) are to spend;  
b) will spend;                            d) had spent.
- 6) Mass-market tour operator is one who sells:
- a) very cheap holidays;                c) very popular holidays;  
b) very nice holidays;                    d) dangerous holidays;
- 7) A piece of paper exchanged for goods or services is:
- a) voucher;                                c) bill;  
b) receipt;                                 d) traveller's cheque;
- 8) When you decide which room a guest will stay in, you:
- a) give a room;                            c) allocate a room;  
b) proscribe a room;                    d) appoint a room;
- 9) «Sipping your cocktail» means:
- a) drink;                                    c) smell;  
b) spilt;                                    d) make.
- 10) T.Cook organized his first major continental \_\_\_\_\_ in 1885.
- a) firm;                                      c) tour;  
b) trip;                                      d) excursion.

## UNIT 11. Family relationships

### Exercise 1. Match the words in the box with the definitions.

<i>a. salary</i>	<i>b. bonus</i>	<i>c. wages</i>	<i>d. commission</i>
<i>e. overtime</i>	<i>f. fee</i>	<i>g. tip</i>	<i>h. perks</i>

- 1) The extra things, such as luncheon vouchers or free medical insurance, over and above the basic pay.
- 2) A small sum of money given to reward the service of people like waiters or taxi drivers.
- 3) Money paid every month, but referred to as annual earnings paid of professional and managerial staff.
- 4) Money paid to a professional person, e. g. a doctor or lawyer for advice given.
- 5) Money paid to a manual worker, usually calculated hourly and paid weekly.
- 6) Money added to pay, usually as a reward for good work.
- 7) Money that is paid for extra hours of work.
- 8) Money earned as a proportion of the goods or services sold by an individual.

### Exercise 2. Fill in the gaps with a word from the box above.

1. She left school without any qualifications then got a factory job, but the \_\_\_\_\_ weren't very good.
2. The basic remuneration isn't high but she earns 15% \_\_\_\_\_ on every tour she sells.
3. The salary is not exceptional but the \_\_\_\_\_ include the use of a car and subsidized accommodation.
4. The consultants charged as a \_\_\_\_\_ of £2,000 for an hour's work.
5. The starting \_\_\_\_\_ is £35,000 per annum rising to £40,000 after two years.
6. We gave the guide a good \_\_\_\_\_ because she made the visit so interesting.
7. The company paid each employee a £250 Christmas \_\_\_\_\_ as profits had never been so high.
8. If they work on a Sunday, they get \_\_\_\_\_ which is double their usual rate of pay.

### Exercise 3. Complete the sentences with words from the vocabulary box.

<i>skilled, unskilled, semi-skilled, highly-skilled</i>
---

**e.g.:** A *highly-skilled* chef can earn a lot of money. Being a porter is a relatively *unskilled* job.

- 1) Dealing with difficult members of the public requires good communication *skills*.
- 2) Designing a good computer reservations system demands up-to-date \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3) She's done a large number of relatively \_\_\_\_\_ jobs. She's been a chambermaid, a cleaner and a waitress.
- 4) He has to co-ordinate the work of several departments so he's \_\_\_\_\_ at organizing schedules.
- 5) If you work in a call centre, it's essential to have excellent \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6) Conference interpreting is a \_\_\_\_\_ occupation.
- 7) The problem was solved by her \_\_\_\_\_ handling of a difficult situation.
- 8) Reading and writing \_\_\_\_\_ are essential when working in a brochure production department.
- 9) I admire his \_\_\_\_\_ at dealing with difficult members of the public.
- 10) Managing the finances of a large hotel is a \_\_\_\_\_ job.
- 11) Many hotel managers began their careers in \_\_\_\_\_ positions such as receptionist or housekeeper.

## UNIT 12. Gender equality

**Exercise 1. Fill in the correct word from the list below. Use the words only once.**

*separate, supervise, luggage, package, local, flight, comfort, travel*

- 1) to develop a tour ...
- 2) ... services;
- 3) handle the ... of the group;
- 4) ... guide-books;
- 5) to look after passenger's rooms and ...
- 6) ... sightseeing;
- 7) to ... tourist operations and the staff
- 8) ... attendant.

**Exercise 2. Fill in the correct preposition, then choose any five items and make sentences.**

- 1) to pay commission ... smb;
- 2) promotion ... new tour packages;
- 3) to be responsible ... smth;
- 4) familiar ... smth;
- 5) to decide ... prices and discounts;
- 6) to be ... charge ... smth/smb;
- 7) ... addition ...
- 8) to keep ... touch ... smb.



7) To obtain stored information from computer's memory is known as:

- a) access;
- b) get;
- c) buy;
- d) draw out.

8) He needs to buy some plasters at a \_\_\_\_\_ .

- a) baker's;
- b) butcher's;
- c) chemist's;
- d) mall.

9) Milk, cream, butter, yogurt belong to the group of \_\_\_\_\_ products:

- a) dairy;
- b) diary;
- c) pastry;
- d) pulses.

10) When we break eggs into boiling water and vinegar it is known as:

- a) garnishing;
- b) flavoring;
- c) poaching;
- d) frying.

## PART II. INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

### I. METHODOLOGICAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR SEMINAR (PRACTICAL) CLASSES

#### UNIT 1. Professional Issues in International Relations

**Task 1. Read the text and find the ways of overcoming cultural differences. Say if you know any other ways of overcoming them.**

#### Ways of Overcoming Cultural Differences

In everyday life and in business it is important to learn to overcome difficulties due to cultural differences. Because of cultural diversity people of different cultures can view the same things unequally.

To overcome these difficulties, it's important to develop the skills of empathy. Do thorough analysis of another culture using different sources and imagine how people belonging to this culture will perceive the values of your culture and the behaviour of the people caused by it. Take into account the individuality of each person in the boundaries of his or her culture. Learn the right variant of spelling of their names and the way you'll appeal to them. See who usually makes the decisions in the country: people of the top (France, Greece, Spain, Italy) or of the middle rank (Nordic countries), the individuals (the USA) or the groups of people (Japan).

Use different approaches in a masculine or a feminine culture: the decisions are more assertive in the masculine culture, e. g., in Great Britain or the USA. And be especially careful with the attitude towards the women in the countries of Asia, Africa and the Middle East. The type of culture also makes an impact on the duration in making business decisions. It can be a short-term period in the western countries and a long-term period in the eastern countries to resolve the problem.

Consider implicit style of communication in the countries of Asia, more direct style in the countries of Europe, Australia and the USA and the difference in the discourse if the talk is started with the topic of the conversation or the pre-talk.

You can learn more about the culture and communication style of the country living for some time in the local community of this country or ask for advice from people who had previously lived in the country and are well aware of its culture, traditions and customs.

**Task 2. Choose any country with the culture which differs from the culture of your nationality and think over how you will act to succeed in overcoming cultural differences.**

**Task 3. Match the type of tourism with its definition and an example.**

Type of tourism	Definition	Example
<i>Adventure tourism</i>	holidays to resorts where there is snow	a foreign language

<i>Cultural tourism</i>	to celebrate religious event or visit important religious places	any of the other kinds of tourism
<i>Ecotourism</i>	to explore distant places or do extreme activities	Mecca for Muslims
<i>Educational tourism</i>	to learn about history, art and people's lifestyles	monuments or museums
<i>Gap year tourism</i>	to learn something	rainforests
<i>Health tourism</i>	to look after your body and mind	skiing or snowboarding
<i>Recreational tourism</i>	to play or watch different sporting events	spa resorts
<i>Religious tourism</i>	to take ethical and responsible trips to natural environments	the beach
<i>Sport tourism</i>	to relax and have fun	the Olympic Games
<i>Winter tourism</i>	when young people go backpacking or do voluntary work between school and university	trekking

**Task 4. Underline the correct answer to each question.**

1) People travel...

- a) for different reasons.      b) to go on holiday.      c) to get to work.

2) You can take...

- a) day and evening trips.      b) study and business trips.      c) theatre and cinema trips.

3) Tourism is travel...

- a) in your home town.      b) to countries across the world.      c) to places where you don't live.

4) Ecotourism is ethical and responsible about...

- a) money.      b) shopping.      c) the environment.

5) The Olympics is a...

- a) sporting event.      b) summer event.      c) winter event.

6) A spa is a place you visit to...

- a) celebrate a religious event.      b) learn something new.      c) look after your health.

**Task 5. Read the text and complete the table with the correct information.**

Tourism is a multi-billion dollar business with hundreds of millions of travellers arriving in destinations across the world every year, but there's a lot more to tourism than just the tourists. Before you even leave home you probably use a number of services. You book your trip through a tour operator, if it's a package holiday, or a travel agent, if you want to buy products and services like flights separately.

These days, many people book directly online with companies that offer both organised and independent travel. You usually need to purchase airline, train, ferry and coach tickets to your holiday resort in advance to reserve a seat and get a good price. If you're hiring a car it's also a good idea to book in advance, but you can arrange local transport like taxis and buses when you're there.

You also need to book accommodation to be sure to stay where you want, when you want. There is a wide range of options for different people and pockets: from luxury hotels to roadside motels, family-run guesthouses or B&Bs (Bed and Breakfasts), to selfcatering apartments to youth hostels. You can decide about hospitality (catering and entertainment) during your holiday, unless you book it with your accommodation. B&B means you get breakfast included in the price of your stay. Half board, usually only available at hotels, means breakfast and dinner are included. Full board means breakfast, lunch and dinner are included. This option is common on package or cruise ship holidays to keep the cost down, as are all inclusive leisure activities such as sport, shopping and live shows.

Most places have a Tourist Information Point where they give you free information about what to see and do and how to get around. Organised trips often have travel reps (representatives) on hand to help you, but you can also pay a local tour guide to take you sightseeing or show you tourist attractions.

**Hospitality**

Accommodation (Where to stay)	Catering (Where to eat)	Entertainment and leisure (What to do)	Jobs (Who does what)	Transport (How to travel)	Holiday types (What kind of holiday)
luxury hotels	bed and breakfast	sport	tour operator	plane	package holiday

**Task 6. Read the text again and answer the questions.**

1. How many travellers arrive in destinations across the world every year?
2. How can you book holidays?
3. Why do you need to purchase tickets for airlines, trains, ferries and coaches in advance?
4. What other transport service is it a good idea to book in advance?

5. When can you arrange local transport?
6. For whom and what is there a wide range of different accommodation options?
7. Which kind of accommodation includes breakfast, lunch and dinner?
8. Where is this a common option?
9. Do you pay for information from Tourist Information Points?
10. Who can take you sightseeing or show you tourist attractions?

**Task 7.** There is a problem with the *Holidays you like* online booking system. Write them an email giving them the information in your trip search. Use these expressions to help you:

*I want to book...*

*I want to leave on... at...*

*I'm interested in...*

*tourism I'd like to travel by...*

*I'd like to return on... at...*

*In particular, I'd like to...*

*I'm leaving from...*

*I'd like to book accommodation in I'm going to...*

*a... with (catering)*

**Task 8.** Look the following words. Repeat them, translate in your native language. Make the sentences with them taking into account your speciality.

*Accommodation, package, holiday, airline, to purchase, backpacking, recreational, to book, to reserve, catering, roadside motel, cruise, self-catering, entertainment, sightseeing, guesthouse, spa resort, flight, to take a break, full board, tour guide, half board, tour operator, to hire, travel representative, hospitality, tourist information point, journey, travel agent, leisure, youth hostel, luxury hotel.*

## **UNIT 2. Historical Development of International Relations**

**Task 1.** Read the text about international organizations and retell it.

Tourism organisations fall into three categories.

Firstly, they can be non-governmental organisations or a charity like the World Tourism Organisation, a United Nations' organisation which promotes 'the development of responsible, sustainable and universally accessible tourism' (UNWTO).

Secondly, they can be government organisations like Britain's national tourism agency, Visit Britain, which markets British tourism at home and abroad.

Thirdly, they can be private sector organisations like Thomas Cook, which promote and sell holidays for profit. We can separate this last group into three more categories. Independent companies have one or more branches, which can often be

close to each other. They sell their holidays to people locally and market them by word of mouth.

Miniple companies have several branches in different areas, which sometimes use different trade names and they have a head office, which can manage the organisation's marketing strategy centrally. Multiple agencies have branches in all major towns and cities and they can be part of very large tourism sector companies. They market holidays on the basis of competitive prices or special offer packages.

In addition to this, travel agents can be members of trade associations, organisations representing travel companies who can help with marketing and protect customers' rights. Of course, nowadays many people prefer online do-it-yourself tourism to any of these organisations.

**Task 2. Read the text again and complete the table.**

Category of tourism organisation	Example	Type of organisation and what they do
non-governmental organisations/ a charity	UNWTO	
		markets British tourism at home and abroad
private sector organisations		
independent		have one or more branches, ...
miniple		
multiple		
trade associations		

**Task 3. Write the equivalent word in your language.**

charity	to market
sustainable	word of mouth
promote	trade name
profit	head office
branch	competitive

**Task 4. Complete this text about the National Trust with the words and expressions in exercise 3.**

The National Trust is a (1) *charity* and a non-(2)\_\_\_\_\_ organisation, which (3)\_\_\_\_\_ British tourism to artistic, historical and natural sites in a (4)\_\_\_\_\_ way. It has two (5)\_\_\_\_\_, one in London and another in Swindon, as well as hundreds of (6)\_\_\_\_\_ all over the UK. Places with the (7)\_\_\_\_\_ «National Trust» (8)\_\_\_\_\_ themselves through the image of conservation and heritage. However, many of the thousands of visitors to National Trust sites hear about them by (9)\_\_\_\_\_ from friends, colleagues or relatives. They provide great days out for the

whole family as you can enter many sites for free and you can also hire venues for special events at extremely (10)\_\_\_\_\_ prices.

**Task 5. Match the terms with the correct definitions.**

1) Advertising	a) It keeps a product or service in the minds of customers and helps stimulate their demand for it.
2) Promotion	b) It makes sure that customers buy a product or service by understanding and meeting their needs.
3) Marketing	c) It brings a product or service to the attention of customers through the media to persuade them to buy it.

**Task 6. Look the following words. Repeat them, translate in your native language. Make the sentences with them taking into account your speciality.**

*Ad\advert\advertisement, to advertise, artwork, banner, budget craft, customers' rights, demand, development, DIY (do-it-yourself), e-marketing, government organisation, heritage, landscaped garden, lawn, leaflet, locally, market segmentation, marketing tool, to meet the needs, miniple/ multiple, non-governmental organisation*

**Task 7. Fill the gaps in the sentences using the correct words and phrases from the box below.**

<i>word of mouth</i>	<i>efficiently</i>	<i>potential</i>	<i>return</i>	<i>bankruptcy</i>
<i>anticipate</i>	<i>effectively</i>	<i>warehouse</i>	<i>incur</i>	<i>stockpiled</i>

1) A \_\_\_\_\_ customer is someone who doesn't yet buy from you but might do in the future.

2) To \_\_\_\_\_ a situation is when you know that something is going to happen and act before it does.

3) \_\_\_\_\_ is when people talk about something (e.g. a new product) among themselves, so that it becomes known.

4) When a large quantity of products are stored ready for use, they are \_\_\_\_\_.

5) A \_\_\_\_\_ is a place where goods are stored.

6) When your actions mean you have to pay for something (usually unnecessarily), you \_\_\_\_\_ costs.

7) When you do something \_\_\_\_\_, you do it in a way that does not waste time, effort or money.

8) When you do something \_\_\_\_\_, you do it in a way that produces the effect you intended.

9) A \_\_\_\_\_ on investment is the profit you make when you invest in something.

10) \_\_\_\_\_ is when a company or person can't pay what they owe.

## **UNIT 3. Institutions in International Relations**

### **Task 1. Read the four texts about different types of transport.**

1) Air travel is a fast way of travelling both for domestic and international journeys. Some airline companies operate scheduled flights, when take-off and landing are at major airports in major cities. Because departure and arrival times are regular and guaranteed tickets can be expensive. Alternatively, there are cheap charter flights when a travel company buys all the seats on a plane and sells at a discounted price. Charter airlines and low-cost scheduled airlines often operate from more accessible local airports and fly direct to holiday resorts, particularly in peak season. You usually need to buy tickets in advance. It is also possible to buy round the world tickets where you stop off at different global destinations. There is a limit to how much luggage passengers can carry and it takes time to check-in for flights due to security checks. Nowadays many people try to avoid taking too many flights because they aren't good for the environment.

2) Sea travel can be a clean alternative to air travel. Ferries operate from one mainland destination to another, or between islands, departing and arriving at major ports. You can often take your car on ferries and there are no limits on the luggage you can carry. Journeys are long compared to flights and they can be quite expensive, especially if you sleep in a cabin overnight. You can buy tickets directly from the ferry companies or through tour operators, usually in advance. You can also take a luxury cruise, but they are generally quite expensive, all-inclusive packages.

3) Rail travel also has a low environmental impact and is a very flexible and convenient mode of transport because you can buy tickets in advance or just turn up at the station. Price varies a lot according to distance and destination. Luggage allowance is limited on trains, but on long distance trips you can book a bed to sleep in, called a berth. There are also young person's rail passes for travelling around Europe and many countries have cheap or subsidised rail travel. Road travel can be by car or by coach, but neither is very environmentally friendly.

4) Car travel is very convenient because you can choose your own departure and arrival points and times, and take as much luggage as your vehicle can carry. The cost is generally low apart from fuel and any tolls, but travel time can be long. Alternatively you can arrive at your destination and hire a car on arrival, but this can be expensive. Coaches, like trains, follow timetables and you need to buy tickets in advance to be sure of a seat. Journeys can be slow and arrival times are unpredictable because of traffic. They are however cheap and convenient, with stops at both major and minor destinations.

### **Task 2. Read the four texts again and answer the questions.**

Which type of transport:

- 1) can be quite expensive if you travel overnight?
- 2) has a low environmental impact?
- 3) has a luxury version with all-inclusive packages?

- 4) has limits on passenger luggage?
- 5) has long security checks?
- 6) has unpredictable arrival times?
- 7) is convenient because you can choose your own route?
- 8) is not environmentally friendly?
- 9) operates between mainlands or islands?
- 10) has guaranteed departure and arrival times?

**Task 3. Read these airport procedures and put them in the order you should do them.**

- a) Arrive at the airport and go to the correct check-in desk.
- b) Check in your luggage and take your boarding pass.
- c) Give the airline staff your passport and booking information.
- d) Present your boarding card and identification for inspection at passport control.
- e) Proceed to the departure gate when it opens.
- f) Put your hand luggage and coat through the security check.
- g) Show your passport and boarding card to staff before boarding,
- h) Walk through the metal detector.

**Task 4. Read the text and complete the table.**

You're at your holiday destination, and now you need to continue your journey. Taxis are quick and efficient for short journeys, but they can be expensive.

Many charge per passenger, piece of luggage, as well as surcharges for airport and night time journeys. If you want to be free to travel when and where you like, car hire can offer good value. You pay a daily or weekly rate for hiring a car, plus fuel costs and you choose the kind of the car you want, but most are bad for the environment.

Adventurous tourists can rent a motorbike, moped or bicycle. These are cheaper and also more environmentally-friendly, but watch out for traffic or people stealing your bike!

For people on a budget, public transport is a good and green option. Cities usually have a choice of underground, buses, trains and sometimes trams and cable cars too.

In small towns, the options are more limited. Cost and convenience vary a lot in different places, so look out for special offers like combination tickets, weekend or all-day travel passes. Of course, if you want to save your money and the planet, you could always walk!

Mode of transport	Positive things about it	Negative things about it
taxi		
		bad for the environment
motorbike	adventurous	
public transport	good for people on a	cost and convenience vary

	budget	a lot

**Task 5. Read the email below. Who is it to?**

*To the head of tourist information*

*Dear Sir/Madam,*

*As you know our town is twinned with yours and we are currently working on a joint project to promote tourism in both towns. I am writing to you to find out about the local transport services available. I am preparing a leaflet with information for our residents about what local transport to expect on arrival in your town and I would like some help from you.*

*We would like to know what public and private hire transport is available; how much it costs on average; whether it is convenient and reliable for getting around town and visiting tourist attractions and any other relevant information. Please could you write back to me as soon as possible with as much detail as possible?*

*Kind regards*

*John Humphries*

*Tourist information officer*

**Task 6. Read the email again and answer the questions.**

- 1) Who is the email from?
- 2) What is the relationship between the two towns?
- 3) What is the joint project for?
- 4) Why is John Humphries writing?
- 5) What information does he want to know?
- 6) When would he like to receive a reply?

**Task 7. Look the following words. Repeat them, translate in your native language. Make the sentences with them taking into account your speciality.**

<i>Aisle seat,</i>	<i>berth,</i>	<i>boarding pass,</i>	<i>cable car,</i>	<i>to charge,</i>	<i>cheap,</i>
<i>day return,</i>	<i>coach,</i>	<i>departure,</i>	<i>discounted price,</i>	<i>environmentally-</i>	
<i>friendly,</i>	<i>ferry,</i>	<i>fuel gate,</i>	<i>hand luggage,</i>	<i>landing,</i>	<i>long distance,</i>
<i>low environmental,</i>	<i>impact,</i>	<i>luggage allowance,</i>	<i>mainland,</i>	<i>moped,</i>	
<i>motorbike,</i>	<i>overcrowding,</i>	<i>overnight,</i>	<i>passenger,</i>	<i>peak season,</i>	
<i>platform,</i>	<i>private hire,</i>	<i>rate,</i>	<i>return ticket,</i>	<i>scale,</i>	<i>scheduled flight,</i>
<i>security checks,</i>	<i>surcharge,</i>	<i>take-off,</i>	<i>toll,</i>	<i>travel pass,</i>	<i>twinned</i>
<i>towns,</i>	<i>weekly,</i>	<i>window seat,</i>	<i>airline steward.</i>		

### Task 8. Making requests.

Look at the way the people in the restaurants ask for things:

- *Can you bring us a bottle of water please?*
- *Could you change mine?*
- *Could we possibly order, please?*
- *Do you think you could bring us the wine list, ...?*

Now write down similar questions using the verbs in brackets.

- a) You don't know the telephone number of a caller. (give)
- b) You didn't hear the customer's surname. (repeat)
- c) You don't know how to spell the name of a town. (spell)
- d) You want to know if there are any vegetarians in the group. (tell)
- e) You are not sure what time a guest is arriving. (confirm)
- f) You want to check how many people there are in a group. (tell)

## UNIT 4. Concepts of Analysis in International Relations

### Task 1. Make the test.

1) If you've never been to this city, you should take a look at our sight-seeing

- a) menu
- b) brochures
- c) front desk

2) Sorry, we don't have a \_\_\_\_\_ service. You'll have to park your car yourself.

- a) room
- b) laundry
- c) valet

3) The room has a pull-\_\_\_\_\_ couch, so it will sleep an extra person.

- a) off
- b) over
- c) out

4) I'm sorry, but we don't have any vacancies. We are fully-\_\_\_\_\_ tonight.

- a) vacant
- b) booked
- c) closed

5) After your long conference you can relax in the

- a) kitchenette
- b) parking lot
- c) hot tub

6) I'll call housekeeping and ask them to bring you some fresh

- a) ice
- b) milk
- c) linen

7) If you need to do your workout we have a \_\_\_\_\_ on the third floor.

- a) gym
- b) restaurant
- c) library

8) You might like to voice your complaint about the rate to the

- a) housekeeper
- b) valet driver
- c) hotel manager

9) Please put your used \_\_\_\_\_ in the basket and leave unused ones hanging on the rack.

- a) dishes
- b) towels
- c) tissues

10) If you need a midnight snack there's a \_\_\_\_\_ full of potato chips on your floor.

- a) bellboy
- b) kitchenette
- c) vending machine

## **Task 2. Read the text and retell it.**

Nowadays, the choice of tourist accommodation to suit your taste, budget and destination is endless. At the high end of the market there are hotels, offering rooms and meals. Motels are similar, except they are for motorists. So they are generally on major roads and always provide parking, but not always meals. B&Bs, or guesthouses, differ from hotels as they are usually small, less expensive, owner-occupied, family-run businesses without staff on call 24/7.

Alternatively, holiday villages are popular with families who may be travelling on a budget. They offer a choice of self-catering accommodation from small wooden cabins or chalets to studio apartments to large holiday villas, all in modern resorts with many leisure and recreational services available on site. Private holiday rental

offers a wide variety of accommodation. Then there are timeshares, where several people own accommodation they can use at specific periods each year.

To avoid getting bored with the same destination, how about doing a house swap, where people holiday in each others' houses? Hostels provide a low-cost, self-catering alternative to hotels, and appeal to young travellers, as the shared dormitories make it easy to meet people. Increasingly, universities offer campus accommodation in students' halls of residence during the holidays. This is the type of accommodation you often find on study holidays, but it can also be a cheap and sociable way to take a city break. If you're looking for an adventure on a budget, campsites are perfect. You can take your own tent, or even stay in a traditional round Mongolian yurt or a tall Native American tepee.

For more comfort, there are also caravans and campervans, which enable you to enjoy a holiday on the move. Finally, if you like to combine transport and accommodation, why not try a barge, a long flat boat which travels on rivers and canals, or a yacht if you prefer the sea.

**Task 3. Read the text again and choose the correct answer.**

- 1) Hotels are accommodation at the
  - a) budget end of the market.
  - b) high end of the market.
  - c) low end of the market.
  
- 2) Guesthouses and B&Bs are different from hotels because they are generally run by
  - a) families.
  - b) one person.
  - c) staff 24/7.
  
- 3) You can visit a timeshare
  - a) all year round.
  - b) at a specific time each year.
  - c) only in the summer.
  
- 4) House swapping helps you to
  - a) avoid boredom.
  - b) avoid cooking.
  - c) make friends.
  
- 5) Hostels appeal to
  - a) couples.
  - b) families.
  - c) young people.
  
- 6) Campus accommodation is available for tourists to rent during
  - a) the holidays and term time.
  - b) the holidays.
  - c) term time.
  
- 7) For comfortable and mobile campsite holidays try
  - a) campervans.
  - b) tents.
  - c) tepees.
  
- 8) Which of these isn't a kind of boat?
  - a) Barge
  - b) Yacht
  - c) Yurt

**Task 4. Read the text about accommodation services and facilities and complete the table.**

The kind of facilities and services available to you on holiday varies greatly according to your choice of accommodation. Catered accommodation such as hotels, guest houses and B&Bs is generally categorised using a star system which varies from country to country.

Generally, one star tends to indicate budget accommodation, offering basic facilities such as en suite bathrooms and TVs in all the rooms and services such as breakfast, drinks and daily room cleaning by chambermaids.

Two stars may additionally offer guests bath towels, complimentary toiletries such as shower gel, a reading light, and a credit card payment facility.

Three star hotels often also provide a hairdryer and telephone in every room as well as internet access either in a public area or in the room, laundry and ironing services, and the hotel reception is staffed for around 14 hours by bilingual staff, speaking English and the native language.

The reception of a four star hotel should be manned for up to 18 hours, have a refrigerated minibar or room service for drinks, and an a la carte restaurant. There would also probably be a lift and more comfortable furniture.

Finally, five star luxury accommodation should offer a reception area staffed 24/7 by multilingual staff, a doorman to welcome guests, valet parking, a porter to take luggage to your room, and a safe in the room for valuables. There are often gym and spa facilities available too.

one star	two stars	three stars	four stars	five stars
en suite bathroom	complimentary toiletries	hairdryer	reception manned for up to 18 hours	reception area manned 24/7

**Task 5. Match the hotel staff with the service they provide.**

1) chambermaid	a) welcoming guests
2) doorman	b) restaurant
3) multilingual staff	c) luggage service
4) porter	d) reception
5) waiter	e) cleaning rooms

**Task 6. Role play a conversation between a guest and a receptionist asking and answering about different services. Take notes about the available services, then swap roles. Use these expressions to help you.**

*Another thing...*

*I'm calling from/about...*

*Can I help you with anything else?*

*Is it possible for me to have...?*

*I can't find the...*  
*It/they should be...*  
*I'd like to book... for 8 p.m.*  
*There are a few things missing...*  
*I'm afraid we don't have...*  
*You need to book...*

**Task 7. Look the following words. Repeat them, translate in your native language. Make the sentences with them taking into account your speciality.**

*Barge, bath towel, cabin, campsite, chambermaid, complimentary, doorman, en suite, bathroom, family-run, guest, gym and spa, house swap, ironing, laundry, on call, on site, owner-occupied, porter, safe, single, occupancy, studio apartment, tent, term time, timeshare, toiletries, valet, parking, valuables.*

## UNIT 5. Theories of International Studies

**Task 1. Find necessary information and complete the table with information in each category.**

Country	Accommodation	Activities	Wildlife and natural habitats	Ecotourism elements
<i>India</i>	<i>eco-lodges</i>	<i>photography</i>	<i>tigers</i>	<i>sustainable wildlife parks; group sizes limited to three</i>

**Task 2. Match the following hotel staff positions with their main area of responsibility.**

1) Room attendant	a) Takes bookings and checks people in and out.
2) Concierge	b) Runs the hotel cleaning.
3) Desk clerk	c) Runs the hotel.
4) General Manager	d) Cleans rooms and bathrooms.
5) Housekeeper	e) Carries luggage to and from guests' rooms.
6) Hotel Porter	f) Assists guests by arranging tours and making bookings.

### Task 3. Read the text about hotel staff positions.

There are many specialist roles in a hotel staff. The front desk clerk, often known as the receptionist, takes bookings, checks guests in and out of the hotel, bills them and provides general information. For this role you must be polite, organised and have good language skills.

The porter, also called a bellboy, or bellhop in the US, shows you to your room and carries your luggage for you. They may also move and set up equipment for meetings and conferences, take messages and run errands.

The hotel housekeeper manages the cleaning staff; supervises their work; draws up their rotas and deals with linen, toiletry and cleaning supplies. They need to be organised, pay attention to detail and have good budgetary skills.

Hotel room attendants, more commonly known as chambermaids, make sure hotel rooms are clean, tidy and inviting for guests. They change bed linen and towels; make the beds; vacuum floors; dust and polish furniture; clean bathrooms; replace toiletries and restock the minibar. This role is physically demanding and can often be seasonal or part-time.

The word concierge is French for caretaker, but in a hotel they help guests with problems; give them information and assist them with bookings, especially for transportation and sightseeing. A concierge should have good local knowledge and excellent communication skills.

Hotel managers oversee all aspects of running a hotel, from housekeeping and general maintenance to budget management and marketing. On a daily basis they manage staff; deal with customer complaints; organise building maintenance and liaise with all the different hotel departments. They need good business and management skills; must be organised and diplomatic; have excellent communication skills and hold hospitality management qualifications.

### Task 4. Read the text again and answer the questions.

Which hotel`s position...

- 1) deals with customer complaints?
- 2) is responsible for bookings and bills?
- 3) is responsible for moving and setting up meeting equipment?
- 4) needs good local knowledge?
- 5) orders linen, toiletry and cleaning supplies?
- 6) restocks the minibar?

### Task 5. Put the verbs and nouns together to make new phrases.

1) draw up	a) bookings
2) make	b) equipment
3) manage	c) errands
4) run	d) rotas
5) set up	e) staff

6) take

f) the beds

**Task 6. Write the translation of the expressions below in your own language.**

- 1) customer service \_\_\_\_\_
- 2) interpersonal skills \_\_\_\_\_
- 3) self-sufficiency \_\_\_\_\_
- 4) good timekeeper \_\_\_\_\_
- 5) entry-level post \_\_\_\_\_
- 6) minimum national wage \_\_\_\_\_
- 7) clean driving licence \_\_\_\_\_
- 8) technical-level post \_\_\_\_\_
- 9) physically strenuous \_\_\_\_\_
- 10) unsociable hours \_\_\_\_\_

**Task 7. Look the following words. Repeat them, translate in your native language. Make the sentences with them taking into account your speciality.**

*Budgetary, maintenance, carpentry, plumbing, chambermaid, porter, changeover, rotas, complaints, shifts, customer care, shuttle, entry-level post, strenuous, equipment, tip, errands, to liaise, gofer, to patrol, housekeeper, to restock, law-enforcement, trespasser, linen.*

## **UNIT 6. Trade and Foreign Policy**

**Task 1. Read the text and translate it.**

People are often unclear about exactly what marketing is, and confuse it with advertising and promotion, both important parts of marketing. Advertising brings a product or service to the attention of customers through the media e.g. newspapers, TV, or the Internet to persuade them to buy it.

Promotion keeps a product or service in the minds of customers and helps stimulate their demand for it, often through advertising.

Marketing is altogether more complex. It is all the activities involved in making sure that customers buy a product or service by understanding and meeting their needs.

Traditionally this is called the four Ps marketing mix: Product; Price; Place; Promotion. In other words, you need to market the right product at the right price in the right place and in the right way if you want to sell it.

You could add one other P to this: you need to sell it to the right people. You can identify the right people through a process called market segmentation. This is when you group together people with similar needs and want to identify your target customers so you can successfully market your product to them.

There are many ways to do it, for instance:

- by the amount of money people have (do they want budget or luxury holidays?);
- by the kind of activities they're interested in (heritage, nature or adventure);
- by their circumstances (are they single, a couple, or a family?);
- by their age (18-25 or 60+);
- by the kind of tourists they are (independent or pampered).

**Task 2. What do you need the following for? Describe these things and explain why you need them.**

**For example:** I need a boarding card to get onto a plane.

*(You may need also these things: driving licence, passport, immunization, visa)*

**Task 3. Match the marketing components to the right description. The «Marketing Mix» consists of the 4 P's:**

Product	where the customers can buy it
Promotion	one that meets the customer need
Price	to encourage the customer to buy it
Place	one that makes company profit and keeps the customer satisfied

**Task 4. Read the text about planning and booking a holiday.**

Nowadays there are plenty of different ways to book a holiday. Because of advances in technology you can now book holidays over the Internet; by teletext, a system providing news and other information through the TV; over the phone or by going into a travel agency.

However, when you choose to book, you should ensure you have everything you need before departing for your holiday. This might include: valid travel documents such as passports, identity cards or visas for entry into specific countries and maybe your driving licence if you intend to drive your own or hire a car; travel tickets for planes, ships, trains or coaches and most airlines now expect you to checkin online before you fly and bring your printed boarding card with you to the airport.

You should also consider purchasing some form of travel insurance to cover your costs in case your plane is delayed, cancelled, you lose any personal items or there is an emergency whilst you are on holiday. You can buy this independently or directly from your travel agent or travel provider.

If you are travelling abroad some banks like you to inform them, otherwise they may block your credit and debit cards when you try to use them overseas. However, it is always wise to take some currency or a pre-paid debit card with you in case there are any problems.

Travel to certain countries requires immunization against diseases. These vary from country to country, as each has different risks to people health-wise, but you should check with your doctor around six weeks before going on your holiday to discuss possible vaccinations you may need for your destination.

**Task 5. Repeat the text in task 4 and choose the correct answer.**

**1) Which of the following are ways of booking a holiday?**

a) by phone; b) in a travel agency; c) over the Internet; d) all of these ways.

**2) Which of the following do you only need for entry into specific countries?**

a) identity card; b) passport; c) visa; d) none of these.

**3) You are expected to check in and print a boarding card before going to...**

a) an airport; b) a bus station; c) a ship's port; d) a train station.

**4) You might need travel insurance in case you...**

a) decide not to travel; b) have an emergency on holiday; c) lose something before travelling; d) miss your plane.

**5) If you don't tell your bank you are going abroad what might they do?**

a) Block your cards; b) Close your account; c) Not give you any currency; d) Refuse you credit.

**6) Some countries require immunization against diseases...**

a) when you return from your holiday; b) six weeks before travel; c) during the holiday; d) before and after the holiday.

**Task 6. Complete the second part of the conversation with the missing information.**

*So, I'll need a 50% deposit now and the balance at least 14 days before the holiday date.*

*So your holiday is a two week, all-inclusive package to the Marmais Resort. Return flights; transfers to and from Dalaman Airport; a self-catering apartment, which will be cleaned once a week and use of a communal swimming pool.*

*Now your passport numbers and expiry dates.*

*No problem. You can email them to me.*

*I also need both your dates of birth.*

*Can I have the full names of all the people travelling, please?*

**Travel Agent:** (1) \_\_\_\_\_

**Customer:** My name is Karen Miller and my boyfriend's name is Andrew Jones.

**Travel Agent:** (2) \_\_\_\_\_

**Customer:** My date of birth is 8 June 1989 and Andrew's is 5 March 1985.

**Travel Agent:** (3) \_\_\_\_\_

**Customer:** Oh! I'm afraid I haven't got them with me.

**Travel Agent:** (4) \_\_\_\_\_

**Customer:** Ok. Thanks.

**Travel Agent:** (5) \_\_\_\_\_

**Customer:** What's included in that?

**Travel Agent:** (6) \_\_\_\_\_

**Customer:** Perfect!

**Travel Agent:** (7) \_\_\_\_\_

**Customer:** OK. Here's my credit card.

**Task 7. Read the FAQ about the Hotel Excelsior and decide if these statements are true (T) or false (F).**

- 1) You can't use hotel facilities before checking in or out.
- 2) You have to pay if you want to change your check-in or check-out time.
- 3) Breakfast is at the same time every day of the week.
- 4) It's a good idea to book a table at the restaurant.
- 5) The hotel can change all room bookings.
- 6) It isn't possible to upgrade your room.
- 7) If you cancel more than 48 hours before your stay, you will get all your money back.
- 8) Parking doesn't cost anything.

## UNIT 7. International Actors and Their Activities

**Task 1. Match the words that mean the same.**

1) additional	a) appropriate
2) fee	b) annulment
3) recommend	c) booking
4) reservation	d) charge
5) upgrade	e) extra
6) suitable	f) improve
7) available	g) obtainable
8) cancellation	h) reimbursement
9) refund	i) suggest

**Task 2. Look the following words. Repeat them, translate in your native language. Make the sentences with them taking into account your speciality.**

*Amenities, balance, cancellation, disease, expiry, fee, health wise, immunization, inconvenience, complimentary, currency, discount, insurance, midweek, overseas, refund, reservation, resort, risk, signature, to upgrade, transfer, vaccination, visa.*

**Task 3. What do you know about the United Kingdom? Write T (true) or F (false).**

- 1) Great Britain consists of England, Scotland and Northern Ireland.
- 2) Most of the UK population lives in Scotland.

- 3) England is agricultural and industrial.
- 4) The symbol of Wales is a red dragon.
- 5) Scotland has the same legal, justice, education and banking system as England.
- 6) Glasgow is the capital of Northern Ireland.

#### **Task 4. Read and translate the text.**

The United Kingdom of Great Britain (England, Wales and Scotland) and Northern Ireland is north-west of mainland Europe. 51 million people live in its biggest country, England, a fertile agricultural region, industrial centre and international melting pot.

Cornwall, in the south-west, is perfect for surfers, walkers and art-lovers with its long coastline, futuristic botanical gardens - the Eden Project - and great art galleries.

The Norfolk Broads, a canal network in south-east England, offer cycling, boating or bird-watching; and London, the capital, in the south-east, is full of history, style and entertainment.

Wales is a small, mountainous and coastal country with frequent rain from the Irish Sea with an economy based on tourism and agriculture. There are about 3 million Q people, but 10.2 million sheep! Losing political independence from England in 1282, Wales became semi-autonomous through its National Assembly in 1999, thanks to a strong sense of identity based on language and culture and represented by its symbolic red dragon. Tourist attractions are: the cosmopolitan capital, Cardiff, with its 72,500-seat Millennium Stadium and recently developed Cardiff Bay, with hotels, bars, restaurants, cinemas, museums, an arts centre and a leisure village; Snowdonia and the Brecon Beacons, favourite beauty spots for hikers; and many romantic historical castles.

Scotland is the UK's northernmost country with a harsh climate, dramatic landscapes and a population of just 5.1 million. Scotland was united with England in 1707, but it's very independent due to separate legal, justice, education and banking systems and more recently a devolved parliament. The economy is based on oil and gas, the service sector, and whisky exports.

Places to visit include: the beautiful capital, Edinburgh, with an annual arts festival; Glasgow with its Victorian architecture, industrial history and modern music, cafe and art scenes; the UK's highest mountain, Ben Nevis; its deepest lake, Loch Ness, with its legendary monster; or the wild and remote Outer Hebrides islands with rare wildlife.

Northern Ireland is also semi-autonomous with a population of 1.7 million in the north-eastern part of Ireland. Separated from southern Ireland since the 1920s, it was well-known for the violence between Republicans and Loyalists, which ended in 1998. Its main exports are textiles and machinery. Places to visit include: the capital, Belfast, with its political murals; the Victorian Grand Opera House and the Titanic's Dock; and the breathtaking Giant's Causeway, famous for its incredible rock formation.

**Task 5. Read the text again and find these place names on the map of the UK**

*London    Glasgow    Cardiff    Cornwall    Belfast    Edinburgh*

**Task 6. Reorder the conversation below between a tour guide and a tourist.**

**Tourist:** I'm hiring a car in Scotland this summer. What do you suggest I visit?

**Tour guide:** Yes, it overlooks the sea. It's a really interesting city!

**Tourist:** I hear Scotland has amazing wildlife too.

**Tour guide:** Then you should spend a few days in Edinburgh at the arts festival.

**Tourist:** I want to visit the famous Loch Ness and see the monster.

**Tour guide:** You can visit the castle, which sits on a volcanic rack dominating the city.

**Tourist:** When is that?

**Tour guide:** It's the deepest lake in Scotland and very beautiful, but I can't guarantee you'll see the monster!

**Tourist:** I'm interested in art, history and nature, especially coastlines.

**Tour guide:** Oh yes, especially on the remote islands like the Orkneys.

**Tourist:** Is Edinburgh near the coast?

**Tour guide:** It's on for three weeks in August every year.

**Tourist:** What else can I do in Edinburgh?

**Tour guide:** That depends on what you are interested in.

**Task 7. Work with your colleague. Take it in turns to be the tour guide and the tourist in the following situations. Use the information in the text and the dialogue above to help you.**

- You're fascinated by history and legends, especially those with monsters and dragons.
- You have a passion for art, architecture and poetry.
- You're in to hiking, nature and cycling.
- You love city life, going out to restaurants and bars and listening to good music.

## **UNIT 8. Systemic Tools of International Relations**

**Task 1. Read the text and complete the missing numbers.**

Humans first lived in the British Isles about (1) 750,000 years ago, but Britain's most famous prehistoric monument and UNESCO world heritage site, Stonehenge, was probably built in Wiltshire at different times between (2) \_\_\_\_\_ and (3) \_\_\_\_\_ BC.

The mysterious giant stones set in a unique concentric architectural design are a mixture of nearby sandstone and smaller bluestones from the Preseli Mountains in South Wales, about (4)\_\_\_\_\_ miles away.

We don't know exactly how or why Stonehenge was built, but experts agree it was a ceremonial site for worship and burial and people continue to visit it every year to celebrate the summer solstice. The Welsh, Irish and Scots originate from the Celts, Indo-European tribes who settled in Britain in about (5)\_\_\_\_\_ BC and the word probably comes from the Greek *keltoi*, meaning barbarian.

The Romans successfully invaded and conquered Britain in (6)\_\_\_\_\_ BC, establishing the city of Londinium, now London, and in the south-west of England, Aquae Sulis, Bath Spa, one of the world's finest remaining examples of Roman thermal spas, with natural hot springs of (7)\_\_\_\_\_ °C.

To keep out the Scots, still regarded as barbarians, the Emperor Hadrian gave order to build Hadrian's Wall from stone and earth, which stretches (8)\_\_\_\_\_ km from coast to coast across northern Britain.

The Roman rule in Britain ended when the Anglo Saxons from northern Europe began to invade the island in the (9)\_\_\_\_\_ century AD.

The Vikings from Norway, Sweden and Denmark also invaded Britain in about the (10)\_\_\_\_\_ century AD, settling in central, northern and eastern England. The modern city of York in the north of England is site of the Jorvik Viking Centre, a settlement where Viking-age houses, workshops and artefacts were excavated.

The Normans conquered Britain with victory at the Battle of Hastings in (11)\_\_\_\_\_ bringing linguistic, architectural and political changes to Britain. They built mediaeval Motte and Bailey castles, which had raised earth - the «*motte*» - under the castle which you could only access across a wooden drawbridge. Around it was a ditch, separating the castle from the 'bailey', that is to say a courtyard surrounded by a wooden fence where servants, tradesmen and craftsmen lived.

Windsor Castle, just outside London, the official royal residence for over (12)\_\_\_\_\_ years, is an excellent example of this kind of castles.

**Task 2. Look the following words. Repeat them, translate in your native language. Make the sentences with them taking into account your speciality.**

<i>Artefact,</i>	<i>melting pot,</i>	<i>arts festival,</i>	<i>Norman,</i>	<i>barbarian,</i>	<i>parkland,</i>
<i>Beefeater,</i>	<i>pond,</i>	<i>burial,</i>	<i>service sector,</i>	<i>cosmopolitan,</i>	<i>skyline,</i>
<i>courtyard,</i>	<i>textile,</i>	<i>craftsman,</i>	<i>tribe,</i>	<i>Crown jewels,</i>	<i>Victorian,</i>
<i>Viking drawbridge,</i>	<i>waxwork,</i>	<i>harsh,</i>	<i>wooden,</i>	<i>loch,</i>	<i>worship.</i>

**Task 3. Read the text.**

Europe is extremely varied. Greenland, in the north, is largely in the Arctic Circle with deep fjords, glaciers and icebergs, and summer sees endless days and winter endless nights.

Many people take nature and cultural holidays to see wildlife like polar bears, reindeer, and whales and experience the unique Inuit culture.

North-east is Lapland, Finland's northern wilderness providing amazing views of the Northern Lights, Aurora Borealis, a spectacular colourful display of lights caused by solar wind entering the earth's atmosphere.

Summer is great for hiking and white water rafting adventures, whilst winter tourism includes snowmobiling, sled safaris, skiing and visits to Santa Claus's Village at Christmas.

Europe also offers sun, sea and sand in its southern Mediterranean countries. Spain's four Balearic Islands have everything for recreational tourism. Ibiza, for example, is the choice for young, trendy, party-going tourists, while Mallorca is a favourite for family beach holidays, but also great for mountain hikes.

Menorca is a quieter island, with UNESCO archeological and natural sites. Finally, Formentera, the smallest island, is the destination for tourists who just want to relax.

The Algarve region, on the west coast of Portugal, is well-liked too by beach tourists because of wide sandy beaches, natural bays and breathtaking cliffs.

For the wealthier, more chic tourist, the French Riviera remains fashionable. In Nice, tourists can combine recreation and culture: sunbathing, visiting Impressionist art galleries, eating delicious French cuisine, practising water sports and drinking cocktails.

Along the coast is the small, but nevertheless rich nation of Monaco. It's famous for casinos, its glamorous royal family and the formula one racing track at Monte Carlo, but don't go there unless you're looking for luxury tourism!

**Task 4. Read the text again and complete the table.**

Country/Region	Type of tourism	Things to see and do
Greenland	nature or cultural	fjords, glaciers, icebergs; wildlife like polar bears, reindeer and whales; experience the unique Inuit culture

**Task 5. Read the text again and match the words with their definitions.**

1) Aurora Borealis	a) a journey to watch, take pictures of or hunt wild animals
2) Fjord	b) a very large mass of ice moving slowly
3) Iceberg	c) a thin strip of sea between high rocks typical of Scandinavian countries
4) Glacier	d) a luminous atmospheric display visible in the Northern Hemisphere

5) Safari	e) a large piece of ice moving in the sea with a small amount above the surface of the water
-----------	--

**Task 6. Read this conversation between a tour group leader and a travel agent planning a European trip and complete it with the questions below.**

*Sure. Which period of the year would you like to travel and how long?  
Do you know if there is any chance of seeing the Northern Lights at that time of the year?*

*And what kind of things are your group interested in?  
Some of my group have expressed an interest in health tourism too. Is that possible in Greenland?*

*What other activities can my group do in Finland?*

**Group Leader:** Hello, I'm planning to take a tour group over to northern Europe from the UK next year and I'd like you to recommend some itineraries.

**Travel Agent:** (1) *Sure. Which period of the year would you like to travel and for how long?*

**Group Leader:** Sometime in spring so the weather is not too hot, maybe for about three weeks.

**Travel Agent:** (2)

**Group Leader:** Well, it's quite a mixed group in terms of age and interests so I want to include something that will appeal to everyone.

**Travel Agent:** I'd certainly recommend Greenland to you because you can see some amazing wildlife and you also get to take boat trips along the fjords.

**Group Leader:** (3)

**Travel Agent:** I would say that Iceland is more suitable because of the geysers and hot springs. There are lots of modern spa resorts you could stay at.

**Group Leader:** (4)

**Travel Agent:** The best time to see them is in winter, but if you go to remote regions like Lapland without artificial lights, it is sometimes possible to see them.

**Group Leader:** (5)

**Travel Agent:** The best time to see them is in winter, but if you go to remote regions like Lapland without artificial lights, it is sometimes possible to see them.

**Task 7. Work in pairs. One of you is a travel agent and the other is a tour group leader. Discuss and plan an itinerary for southern Europe. Use the dialogue above and the text in task 1 to help you.**

*Student A: Hello, I'm planning to take a group of tourists to southern Europe.*

*Student B: When are you planning to travel?*

## UNIT 9. Energy and Environment

### Task 1. Answer the questions about the European culture and history.

- 1) Where do most European cultures and civilisations originate?
  - a) Greece      b) Turkey      c) Russia
- 2) Which city is dominated by the Acropolis and the Parthenon rising above it?
  - a) Athens      b) Berlin      c) Paris
- 3) Which of these is one of the Seven Ancient Wonders of the World?
  - a) The Coliseum      b) The Kremlin      c) The Temple of Artemis
- 4) What is the city of Istanbul the gateway between?
  - a) Africa and Europe      b) East and West      c) North and South
- 5) Which country would you visit for a special bath?
  - a) Greece      b) Turkey      c) Russia
- 6) Which country is so vast that it is better explored as separate countries?
  - a) Bulgaria      b) Poland      c) Russia
- 7) What colour is the main square in Moscow?
  - a) Pink      b) Red      c) Yellow
- 8) Which type of architecture can you find in St Petersburg?
  - a) French      b) Greek      c) Italian

### Task 2. Look the following words. Repeat them, translate in your native language. Make the sentences with them taking into account your speciality.

*Ancient, to be steeped in (history), tailor-made, civilisation, cliff, contested, cutting-edge, gateway, glacier, Greenland, hot spring, marble, party-going, racing track, reindeer, requirement, Seven Wonders of the World, shelter, sled safari, snowmobiling, starter, to suit, temple.*

### Task 3. Read the text and retell it.

The United States of America is one of the most culturally and geographically diverse countries in the world. The state of Alaska, to the north-west of Canada, separated from the other 49 states, is vast, remote and wild. You can enjoy whale watching or kayaking adventures there.

The north-eastern states of New England appeal to nature lovers because of the beautiful autumn colours, and to cultural tourists because of cities like Boston which

has experimental arts museums, indie rock bands, theatre and film festivals and the famous Harvard University.

A little further south, on the border between Canada and New York State, is one of America's most breathtaking natural sights, Niagara Falls. Also of outstanding beauty are the Rocky Mountains, which stretch almost 5000 km along western America between Canada and New Mexico. They are popular for hiking, fishing, camping, skiing and snowboarding. There is a wide range of wildlife to see, including grizzly bears and mountain lions, especially in the Yellowstone National Park.

In the south-west, in the state of Arizona, the Grand Canyon is the most spectacular canyon in the world. 1,800 m at its deepest, it appears red in colour and is home to many species of wildlife, especially birds of prey. California is full of contrasts. You can go VIP spotting in Hollywood; skiing in the Sierra Nevada mountains; hiking in Death Valley, the lowest, hottest and driest part of North America; or simply surfing and relaxing along the Big Sur with its dramatic coastline and panoramic views.

New Orleans, in the south-east of the USA, is well-known for jazz and blues music and the annual Mardi Gras Carnival. People love the authentic French Quarter with its mixture of European and Afro Caribbean cultures; the nightclubs of Bourbon Street; the shops and restaurants of Magazine Street and the grand mansions on St Charles Avenue. Florida, known as the 'Sunshine State', separates the Atlantic Ocean from the Gulf of Mexico on the south-east peninsula of the USA. People come to visit the Everglades National Park, the largest subtropical wilderness in the USA where you can see lots of alligators; Disney World, Orlando; or just to experience the Latin American influence on Miami's beaches and nightlife.

**Task 4. Read the text again and find the words or expressions that correspond to these definitions.**

1) A very large brown bear that lives in the mountains of the north-west USA: \_\_\_\_\_

2) A long deep valley with steep sides made of rock: \_\_\_\_\_

3) A bird that hunts and eats other animals: \_\_\_\_\_

4) Someone who has special treatment because they are powerful or famous: \_\_\_\_\_

5) A carnival celebration with parties and street parades; one of the most famous is in New Orleans: \_\_\_\_\_

6) A large house, which is often very beautiful: \_\_\_\_\_

**Task 5. Read the text again and match the activities to the places where people can do them.**

1) see beautiful colours in autumn	a) New Orleans
2) listen to indie rock bands	b) Hollywood
3) see grizzly bears and mountain lions	c) Miami
4) spot VIPs	d) the Everglades National Park
5) go surfing	e) New England

6) celebrate the annual Mardi Gras Carnival	f) Boston
7) see lots of alligators	g) the Rocky Mountains
8) experience Latin American nightlife	h) the Big Sur

**Task 6. Read the conversation between a travel agent and a customer about travel advice to the USA and complete the missing information.**

**Travel Agent:** I just want to go through all the things you need to do before you leave for the USA.

**Tourist:** Sure, no problem.

**Travel Agent:** First you have to check your (1) *passport* is valid for at least (2) \_\_\_\_\_ months after you plan to return home.

**Tourist:** Yes, it is. Do I have to apply for a (3) \_\_\_\_\_ too?

**Travel Agent:** No, you don't. There's a visa waiver programme for all UK or EC passports, but you have to apply through ESTA, Electronic System for Travel Authorisation to the USA, online at least (4) \_\_\_\_\_ hours before your departure.

**Tourist:** How long can I stay in the USA with this programme?

**Travel Agent:** You can stay for up to (5) \_\_\_\_\_ days.

**Tourist:** OK. What about security at the airport?

**Travel Agent:** Security is very tight for all US travel, so you should arrive at the airport at least (6) \_\_\_\_\_ hours before your departure time.

**Tourist:** Do I need (7) \_\_\_\_\_?

**Travel Agent:** Well, you don't have to be immunised against any diseases, but it's a good idea to get comprehensive travel insurance.

**Tourist:** Right. How about money?

**Travel Agent:** The (8) \_\_\_\_\_ - is dollars, but you don't need to take out money in advance because you can use credit cards and cash point machines, which Americans call ATMs.

**Tourist:** OK. Thanks for all your help and advice.

**Task 7. Read the dialogue again and complete the table below about what you need to and don't need to do when you travel to the USA.**

Need to	Don't need to
check your passport is valid for at least six months after you plan to return home	apply for a visa

## UNIT 10. Human Rights

**Task 1. Take it in turns to role play a dialogue between a travel agent and a customer. Give advice on what he/she needs/doesn't need to do or bring when travelling to your country. Include the following information:**

airport security	medical insurance
visa requirements	money

**Task 2. Look the following words. Repeat them, translate in your native language. Make the sentences with them taking into account your speciality.**

<i>Amusement park, cash point machine, bird of prey, borough, comprehensive travel insurance, concrete, cooling, indie, mansion, medical insurance, neighbourhood, racetrack, shell, department store (US)/shopping centre (UK), disease, steep, striking, sunshine, tournament visa, gift shop, waiver.</i>
--

**Task 3. Read about ecotourism and match each paragraph with a heading.**

1) A definition of ecotourism	4) The principles of ecotourism
2) Benefits and Downsides	5) The future of ecotourism
3) Organisations involved	6) The history of ecotourism

1) \_\_\_\_\_

1) Any form of tourism – adventure, sports, recreational, cultural or educational can be based on the principles of sustainable tourism, because it contributes to and doesn't harm the environment it's in. However, ecotourism is a separate branch of tourism altogether, widely defined as: 'responsible travel to natural areas that conserves the environment and improves the well-being of local people.

2) \_\_\_\_\_

2) What most ecotourism holidays have in common is their ecological sustainability, their support for local communities, conservation of the environment and of natural resources, their sensitivity towards cultural diversity, and their educational focus.

3) \_\_\_\_\_

3) Ecotourism was developed to meet the needs of the increasing number of nature tourists who were also concerned about the environment. There was an early example of ecotourism in Kenya, East Africa in the 1970s, where people began paying to visit safari parks and the money was used for wildlife conservation. Other successful examples are the nature lodges in the rainforests of Costa Rica and Belize, and recent expeditions to Antarctica.

4) \_\_\_\_\_

4) The greatest danger with ecotourism lies in its popularity. The high number of people means there is a constant need for accommodation, transportation and natural resources, all of which can damage the environment and natural habitats. On

the other hand, Ecotourism also enables us to sustain and support communities and their economies by creating jobs and investing in conservation, development and education projects.

5) \_\_\_\_\_

5) Today many international non-profit organisations are involved in researching and promoting ecotourism. Some of the best known include the World Tourism Organisation, the World Travel and Tourism Council, Tourism Concern and the World Wildlife Fund. Yet ecotourism has become so profitable that there are also many commercial organisations now focusing on this niche market.

6) \_\_\_\_\_

6) Ecotourism is currently the fastest growing market in the tourism industry, but is it too little too late? Have we already destroyed too much of the planet with our environmentally unfriendly mass tourism? In the future will we have to limit the numbers of visitors and increase the cost of travel in order to preserve certain destinations?

**Task 4. Read the text again and write a definition for these expressions.**

*habitat*            *ecotourism*        *niche market*        *environmentally*  
*unfriendly*        *wildlife conservation*        *non-profit organizations*

**Task 5. Read the text again and decide if these sentences are true (T) or false (F). Correct the false statements.**

- 1) Any form of tourism can be sustainable but that doesn't make it ecotourism.
- 2) Ecotourism usually has an educational focus.
- 3) The earliest form of ecotourism was in Belize.
- 4) The popularity of ecotourism can be a problem.
- 5) Ecotourism doesn't create jobs.
- 6) It is possible to make a lot of money from ecotourism.
- 7) Ecotourism is not a fast growing market in the tourism industry.

**Task 6. What do you think about yourself? Are you a good ecotourist? Answer these questions and find out!**

**When you're abroad, do you...**

- 1) learn words and phrases in the local language and try to use them?
- 2) only visit places that are listed in your guidebook?
- 3) use as much water as you want to wash your hair, body and clothes?
- 4) travel by public transport, hire a bike or walk?
- 5) ask people before taking photographs of them?
- 6) act and dress in the same way as you would at home?
- 7) buy goods produced locally and eat typical local food?
- 8) stay in big luxurious multinational hotels?

**Task 7. Now match these answers to the quiz. Do you agree with them?**

- a) It's a good idea. It shows real respect for the people and culture and is a great icebreaker,  
 b) It's a good way of supporting local communities and businesses and learning more about a place,  
 c) Travelling by public transport is a great way to meet local people, and reduce carbon emissions,  
 d) You should respect people's right to privacy and always ask before taking a photo of a person,  
 e) Use water carefully. It's a precious natural resource in many countries and Westerners tend to use and waste far more than local people,  
 f) Keep in mind that many luxurious hotels don't support local economies; they often exploit local people and the environment.  
 g) Guidebooks are useful for learning about a place before you go, but local people always know the best places to visit. Ask them!  
 h) Remember that people in different places have different ways of thinking, behaving and dressing and you should respect that. Always ask if you're unsure about taking shoes off or covering your head.

**UNIT 11. Politics and Government**

**Task 1. Work with your colleagues and discuss your answers to the quiz. Use the expressions in the box to help you.**

<i>To be honest...</i>	<i>Yes, I have / No, I haven't.</i>
<i>To tell you the truth...</i>	<i>I've always / never done it..</i>
<i>Have you ever...</i>	<i>I've never thought about it before.</i>

**Student A:** *When you're abroad, do you learn words and phrases in the local language and try to use them?*

**Student B:** *Yes, I have always learnt a few words when I've been to another country even if it's only please and thank you.*

**Task 2. Look the following words. Repeat them, translate in your native language. Make the sentences with them taking into account your speciality.**

<i>Biologist,</i>	<i>educational,</i>	<i>focus,</i>	<i>carbon emission,</i>	<i>endangered,</i>
<i>species,</i>	<i>carbon footprint,</i>	<i>renewable energy,</i>	<i>source,</i>	<i>carbon-neutral,</i>
<i>solar-powered,</i>	<i>coral,</i>	<i>sustainability,</i>	<i>eco-friendly.</i>	

**Task 3. Read the text and retell it.**

Global economic crises, concern for the environment, the threat of violence, as well as social trends, are just some of the things dictating our choice of new tourism destinations.

Angola, in West Africa, also has bitter memories of a 27-year civil war. This may be why Angola's sandy beaches, wildlife parks and Portuguese architecture have remained unspoilt by tourism, and it's now a hot new destination.

Morocco is just a short budget flight away from Europe, but culturally it's a long haul. Fill your senses with the smells, colours and sounds of North Africa: enjoy a hot steam bath in one of Tangier's hammams; take a trip to the ancient city of Marrakesh; and go on a camel ride in the Sahara desert.

Alternatively, why not take a skiing holiday in the totally man-made resort of Dubai in the United Arab Emirates? It has soft artificial snow, ice sculptures, a short ski run and a sledding hill.

Great for beginners, but not quite so good for advanced skiers or the environment, as it takes a lot of energy to create a snow world in the heat of the Middle East!

Meanwhile, in Sweden, a more familiar winter destination, the western city of Gothenburg has become popular for beach tourism. It has a beautiful coastline, excellent seafood, and it's much cheaper than the rest of the country, as well as being home to the biggest amusement park in Scandinavia.

If you really care about the environment and want to save money, take a «staycation», staying at home and visiting local museums, swimming pools and other attractions, rather than travelling abroad. You could go to Perugia's Umbria Jazz, go climbing and abseiling in the Dolomites or hike in the spectacular scenery of the Majella National Park in the Apennines.

**Task 4. Read the text again and match these words with their definitions.**

1) reflection	a) a careful thought about something
2) sledding hill	b) a holiday where you remain at home and visit places in your own country
3) social trend	c) something which has not been changed to make it less beautiful or enjoyable
4) abseiling	d) a small mountain you ride a snow sledge down
5) camel ride	e) a change or development in people's lives and habits
6) saycation	f) a place where you can have a steam bath in Islamic countries, usually with separate baths for men and women
7) unspoilt	g) an excursion on camel
8) hammam	h) to descend a steep slope by a rope secured from above and tied around one's body

**Task 5. Look through the text again and decide in which destination you can do these things.**

*Where can you...*

- 1) admire ice sculptures? (*in Dubai*)
- 2) have a steam bath?
- 3) eat excellent seafood?

- 4) enjoy unspoilt sandy beaches?
- 5) go to the beach in a winter destination?
- 6) hike in spectacular scenery?
- 7) see Portuguese architecture?
- 8) ski in a hot country?
- 9) go abseiling?
- 10) visit the Sahara Desert?

**Task 6. Read the text and retell it.**

Sports tourism to international sporting events is a growing trend in the tourism industry. Probably the most popular international sporting events are bicycle races such as the annual Tour de France, which attracts 12 to 15 million spectators along the route. Tourists are mostly domestic, but they still travel many kilometres to watch and support their cycling heroes.

For international travellers the most popular events are the FIFA football World Cup and the Olympics, followed by the European Football Championships. For instance, around 3.18 million fans attended the 2010 FIFA World Cup in South Africa, the first African nation to host the championship, and there are hopes for even more tourists at the 2014 World Cup which will be held in football-crazy Brazil.

Other popular sporting events such as the Rugby Union World Cup and the Cricket World Cup, which both happen every four years, and the Formula 1 Grand Prix also draw a large number of international visitors.

The Monaco Grand Prix, alongside the US Indy 500 (Indianapolis 500) and the French Le Mans, is one of the most famous motor racing fixtures of the year, attracting 200,000 visitors in just four days! So why do people like sports tourism?

Surprisingly, the more sport we watch on TV, the more we want to watch live. Sports tourism is much more appealing in general these days, as events offer more comfort and entertainment as well as cheap travel options such as low-cost airlines.

The kind of person participating in sports tourism rather depends on the sport they're watching, but statistics show the majority are young, middle-class people aged 18-35. However, rugby and cricket fans tend to be older and wealthier, athletics fans younger and on a tighter budget, while followers of formula 1, usually older, richer and male.

**Task 7. Read the text again and choose the correct answers to complete the sentences.**

- 1) Sports tourism is becoming
  - a) *expensive*
  - b) *less popular*
  - c) *more popular*
- 2) Most of the visitors to the Tour de France are
  - a) *foreign*
  - b) *French*
  - c) *local*
- 3) In 2010 South Africa was the first African host of

a) *the FIFA World Cup*      b) *the Olympics*      c) *the Rugby World Cup*

4) Indianapolis, Monaco and Le Mans are all venues for

a) *cricket*      b) *motor racing*      c) *horse-racing*

5) Sports tourism is more appealing nowadays because events offer more

a) *comfort*      b) *discounts*      c) *celebrities*

6) Generally athletics fans

a) *are older*      b) *are women*      c) *don't have a lot of money*

## UNIT 12. Social Issues

**Task 1. Repeat the text in the previous unit, task 6 and complete the table.**

Sport	Important Competitions	When it takes place	Type of tourists
cricket			
			domestic
		annually	
	World Cup		
		every four years	

**Task 2. Look the following words. Repeat them, translate in your native language. Make the sentences with them taking into account your speciality.**

<i>Abseiling, ASAP (As Soon As Possible), to come up with, to dictate, to draw, fixture, follower, football-crazy, ice sculpture, tasty, middle-class, motor-racing, ski run, sledding hill, spectator, unspoilt.</i>
---

**Task 3. Read the information about the types of lodgings in the hotel business. Write it down and remember it.**

### Lodgings

#### 1) *all-inclusive*

an **all-inclusive resort** is a holiday resort that includes a minimum of three meals daily, drinks and other services in the price.

#### 2) *bed and breakfast*

a private home where guests are provided overnight accommodations and served breakfast but usually no other meals.

*They stayed at a **bed and breakfast** near the Eiffel Tower.*

**3) double room**

a room in a hotel that has a bed for two adults.

*We want to **book** a double room*

**4) hostel**

a lodging place, with dormitory accommodation and shared facilities, especially for young travelers.

*In a **hostel** toilets are shared by all guests.*

**5) hotel**

a commercial establishment that provides accommodation and other services for guests. Another word for hotel is inn.

*There are many expensive **hotels** downtown.*

**6) inn**

a hotel.

*This is an old **inn** where many stars have stayed.*

**7) lobby**

a large area near the reception.

*I was waiting in the **lobby** when I saw her coming to the reception desk.*

**8) motel**

a lodging establishment typically featuring a series of rooms whose entrance is near a parking lot normally located near a major highway.

*John: I am tired. I need some sleep.*

*Mary: Lets spend the night at a motel and continue the trip tomorrow morning.*

**9) reception**

a desk at hotel where visitors or guests are received.

*Hotel guests may ask for WiFi password at the **reception** desk.*

**10) single room**

a room in a hotel that has a bed for one adult.

**11) suite**

a number of connected rooms in a hotel forming one living unit.

*The multi-millionaire is staying at the royal **suite**.*

**Task 4. Read the information about people who work in the hotel business and the verbs that are being used when one is making conversation on the hotel business topics.**

Also look down how things are named in the hotel business. Find the information about such topic. What can you add? What words and phrases? Write them down with your examples.

### People

#### 1) *bellboy*

a male worker at a hotel who carries luggage for guests.

*Please, let the **bellboy** carry the bags for you.*

#### 2) *hotel manager*

someone who is in charge of managing a hotel.

#### 3) *maid*

a woman servant who cleans the rooms and the linen.

#### 4) *valet*

a hotel employee who performs personal services for guests.

*Don't worry about the car! The **valet** will park it for you.*

### Verbs

#### 1) *book a hotel room*

to reserve a hotel room.

*I want to **book** a hotel room for next Friday.*

#### 2) *check in*

to register at a hotel, to announce or record one's arrival at a hotel.

*Let's **check in** at this hotel before visiting museums.*

#### 3) *check out*

to leave a hotel after paying the bill.

*The last hotel we stayed in last year charged us a lot of money for **checking out** late.*

#### 4) *have / offer room service*

a hotel service enabling guests to choose menu items for delivery to their hotel room for consumption there, served by staff.

*This hotel offers **room service**.*

#### 5) *make a hotel reservation*

to reserve a room in a hotel in advance.

*Did you make a hotel reservation?*

## Things

### 1) *amenities*

amenities refer to anything that would benefit a lodging. Examples of amenities include: WiFi, dining, parks, swimming pools, golf courses, health club facilities, party rooms...

### 2) *baggage / luggage*

traveling equipment (bags, suitcases...)

*Please, will you help me carry my **luggage**?*

### 3) *linen*

articles such as sheets, blankets, tablecloth...

### 4) *towels*

a cloth used for wiping, especially one used for drying anything wet, as a person after a bath.

*You'll find **towels** in the bathroom.*

**Task 5. Read the information about types of establishments. Write it down and remember it.**

## Types of establishments

When booking a hotel room, it's important to know the difference between different types of lodging establishments.

A **motel** normally has a separate entrance for each room and a parking lot in front. Guests can park directly in front of their room.

A **hostel** is an inexpensive establishment that offers shared rooms and shared bathrooms. Hostels often cater to young travelers.

A **bed and breakfast** (or **B&B**) is a small establishment (often a private residence) that offers lodging and breakfast.

A **resort** is a (typically upscale) place where people stay on vacation.

A **timeshare** is an ownership model in which many customers own the right to use a certain property.

A **vacation rental** is a property that an owner rents to vacationers.

Another thing to consider about a hotel is its rating. Hotels are rated as either **one star**, **two star**, **three star**, **four star**, or **five star**, with *five star* being the highest rating.

## Types of rooms

A **single room** is a room with one bed that is intended for one guest to stay in.

A **double room** is a room intended for two people and may have one or two beds.

A **triple room** is intended for three people and may have one or two beds.

A **twin room** is a room with two twin-size beds.

A **connecting room** has a door inside the room which connects to the room next to it.

A **suite** involves multiple rooms. Suites usually include a living or sitting area and may include a kitchen or kitchenette. Many hotels offer a range of suites including **junior suites** (\$), **deluxe suites** (\$\$), **executive suites** (\$\$\$), and **presidential suites** (\$\$\$\$). Many hotels also offer suites to couples. These are often called **bridal suites** or **honeymoon suites**.

**Task 6. Look at the dialogue about the room service. Make up the dialogue on the hotel topics with your colleague and present it to the professor.**

### Talking to Room Service

**YOU:** I'd like to order dinner.

**MANAGER:** What would you like?

**YOU:** I'd like to order a bottle of champagne, lobster tail, and filet mignon, medium rare.

**MANAGER:** I'm sorry. We're currently out of filet mignon. May I suggest the porterhouse instead?

**YOU:** I'd prefer the filet, but the porterhouse will do.

**MANAGER:** And may I suggest chocolate-covered strawberries with the champagne?

**YOU:** Normally, I would take you up on that suggestion, but just the champagne will do for tonight.

**MANAGER:** Okay, no strawberries. Room service will be charged to your amenities account. Is that all right?

**YOU:** That's fine.

**MANAGER:** It will be up shortly. Enjoy your food, sir.

**Task 7. Read the text «Types of Food». Retell it in your own words.**

### Types of Food

Nearly everything we eat comes from plants, animals, birds, fish and other sea creatures like **shellfish**. We can eat the **edible** parts of many plants like **roots** and leaves as well as things plants produce like fruits and **seeds**. We can also eat various parts of animals as well as things animals produce like milk. In many parts of the world people also eat **insects** and things they produce like **honey**.

Before the development of **agriculture**, people got food from the plants and animals in the world around them. They dug up roots, gathered fruits and seeds, hunted and trapped animals and birds and used spears and nets to catch fish. They also collected shellfish and other **seafood** as well as insects and bird eggs, and in many parts of the world people still do all these things.

Around ten thousand years ago agriculture began to develop when people in the Middle East, Asia and South America began **cultivating** plants and **domesticating** animals and birds. They cultivated grasses that produced **grains** like rice and wheat, and grew plants that produced vegetables, **nuts** and **beans**. They also grew fruit trees and kept **poultry** for meat and eggs and **raised** animals for meat and milk, and around eight thousand years ago people also began making **dairy foods** like cheese and yoghurt from sheep and goat milk.

As agriculture developed, farmers began producing more and more different types of food, and now we see a huge range of foods in supermarkets.

## II. METHODOLOGICAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR STUDENTS' INDEPENDENT WORK

### UNIT 1. Professional Issues in International Relations

**Exercise 1. Read the text. Choose the most suitable heading from the list (A-I) for each part (1-8) of the text. There is one extra heading which you don't need to use. There is an example at the beginning (0).**

A. The 17th -18th century Tourism	F. The First Travellers
B. Transport Developments	G. Tourism in Ancient Times
C. The Birth of Mass-Tourism	H. The Birth of Modern Tourism Industry
D. The Urge to Travel	I. Reasons of Tourism Industry
E. Tourism in Recent Decades	Development

0	D. The Urge to Travel
---	-----------------------

I do it, you do it, even the ancient Greeks did it. Travelling for pleasure, travelling to experience new places and events, travelling to relax and get away from it all – in other words, tourism.

Even since man first emerged from his cave-dwelling, it seems he felt the urge to travel.

1	
---	--

But tourism had to wait for the civilization of ancient Greece before it really got moving. The Olympic Games of 776 BC were the first international tourist event, with people travelling from many countries to watch and take part.

Of course, if you want to travel from A to B, a good road is always an advantage, and we have a lot to thank the Romans for here. During the heyday of the Roman Empire they built thousands of roads. Some of the first people to take advantage of these roads were religious travellers visiting cathedrals, shrines, or holy sites – the word «holiday», after all, originally comes from «holy day». Pilgrims like Geoffrey Chaucer would tell each other stories to entertain themselves on the road. Nowadays we have the in-flight movie – in medieval times they had the Canterbury Tales!

2	
---	--

Gradually, more and more people caught the travel bug. At first it was the nobility who set out in the 17th and 18th centuries on their Grand Tours – an essential part of every young gentleman's education. At the same time the upper classes were flocking to spa towns like Bath and Cheltenham. They also enjoyed the healthy pleasures of sea-bathing at Brighton and other resorts.

3	
---	--

But it was developments in transport that really opened up the tourist industry. First there were stagecoaches and coaching inns. Then came steam, and suddenly the world was a smaller place. Steamboats crossed the English Channel, and railways stretched their iron webs across the civilized world. No sooner had the first railways been built in the 1830s than enterprising men like Thomas Cook in England began to exploit their potential by selling organized tours.

4	
---	--

With excursions across continental Europe, the building of hotels and resorts to cater for the tastes of the pleasure-seekers, and the introduction of hotel vouchers and traveller's cheques, the tourist industry in its modern form was born. By the end of the 19th century the middle classes had joined the tourist classes, and mass tourism was a reality.

5	
---	--

If the 19th century saw the birth of mass tourism, then the post-war years have witnessed its coming of age. Soon after the end of the Second World War, paid holidays became normal in Britain and many other countries.

6	
---	--

People now had more disposable income to spend on leisure time, and travel and tourism were available to the many rather than the elite few. Holiday camps sprang up, offering the masses an affordable accommodation-and-entertainment package. Television sets were appearing in more and more homes, bringing the attractions of distant lands into people's living rooms. Package holidays abroad began to appear in the 1950s. But it wasn't until the introduction of the first commercial jet airliners that the idea of foreign holidays really took off.

7	
---	--

In recent decades things have only got better for the tourist: faster and cheaper travel options, a wider range of suitable accommodation, more time and money to spend on their holidays. Tourism has come a long way from its distant, humble beginnings. So when you're next wandering along a sun-kissed foreign beach, sipping your cocktail, gazing at the sunset, and trying to forget your worldly cares, remember – you may be treading in the footprints of a 19th century adventurer, a gentleman on his Grand Tour, a pilgrim or a crusader, or even a Roman soldier or an ancient Greek!

**Exercise 2. Fill in the correct word from the list below. Use the words only once.**

*civilization, bug, tour, urge, flock, potential, advantage, pleasure-seekers*

- 1) to feel the ... to travel;
- 2) the ... of ancient Greece;
- 3) to take ... of Roman-built roads;
- 4) to catch the travel ...
- 5) to ... to spa town;
- 6) to exploit one's ...
- 7) to cater for the tastes of ...
- 8) a gentleman on Grand ...

**Exercise 3. Fill in the correct preposition, then choose any five items and make sentences.**

- 1) ... other words;
- 2) to emerge ... the cave-dwelling;
- 3) to thank ancient Romans ... their roads;
- 4) originally come ... the word «holy day» ;
- 5) to set out ... the education tour;
- 6) to stretch iron webs ... the civilized world;
- 7) to spend more disposable income ... pleasure;
- 8) to tread ... footprints of a 19th century adventurer.

**Exercise 4. Look through the tests and choose the right answer.**

1) Their \_\_\_\_\_ which took six month, nearly met with disaster.

- |                |            |
|----------------|------------|
| a) journey;    | c) love;   |
| b) expedition; | d) voyage. |

2) If you begin a letter with Dear Mr.Grant you should end it with \_\_\_\_\_

- |               |                      |
|---------------|----------------------|
| a) sincerely; | c) truly yours;      |
| b) bye-bye;   | d) yours faithfully. |

3) If we address to a woman MS. We \_\_\_\_\_ .

- |                                   |                             |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| a) know her name;                 | c) know her marital status; |
| b) don't know her marital status; | d) know where she is from.  |

4) I \_\_\_\_\_ had three jobs in my life so far.

- |               |           |
|---------------|-----------|
| a)experience; | c) tried; |
| b) have;      | d) hated. |

5) Each CV should be \_\_\_\_\_ for the job you are applying for.

- |                    |             |
|--------------------|-------------|
| a) carefully done; | c) perfect; |
| b) customized;     | d) adopted. |

6) Money paid to a professional person, e.g. a doctor or lawyer for advice given:

- |                |                  |
|----------------|------------------|
| a) fee;        | c) bonus;        |
| b) commission; | d) money earned. |

7) The salary is not exceptional but the \_\_\_\_\_ include the use of a car and subsidized accommodation.

- |              |                |
|--------------|----------------|
| a) overtime; | c) main point; |
| b) perks;    | d) fee.        |

8) People, covering long distances in sands or deserts are called \_\_\_\_\_

- |               |              |
|---------------|--------------|
| a) nomads;    | c) trippers; |
| b) travelers; | d) hikers.   |

9) \_\_\_\_\_ is smth that is shown on a map.

- |            |               |
|------------|---------------|
| a) zone;   | c) route;     |
| b) scheme; | d) itinerary. |

10) Sorry, I don't know what happened. We got \_\_\_\_\_ .

- |              |                 |
|--------------|-----------------|
| a) cut off;  | c) a call;      |
| b) get back; | d) put through. |

## **UNIT 2. Historical Development of International Relations**

### **Exercise 1. Answer the questions to the text in the unit 1.**

1. What are the reasons of people who want to travel?
2. When did tourism really get moving?
3. What was the first tourist event?
4. What was the advantage for religious people on their pilgrimage?
5. What did pilgrims visit?
6. What did pilgrims do to entertain themselves on the road?
7. Who was the first to catch the travel bug?
8. Traveling overseas was the essential part of every young gentleman's education in the 17th and the 18th centuries, wasn't it?
9. Why did the upper classes flock to spa towns?
10. What really opened up the tourist industry?
11. When was the modern tourist industry born?
12. How is tourism characterized in the post World War II years?
13. What did the masses begin to spend their disposable income on?
14. When did the first package tours abroad appear?
15. What changes in tourist industry have taken place in recent decades?

**Exercise 2. Find in the text synonyms to the following words:**

- *to appear*;
- *to take up* travelling;
- *upper* classes;
- to become *mature*.

**Exercise 3. Find in the text the opposites to the following words:**

- *modern* Greeks;
- to gaze at the *sunrise*;
- *submissive* men;
- *to remember* worldly cares.

**Exercise 4. Look through the tests and choose the right answer.**

1) The carpet in the lobby has to be of good quality to stand up to the \_\_\_\_\_ of continual use.

- |                   |                  |
|-------------------|------------------|
| a) wear and tear; | c) upper degree; |
| b) worn and torn; | d) holes;.       |

2) Portsmouth was the first \_\_\_\_\_ capital of New Hampshire.

- |               |                     |
|---------------|---------------------|
| a) colonial;  | c) cultural;        |
| b) beautiful; | d) nicely designed. |

3) If I \_\_\_\_\_ you, I \_\_\_\_\_ be travelling in the rush hour.

- |                    |                 |
|--------------------|-----------------|
| a) am, can;        | c) were, would; |
| b) were, wouldn't; | d) am, shall.   |

4) Ishtar was the patron \_\_\_\_\_ of the Babylonian army.

- |             |               |
|-------------|---------------|
| a) mother;  | c) princess;  |
| b) goddess; | d) godfather. |

5) As the gods \_\_\_\_\_ actually to inhabit these statues it was very important that whatever they \_\_\_\_\_ should please them.

- |                        |                            |
|------------------------|----------------------------|
| a) were believed, saw; | c) were considered, liked; |
| b) are believed, see;  | d) known, recognized.      |

6) Aphrodite was \_\_\_\_\_ goddess who represented love and beauty.

- |             |              |
|-------------|--------------|
| a) Chinese; | c) Slavonic; |
| b) Greek;   | d) Italian.  |

7) Taj Mahal which located outside \_\_\_\_\_ was built as a testimony of love.

- |          |            |
|----------|------------|
| a) Agra; | c) Peking; |
|----------|------------|

b) Delhi; d) New York.

8) The \_\_\_\_\_ from the airport to the hotel will take fifty minutes.

a) call; c) transfer;  
b) travelling; d) route.

9) You'll get \_\_\_\_\_ if you book through a business travel agent.

a) a bonus; c) points;  
b) an upgrade; d) money.

10) All data on Whale Watching Expedition collected is sent to New England \_\_\_\_\_ research centre.

a) marine; c) wind;  
b) desert; d) ground.

### UNIT 3. Institutions in International Relations

**Exercise 1. Answer the clues to find the hidden word, using the text in unit 1.**

1) Tourism has come a long way from its distant, *humble* beginnings to its sustainability. (6 letters)

2) In the 19th century railways stretched their \_\_\_\_\_ webs across the civilized world. (4 letters)

3) In the 17-18th centuries the upper classes were flocking to \_\_\_\_\_ towns to have a rest and treatment. (3 letters)

4) With the introduction of hotel vouchers and \_\_\_\_\_ cheques the tourist industry in its modern form was born. (10 letters and ' )

5) With the introduction of jet airliners the idea of \_\_\_\_\_ holidays really took off. (8 letters)

6) During the heyday of \_\_\_\_\_ Empire they built thousands of roads which were an advantage to religious travellers. (5 letters)

7) The post war \_\_\_\_\_ have witnessed the mass tourism coming of age. (5 letters).

**Exercise 2. List the key events in the history of tourism for each of these periods.**

ancient Greece:	<i>In 776 BC people travelled to watch and take part in the Olympic Games</i>
the Romans:	
early Christianity:	
the 17-18th centuries:	
the 19th century:	

post World War II:	
nowadays:	

**Exercise 3. Translate the following words and write down in what context they may be used.**

tourist boom	driver of economic growth
the UN conference	promote tourism
associate members	sustainability
affiliate members	the supreme body of the WTO
on the basis of	to hold the session
intergovernmental organization	to elect the General Secretary
to cooperate with the UN	

**Exercise 4. Look through the tests and choose the right answer.**

- 1) Traditional hospitality is \_\_\_\_\_ discreet efficiency and comfort.
  - a) achieved through;
  - b) taken through;
  - c) gained at;
  - d) due to.
  
- 2) A co-ordinator will be \_\_\_\_\_ at all times to ensure the success of your conference.
  - a) at hands;
  - b) at disposal;
  - c) on hand;
  - d) of use.
  
- 3) Sloping surface for holding a book or papers when reading in public is:
  - a) lectern;
  - b) wooden post;
  - c) sloping table;
  - d) a shelf.
  
- 4) How do you understand this phrase «Second to none»?
  - a) the worst;
  - b) good;
  - c) the best;
  - d) beautiful.
  
- 5) Place where people meet for a large event, e.g. a sports contest, a conference or a concert, is known as a:
  - a) venue;
  - b) fair;
  - c) exhibition;
  - d) meeting.
  
- 6) The notion \_\_\_\_\_ means: which cannot be operated by children.
  - a) not allowed for children;
  - b) child-forbidden;
  - c) child-proof;
  - d) no children admission.
  
- 7) Abbreviation for the word «passenger» is:



advantage. For certain jobs a background in history, architecture or other professional qualifications is more useful than general tourism training.

A majority of the jobs in the tourist industry have one common feature: contact with the public. Anyone who has chosen a career in tourism should enjoy working with people.

There are many facilities for training in the tourist industry. Many hotel companies, airlines have training programmes and courses for those who is eager to work in tourism. No matter what aspect of the industry a person may work in, the final result of the effort should be a satisfied customer who remembers his trip and his holiday with pleasure.

**Exercise 2. According to the text choose the correct item.**

- 1) Tourism as one of the service industries employs a lot of people, so it is ...
  - a) the world's largest employee;
  - b) labour-intensive;
  - c) labour effective;
  - d) labour efficient.
  
- 2) What is the range of jobs in tourism?
  - a) from the unskilled, the semi-skilled to the high skilled;
  - b) from the unskilled to the semi-skilled;
  - c) from the semi-skilled to the high-skilled;
  - d) from the unskilled to the high-skilled.
  
- 3) Everyone in tourism agrees that ... is more important in this sector than in most others.
  - a) qualification;
  - b) experience;
  - c) special education;
  - d) personality.
  
- 4) What is common to a majority of jobs in the tourism industry?
  - a) career;
  - b) training;
  - c) contact with people;
  - d) knowledge of a foreign language.
  
- 5) The final result of the tourism employee's effort should be ...
  - a) a complaining customer;
  - b) a satisfied customer;
  - c) a pleasant customer;
  - d) a smiling customer.

**Exercise 3. Answer these questions:**

1. Why is tourism labour-intensive?
2. What is the range of jobs in tourism?
3. What personal qualities are very important for those working in the tourism industry?
4. What qualifications are needed for some jobs in tourism?
5. What is common feature of a majority of the jobs in the tourism industry?
6. What result must each person working in tourism seek for?

**Exercise 4. Look through the tests and choose the right answer.**

1) It was in the 1960s and 1970s that the real growth in charter \_\_\_\_\_ travel happened.

- |           |                 |
|-----------|-----------------|
| a) air;   | c) underground; |
| b) water; | d) space.       |

2) C. Manrique was far more than just \_\_\_\_\_, however.

- |                                 |                                     |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| a) a scientist and philosopher; | c) an artist and designer;          |
| b) a sailor and builder;        | d) a political leader and traveler. |

3) Have you got any \_\_\_\_\_ on the ten o'clock flight?

- |           |               |
|-----------|---------------|
| a) seats; | c) vacancies; |
| b) rooms; | d) brochures. |

4) A person, looking after a museum is a:

- |            |                      |
|------------|----------------------|
| a) warden; | c) curator;          |
| b) guard;  | d) flight attendant. |

5) A person, who gives advice on how to promote a region or sector of tourism is a:

- |                          |                       |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| a) marketing consultant; | c) manager;           |
| b) marketing leader;     | d) marketing adviser. |

6) Person, who keeps the ships accounts and looks after passengers' rooms and general comfort is a:

- |             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| a) curator; | c) purser;       |
| b) sailor;  | d) vice captain. |

7) This can be economically disastrous for countries which rely heavily on \_\_\_\_\_ from tourism.

- |            |             |
|------------|-------------|
| a) income; | c) money;   |
| b) food;   | d) results. |

8) Shore erosion has occurred and \_\_\_\_\_ which are home to rare reef plants have been destroyed.

- a) dead areas;                      c) caves;  
b) vital areas;                      d) ground.

9) A team of biologists is currently working \_\_\_\_\_ a project.

- a) on;                                      c) at;  
b) for;                                      d) during.

10) Belize's barrier reef has always been an essential source of food and income for local \_\_\_\_\_ .

- a) carpenters;                      c) plumbers;  
b) businessmen;                      d) fishermen.

## UNIT 5. Theories of International Studies

**Exercise 1. Read the passages about six people talking about their jobs. Match the people to their job titles.**

- a. Product Manager*
- b. Trainee Hotel Manager*
- c. Conference Coordinator*
- d. Travel Consultant*
- e. Cabin Attendant*
- f. Business Travel Consultant*

1) I've been working in the local office of a major travel agency group in the US for the last three years. I have to try to find corporate clients who will regularly use us when their personnel has to come for a meeting or a conference or a negotiation – something like that. It's a pretty competitive market because when a company is going through a bad patch then travel is often one of the first things that gets cut. So we try to include a number of incentives, but of course that cuts our own profit margins.

2) I'm on a programme where every month or so I change departments, so I started off in the restaurant and then spent some time in the kitchen and went into the reception and at the moment I'm working in one of the offices and learning accountancy and financial management, and then, at the end of that I hope I'll get a job in a position of responsibility either generally or in a particular department.

3) I basically have to be friendly to passengers, make sure everyone is in the right seat, then show them the safety procedures and serve drinks and a snack. It's not easy to combine this job with a social life because I'm frequently away from home. This week we're stopping over in Dubai so we won't be back for another couple of days. But I enjoy the contact with people and we're part of a good team.

4) I have a checklist of points which I go over beforehand to make sure that everything is ready. I check that the equipment is in the right place and in working order, that all the catering has been looked after, the hotel reservations have been made and things like that. Then when people arrive I welcome them and give them their badges and information folders. Next week we're having a big do with about 600 participants.

5) I have to deal with the public and take their bookings for flights, hotels, tours, car hire and that sort of things. It's quite hard work and the basic salary isn't brilliant, but I get a performance-related bonus and commission so I don't do too badly. I'm doing a training course at the moment because I'd like to specialize in incentive travel. In fact, I have an interview next week.

6) What I have to do is to plan ahead so that in two or three years' time we have another destination or resort to offer in the catalogue. This means that I have to visit and travel around the region, contract with hoteliers and service providers and so on. Obviously, I have to deal with a lot of money matters and negotiate terms and conditions. At the moment we're thinking of opening up a resort in Albania.

### Exercise 2. Answer these questions:

- 1) Where does a tour operator work?
- 2) What do tour packages include?
- 3) What's the difference between a tour guide and a conductor?
- 4) What does the job of a social director involve? Why is it important?
- 5) What kind of work does a tourism information clerk do?
- 6) Which role is the most important in tourism?

### Exercise 3. Imagine you're doing a hotel job (any hotel job you know about). Write the questions and answers like this.

What do you do?	I look after ...
What's your job?	I work in ...
What department do you work in?	I make sure that ...
	I'm in charge of ...
	I'm responsible for ... ing ...
	My duties include ... ing ...

### Exercise 4. Look through the tests and choose the right answer.

- 1) You are welcome \_\_\_\_\_ yourself hot drinks in the large kitchen.
  - a) to make;
  - b) to cook;
  - c) to taste;
  - d) to drink.
  
- 2) \_\_\_\_\_ of the house is light and spacious with cheerful bedrooms.
  - a) the space;
  - b) the outside;
  - c) inside;
  - d) the inside.



6) Where does a travel agent work?

**Exercise 2. Imagine that you're at the Front office desk. Some guests come to you with the problems below. You promise to get help from a member of staff. Which member of staff will you contact? Choose from the people in this list:**

<i>the Maintenance Engineer</i>	<i>the Lift Attendant</i>
<i>the Cashier</i>	<i>the Switchboard Operator</i>
<i>the Housekeeper</i>	<i>the Bellhop</i>
<i>the Valet</i>	<i>the Parking Attendant</i>

*e.g. - A guest would like to check out. She is in a hurry to catch a train.  
- In this case I'll contact the Cashier*

1) A guest has knocked over a jug of milk in her room. She should like someone to come and clean up.

2) A guest has some heavy luggage in his room. He would like someone to carry it for him.

3) A guest has an important meeting this afternoon. He would like someone to press his suit for him.

4) A guest would like to take the list to his room. He cannot see very well and needs help.

5) A guest wants to make a telephone call to the US, but she is not sure how to do it.

6) A guest notices that the air conditioning in her room doesn't work. She would like someone to come and repair it.

7) A guest's car is parked in the hotel car park. He would like someone to drive his car to the front entrance.

**Exercise 3. Complete these questions with the correct question word. Then match the questions to the answers below.**

- 1) \_\_\_\_\_ was your last job? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2) \_\_\_\_\_ languages can you speak? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3) \_\_\_\_\_ language do you speak the best? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4) \_\_\_\_\_ job are you looking for? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5) \_\_\_\_\_ did you stay in Mexico? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6) \_\_\_\_\_ did you choose to study tourism? \_\_\_\_\_
- 7) \_\_\_\_\_ will I be able to start? \_\_\_\_\_
- 8) \_\_\_\_\_ responsibility is it to supervise staff? \_\_\_\_\_

<i>I was a receptionist</i>	<i>Spanish, French and a little Arabic</i>
<i>I'm most fluent in Spanish</i>	<i>I'd like to work for an airline</i>
<i>Just a week</i>	<i>I like meeting people</i>
<i>As soon as possible</i>	<i>Mrs Young's</i>

**Exercise 4. Look through the tests and choose the right answer.**

1) Thailand is situated between «secret» countries of:

- a) Burma, Laos and Cambodia;                      c) Laos, Cambodia and China;  
b) Japan, Burma and The Philippines;            d) Russia, Burma and Laos.

2) No trip to Bangkok is complete without a visit to at least one of the \_\_\_\_\_ temples.

- a) Orthodox;    c) Muslim;  
b) Buddhist;    d) Catholic.

3) Sydney offers many apartment-style hotels, which generally \_\_\_\_\_ the moderate price range.

- a) go into;    c) fall into;  
b) fall out;    d) fall over.

4) In addition to these budget hotels, Sydney has \_\_\_\_\_ Backpacker's lodges.

- a) dozen of;    c) pairs of;  
b) dozens of;    d) group of.

5) The accommodation is \_\_\_\_\_ in the main building itself \_\_\_\_\_ in one of the five other lodges.

- a) either .. at;    c) either ...or;  
b) neither ... nor;                                      d) as.... as.

6) The survey was \_\_\_\_\_ this summer.

- a) explored;    c) carrying out;  
b) carry out;    d) carried out.

7) «Getting the balance right» is the main skill of \_\_\_\_\_ and commentaries should vary according to each group.

- a) guiding;    c) tourists;  
b) teachers;    d) philosophers.

8) A trip offered to a group of employees as a reward for good work is:

- a) incentive tour;                                      c) gratuity;  
b) panoramic tour;                                      d) commission.

9) Interest and care must still be shown \_\_\_\_\_ customer satisfaction.

- a) to build;    c) to help;  
b) to ensure;    d) ensure.



- a) providing the data;                      c) give the information;  
b) provide the data;                        d) providing news.

2) You can \_\_\_\_\_ your own itinerary by choosing a pass or passes which best suit your travel plans.

- a) tailoring;                                  c) create;  
b) tailor;                                      d) invent.

3) You will be travelling with people from all parts of the world, it is a great opportunity ...

- a) to lose friends;                          c) making new friends;  
b) to make new friends;                    d) gaining new friends.

4) Eurobus has well-trained and experienced guides available \_\_\_\_\_ any questions you may have.

- a) to present;                                c) to answer;  
b) to give;                                    d) to solve.

5) These important details take \_\_\_\_\_ time:

- a) so much;                                  c) such few;  
b) so few;                                     d) too many.

6) There is also time \_\_\_\_\_ its fascinating bazaars at your own pace before we fly to Pokhara.

- a) to look after;                            c) to wander at;  
b) to wander in;                            d) to spend.

7) We set out by jeep or elephant \_\_\_\_\_ one-horned rhino.

- a) looking after;                            c) in search of;  
b) searching at;                             d) killing.

8) We set out by jeep or elephant searching for one-horned rhino and perhaps even \_\_\_\_\_ tiger.

- a) Bengal;                                    c) Indian;  
b) Benjamin;                                d) red.

9) \_\_\_\_\_ the increasing demand for holidays close to nature, we offer a programme of rural facilities.

- a) due at;                                      c) despite;  
b) in response to;                          d) in response.



- Never send CV without a cover letter explaining which vacancy you're applying for.
- Don't fax a CV unless you're asked to. It's a confidential document.

<b>3</b>	
----------	--

Write a list of important headings. These should include your name, date of birth, your address (and your e-mail address, if you have one), phone number (at work and at home), your work record and so on.

Start with your most recent job and work backwards.

<b>4</b>	
----------	--

Don't leave out any vital information. If you spend a year or two traveling, say so. Years that are unaccounted for will seem suspicious.

Don't include any negative information, such as exam failures or lost jobs. Be positive about yourself, but don't lie or you will undermine yourself from the start.

Don't ask for your CV to be returned; many companies keep CVs on file for future reference.

<b>5</b>	
----------	--

If you are accepted, you have to go through an interview. The interview is a kind of formal meeting at which candidates are asked various questions to see if they are suitable for a particular job. This meeting is very important because it is a first direct contact with the prospective employer. Therefore, interviewees must be aware of certain rules which can often guarantee success.

<b>6</b>	
----------	--

Above all, you have to remember that the first 30 seconds are decisive, therefore you should be well-dressed to create a good impression. Only well-groomed and neat people can gain the respect of the interviewer.

However, proper clothes are not everything. Gestures, natural behaviour, the tone of voice, eye-contact and the way in which the interviewers carry on conversation are equally important.

<b>7</b>	
----------	--

Although the interview arouses understandable nervousness, applicants should try to hide it and answer the interviewer's questions firmly, clearly and fully. They cannot speak in a chaotic way, stammer or lie. They should also show that they are genuinely interested in the job and be prepared for the interview with both the information and questions about the company and the position they are applying for. In addition, they should convey enthusiasm for work. However, the most important thing that they should keep in mind is to smile and think positively. With a little luck, they will certainly succeed in the interview.

**Exercise 2. Fill in the correct word from the list below. Use the words only once.**

*direct, negative, recent, way, enthusiasm, guarantee, list, positive*

- 1) to speak in the chaotic ...
- 2) rules that ... success
- 3) a ... of facts
- 4) to start with the most ... job
- 5) the first ... contact with the prospective employer
- 6) not to include any ... information
- 7) to be ... about yourself 8. to convey ... for work

**Exercise 3. Fill in the correct preposition, then choose any five items and make sentences.**

- 1) to apply ... a job;
- 2) to be ... competition ...
- 3) a good command ... a foreign language;
- 4) suitable ... a particular job;
- 5) not to leave ... vital information;
- 6) to carry ... conversation;
- 7) to keep CV ... file ... future reference;
- 8) ... addition ...

**Exercise 4. Look through the tests and choose the right answer.**

1) It was brought to our \_\_\_\_\_ that our tour information wasn't displayed last year.

- |               |               |
|---------------|---------------|
| a) attention; | c) direction; |
| b) meeting;   | d) decision.  |

2) If they ask for \_\_\_\_\_, offer 80 p. to the person confirming the booking.

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| a) incentives; | c) privileges; |
| b) discount;   | d) bonus.      |

3) One of the product weaknesses is lack of foreign language skills especially good quality, \_\_\_\_\_ interpretation in other language.

- |               |                 |
|---------------|-----------------|
| a) on-site;   | c) respectful;  |
| b) qualified; | d) intelligent. |

4) There are four \_\_\_\_\_ tennis courts, which enables to play at night with pleasure.

- |               |               |
|---------------|---------------|
| a) expensive; | c) wonderful; |
|---------------|---------------|

b) floodlit; d) mysterious.

5) Would you like to visit a \_\_\_\_\_ area like the Antarctic?

a) protected; c) designated;  
b) restricted; d) inhabited.

6) I'd like to give \_\_\_\_\_ to Mrs. Olsen. «Is there anything you would like to say?»

a) the speech; c) the floor;  
b) the words; d) the deposit.

7) I'll \_\_\_\_\_ to France on the 1st of September.

a) run towards; c) go to;  
b) buy in; d) set off;.

8) She can't \_\_\_\_\_ travel 1st class. She doesn't earn so much.

a) afford to; c) leave to;  
b) advice to; d) afford too.

9) I think the most important thing for staff is \_\_\_\_\_ .

a) altitude; c) appearance;  
b) attitude; d) care.

10) The conference room in this countryside hotel is \_\_\_\_\_ .

a) well-done; c) well-aired;  
b) well-organized; d) well-equipped.

## UNIT 9. Energy and Environment

### Exercise 1. Answer the questions.

1. Why is finding a job becoming more and more difficult nowadays?
2. What skills must job-seekers have?
3. What qualities must job-seekers have?
4. Why is the CV so important for interviewees?
5. What suggestions can you give to have a good CV?
6. What should your CV contain?
7. Why shouldn't applicants leave out any vital information?
8. Why shouldn't applicants include any negative information?
9. Why shouldn't applicants ask to the company to return the CV?
10. What is the interview?
11. What helps to create a good impression in the first 30 seconds?

12. What else is equally important to create a good impression on the interviewer?

13. How should applicants answer the interviewer's questions?

14. What questions at the interview should applicants be prepared for?

15. What is the most important thing for applicants to remember?

**Exercise 2. Read the statements about CVs and cover letters. On the basis of your knowledge, experience and teaching materials, decide if you agree or disagree with the following. Give your grounds.**

- 1) A curriculum vita is more acceptable if it is hand-written.
- 2) A cover letter should be hand-written.
- 3) The longer a CV is the better.
- 4) You should always include a photograph.
- 5) A CV should list experience in chronological order.
- 6) It's best to explain foreign qualifications and give an approximate equivalent in the country to which you are applying.
- 7) There is no point in mentioning outside activities, hobbies, etc.
- 8) Each CV should be customized for the job you are applying for.
- 9) Perfect prose isn't expected; note form is perfectly acceptable.
- 10) Use space constructively; don't mention failures or irrelevant experience.
- 11) Don't include your previous salary or salary expectations, unless requested.
- 12) You can lie in a CV: they'll never find out anyway.
- 13) Any gaps in the dates should be explained.
- 14) It's best not to send the CV by fax unless requested to do so.
- 15) Always make a follow-up phone call a few days after sending off your CV.

**Exercise 3. Write a dialogue. Student A is an applicant for the vacancy in Global Tours and student B is an interviewer. Follow the given procedure and write down the interview.**

- 1) read the candidate's CV and cover letter before the interview welcome the candidate and put him / her at ease;
- 2) start with some small talk about a subject of interest to you both;
- 3) give the candidate some brief information about Global Tours;
- 4) ask the candidate questions about recent experience and qualifications;
- 5) find out about the candidate's strengths / weaknesses / motivations;
- 6) allow opportunities for the candidate to ask you questions;
- 7) thank the candidate and say when you will contact him / her.

***Typical interview question can help you***

*Can you tell me about yourself?*

*What are your strong / weak points?*

*Why do you want to work in the travel industry?*

*Do you have any previous work experience?*





**Exercise 4. Look through the tests and choose the right answer.**

1) Buying large amounts of goods or services in order to get a lower price is a:

- a) bulk purchase;                      c) wholesale purchase;  
b) complete purchase;                d) bought goods.

2) Planned method of work is a \_\_\_\_\_ .

- a) strategy;                              c) aim;  
b) goal;                                    d) planning.

3) The last term when the product can be used is known as:

- a) expiry date;                        c) valid date;  
b) produce date;                      d) term date.

4) When I need a band-aid I go the:

- a) drug-store;                          c) grocery;  
b) butcher's;                            d) baker's.

5) You can improve the taste of the sauce with vanilla. It is:

- a) season;                                c) garnish;  
b) flavor;                                 d) roast.

6) Remove the outer skin of the potatoes. It is to:

- a) peel;                                    c) dice;  
b) mash;                                  d) cut.

7) Could you remove the skin and bones from the fish, please? It is to make a:

- a) skeleton;                              c) fillet;  
b) soup;                                    d) sandwich.

8) Water required for a building may be stored in a:

- a) saucepan;                            c) tank;  
b) garage;                                d) bottles;

9) The restaurant is closed for two months while it is being:

- a) renewed;                              c) renovated;  
b) remade;                                d) reformed.

10) There will be ten new bedrooms when the builders finish the \_\_\_\_\_.

- a) extension;                            c) enlargement;  
b) extent;                                 d) utility.

## **UNIT 11. Politics and Government**

### **Exercise 1. Read the text and translate it.**

#### **The Role of Tourism in International Relations**

There are many types of tourism nowadays. They depend on the purposes of travellers. They are international and domestic tourism, inbound and outbound, recreational and business, etc. Tourism is not only pleasure. The more purposes travellers may have, the more types of tourism there will be. The various purposes of travel are holidays, business, health, study, sports and many others. So, there are such types of tourism as cultural and educational, ecological and adventure, hiking and hitch-hiking, pilgrimage and special-interest tourism, health and sports, holiday and resort tourism and others.

What is a special-interest tourism? As a matter of fact, there are a great deal of special-interest holidays popular with tourists connected with their hobbies, for example, cookery and bird-watching, gambling and painting, motor racing and horse riding, botany and survival. It may be an adventure holiday somewhere on an uninhabited island or there may be fascinating tours where travellers will watch exotic birds and plants in natural surroundings.

Some of the new types that will continue developing in future are third-age and fourth-age tourism. The third-age tourism concerns retired people. The fourth-age tourism involves disable people.

What is leisure tourism? It is also called pleasure or holiday tourism when a person goes on holiday and does not travel on business. Thus, the purpose of tourism in this case is recreation. So this kind of travellers go to sea resorts or holiday camps, stay at resort hotels. They enjoy organized entertainment and sport. A resort hotel usually offers tours and visits to different tourist attractions: local sights, amusement or theme parks.

Sports tourism is a type of active holiday. The purpose of a sporting tour is to exercise and to keep physically fit. At the same time travellers enjoy natural surroundings, fresh air and clean water. Within sports tourism there is water tourism, mountain tourism and mountaineering, skiing, etc.

Business tourism is a travel for business purposes. Businessmen and government officials travel on different missions. They often travel to attend a convention. Convention tourism is a part of business tourism. It involves taking part in a conference or a seminar. Business travellers often travel to attend an international exhibition or a trade fair. There are tourist companies that provide business services: they collect information on markets and trade partners, arrange negotiations, propose secretarial services and so on.

Incentive tourism means that a business company offers holiday tours to its employees and covers all travel expenses. On the one hand, the company does it as a reward to a person for his successful work. On the other hand, the company does it as an incentive for the future. The company hopes that the employee will work even

better in future and bring profit to the company. Incentive tourism emerged in the 1960s in the USA. Later on it spread in Europe.

Familiarization tourism (FAM) means that a business company sends its staff on educational tours to its branches or other business companies in other cities or countries. The main purpose of travel clerks on a FAM tour is to get necessary knowledge from personal experience. If a travel agency sends its travel clerks on FAM tours, the clerks will get familiar with local facilities, hotels, restaurants, and attractions. They will study a tour operator's or a local travel agency's practice. When the clerks return home, they will know what to offer and what to explain to their customers about the destination. FAM tourism is very popular and will become even more popular in future.

**Exercise 2. Mark the following statements as True or False.**

- 1) The more purposes travelers may have, the more types of tourism there will be.
- 2) Special-interest tourism is actually connected with tourist's job.
- 3) New types of tourism just third-age and fourth-age tourism will continue developing in the distant future.
- 4) On recreation tour tourists go to sea resorts or holiday camps, stay at resort hotels.
- 5) The purpose of a sporting tour is to go in for water, mountain kinds of sports.
- 6) There are special tourist companies that provide business services.

**Exercise 3. Answer the questions to the text.**

- 1) What do the types of tourism depend on?
- 2) What purposes of travel can you mention?
- 3) What is a special-interest tourism?
- 4) What do you know about pleasure or holiday tourism?
- 5) Sports tourism is a type of active holiday, isn't it?
- 6) What services are provided by tourist companies for their business clients?
- 7) When and where did incentive tourism emerge?
- 8) What is FAM tourism?
- 9) Why is FAM tourism becoming so popular?

**Exercise 4. Look through the tests and choose the right answer.**

- 1) The chalets have everything a guest could require. They are:
 

a) self-catered;	c) self-made;
b) self-formed;	d) self-contained.
- 2) The building has fallen into a state of \_\_\_\_\_ and now need a lot of work.
 

a) despair;	c) disrepair;
-------------	---------------



It's a modern small hotel, which is situated in the centre of Maribor. It has 50 (1) \_\_\_\_\_ all with en-suite shower, cable TV and a separate working room with modern computers and wireless internet (2) \_\_\_\_\_. In our hotel we try to meet the needs of business (3) \_\_\_\_\_. We specialize in organising different events from small regional meetings to big international conferences. We offer several fully (4) \_\_\_\_\_ meeting rooms and a conference hall. At the Wellness - Spa Centre you can treat yourself to a massage, body and facial (5) \_\_\_\_\_, various body wraps or a new hair style. Services: Room (6) \_\_\_\_\_, Meeting/Banquet Facilities, Airport Shuttle, Laundry, Dry Cleaning, Room Service, Ironing Service, Currency (7) \_\_\_\_\_, Shoe Shine, Car Rental, Fax/Photocopying.

**Exercise 2. Look through the tests and choose the right answer.**

1) The town \_\_\_\_\_ under the rock of Cefalu on which the temple of Diana \_\_\_\_\_.

- |                       |                             |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| a) sits; was built;   | c) situates; was destroyed; |
| b) sleeps; was built; | d) sits; is destroyed.      |

2) Put yourself in the employer's \_\_\_\_\_.

- |           |          |
|-----------|----------|
| a) boots; | c) head; |
| b) shoes; | d) mind. |

3) Participation in sports can show your \_\_\_\_\_ for team work.

- |                |                  |
|----------------|------------------|
| a) capacity;   | c) availability; |
| b) disability; | d) power.        |

4) While filling in the form try to research the name ( \_\_\_\_\_ correctly!) of a specific person to write to.

- |                |               |
|----------------|---------------|
| a) introduced; | c) presented; |
| b) spelt;      | d) organized. |

5) A return ticket is a ticket \_\_\_\_\_ the destination.

- |                 |                |
|-----------------|----------------|
| a) from;        | c) to;         |
| b) to and from; | d) from Japan. |

6) Braille's books are specially designed for people who can't:

- |          |                |
|----------|----------------|
| a) read; | c) taste;      |
| b) see;  | d) understand. |

7) This person directs a plane at take-off and landing:

- |           |               |
|-----------|---------------|
| a) pilot; | c) cosmonaut; |
|-----------|---------------|

b) flight attendant;      d) coach.

8) A person dealing with people arriving at a hotel is a:

a) bell boy;                      c) chambermaid;  
b) receptionist;                d) housekeeper.

9) If the weather is bad, the children at the hotel can use the \_\_\_\_\_ on the ground floor.

a) resident nurse;                c) kitchen;  
b) playroom;                      d) lobby.

10) In order to cater for guests who have babies, we have installed facilities in the toilets.

a) high chairs;                    c) ramps;  
b) nappy-changing;              d) necessary.

**Exercise 3. Imagine you work in a tourist agency. You would like to prepare a sightseeing tour of the place where you live. Create an offer in which you include the things you can do and see in your village/town/region. Offer a possibility of different types of accommodation.**

**Exercise 4. Imagine you are the owner of the small family-owned Pohorje Hotel. On the occasion of the 10th anniversary of your hotel you are organizing a formal dinner for your business partners. Prepare the invitation card for your guests.**

**Exercise 5. Read the text about eating and drinking habits around the world.**

**Write a short essay (250-300 words) based on such questions:**

**1) How do eating and drinking habits of Ukraine people differ from eating and drinking habits of people from other countries?**

**2) Describe eating and drinking habits in Ukraine and in the region you come from.**

## **Eating and Drinking Habits Around the World**

People around the world have different eating and drinking habits. Therefore it is a good thing to be aware of some basic needs of guests from around the world.

**The English guest.** They prefer an extensive breakfast selection, strong tea, served with cold milk, bottled sauces, a large selection of sandwiches, a good selection of cheeses, vegetables prepared as they would be in England and all kinds of potatoes.

**The American guest.** The American guest particularly appreciates ice water with every meal, free coffee refills, a large selection of beverages, bread and butter with lunch and dinner.

**The German speaking guest.** The Austrian, German and Swiss guest prefers an extended breakfast. Besides lunch and dinner, there is a mid-morning break and an afternoon break (with coffee, cakes and pastries).

**The Italian guest.** He or she particularly likes plenty of white bread and grissini, parmesan, water, wine vinegar and olive oil, lemon wedges with all fish and meat dishes.

**The Spanish guest.** The Spanish guest particularly appreciates white bread with all dishes, a pitcher of tap water, friendliness towards children, employees` knowledge of Spanish, consideration of later dining times.

**The Swedish guest.** Swedish guest is used to three meals a day. They prefer flexible mealtimes, fish dishes, water and bread included in the price, a choice of dressings.

**The Japanese guest.** He or she particularly appreciates a greeting by the host or the service employee. Because Japanese people greet each other by bowing, handshakes should be offered with discretion. They are used to fast service and full dedication from service employees. One should avoid eye contact and be aware of the fact that a Japanese guest is not familiar with food from other countries.

**The Chinese guest.** The Chinese guest particularly appreciates Chinese cuisine. They usually travel on business and in groups. Therefore the menus are often ignored and the restaurant manager should recommend a variety of courses. Hot towels to clean the hands before the meal and continuous tea service with free refills are expected.

**The Jewish guest.** Jewish cuisine is originally based on strong religious beliefs. Since Jewish people have dispersed all over the world, their cuisine is heavily influenced by many other cuisines. Nevertheless general rules are detailed in the Talmud, a collection of religious rules written in the 6th century. Their rules divide foods into Kosher (permitted, clean), Treife (not allowed), and Parve (neutral foods, always pure). Since Judaism forbids any kind of work on the Sabbath, meals are prepared in advance and kept warm.

**The Middle Eastern/North African guest.** In these countries breakfast consists of black tea, fresh pita, white bread, sheep and goat`s cheese, black and green olives, hard-boiled eggs, all kinds of nuts and fresh fruit. Lunch usually consists of a light meal, but dinner is extensive. Mohammed`s teaching prohibits alcohol consumption. Common beverages are spring and mineral water, fruit juices, milk and ayran, a Turkish yoghurt beverage. Fasting during Ramadan lasts for forty days. It is forbidden to eat during the day. The faithful are allowed to eat from sunset to sunrise.

## PART III. THEORY OF TRANSLATION

### I. METHODOLOGICAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR SEMINAR (PRACTICAL) CLASSES

#### UNIT 1. What could we say about Translation?

##### **Task 1. Read the text, study the material about Translation studies.**

The second half of the 20<sup>th</sup> century has seen the in-depth study of translation, which is sometimes called Theory of Translation, Science of Translation, Translation Linguistics, or even Translatology.

It has been claimed abroad that translation studies began in 1972 with Holmes's paper presented at the Third International Congress of Applied Linguistics, «The Name and Nature of Translation Studies». However, unfortunately, European and American scholars seemed to have been unaware of the achievements of the Russian school of translation studies. Works by V. Komissarov, A. Shveitser, A. Fedorov and many others confirmed the status of translation studies as a discipline of its own even in the 1950s.

The main concern of translation theory is to determine appropriate translation methods for the widest possible range of texts and to give insight into the translation process, into the relations between thought and language, culture and speech.

There are several aspects of this branch of linguistics:

- 1) General theory of translation, whose object is general notions typical of translation from any language.
- 2) Specific (or partial, in terms of Holmes) theory of translation that deals with the regularities of translation characteristic of particular languages – for example, translation from English into Russian and vice versa.
- 3) Special (partial) theory of translation that pays attention to texts of various registers and genres.

There are two polysemantic terms – translation and interpretation: to interpret might mean «to render or discuss the meaning of the text» – an outstanding British translation theorist P. Newmark, for example, states that «when a part of a text is important to the writer's intention, but insufficiently determined semantically, the translator has to interpret». The term to translate is often referred to any (written or oral) manner of expression in another language.

A few words about the terms translating and rendering. When we translate, we express in another language not only what is conveyed in the source text but also how it is done. In rendering, we only convey the ideas (the what) of the source text.

##### **Task 2. Answer the following questions. Prove your point of view with the material, what you have read.**

- 1) What is the difference between translation and interpretation? What do you understand under the term «rendering»?

- 2) What are the main aspects of the translation theory?
- 3) What is that specific work, where the Science of Translation was the first time mentioned?
- 4) What is the main concern of translation theory?

**Task 3. Read the text about Semiotic approach. Try to retell it in your own words.**

Language system is the part of semiotics dealing with sign systems. Therefore, semiotic theories may be applied to language functioning. According to the semiotic approach, translation is language of code switching. When translating, we switch from one language to another one.

American linguist Roman Jakobson in his article «On Linguistic Aspects of Translation» spoke of three possibilities of code switching:

1) Intralinguistic translation, or rewording, i.e. interpreting verbal signs through other signs of the same language. This can be done on diachronic level: Chaucer's text is translated into modern English. When done on synchronic level, this kind of code switching is called a paraphrase. We often deal with paraphrasing when trying to explain or define things. For example, to explain the meaning of the phrase *I am not much of a cook*, we can paraphrase it by *I do not like to cook*, or *I do not cook well*. In the theory of translation, this type of code switching is called a transformation.

2) Interlanguage translation, i.e. substituting verbal signs of one language by verbal signs of another language, or switching from one language code to another one. This type of code switching is translation proper, the object of Translation Studies.

3) Intersemiotic translation, i.e. substituting signs of one semiotic system by signs of a different semiotic system. In its broad meaning, the term implies transmutation and can be illustrated by decoding some ideas and themes expressed, for example, in a poem through the «language» of music or dance.

**Task 4. Answer the following questions. Prove your point of view with the material what you have read.**

- 1) What can you say about the possibilities of code switching? By whom were they mentioned? Do you agree with their point of view?
- 2) What is the semiotic theory?
- 3) Explain in your own words code switching.
- 4) What do you understand under the word «paraphrase»? Give some examples.
- 5) What is transformation?
- 6) What is the difference between the interlanguage translation and the intersemiotic translation?
- 7) What is the object of Translation Studies?
- 8) Give examples of rewording.

**Task 5. Read the text about Communicative approach. Try to explain the difference between communicative and semiotic approaches.**

Communication is the process of transferring information from one person to another. Translation helps people communicate if they speak different languages.

Thus, translation is a two-facet phenomenon: on the one hand, it is the process of transferring information; on the other hand, it is the result of this process. By the result is meant a new text created in translating.

A speaker or writer (an author) makes a meaningful utterance called the text and addresses it to the listener, reader, or receptor, who understands the purport of the text and reacts to it.

The translation situation doubles the elements of communication. The receptor of the original text in turn becomes a translator who makes a translated text, or target text intended for the receptor speaking another language:

The source text is the text to be translated. The target text is the end-product, the translated text.

For the translation to be adequate and effective, the target text should be equivalent to the source text.

Thus, translation unifies two different language speech acts in one communicative situation.

**Task 6. Answer the following questions. Prove your point of view with the material, what you have read.**

- 1) What are the functions of the translation?
- 2) What should we do to make the process of communication convenient?
- 3) What are the source text and the target text?
- 4) What should we do to make the translation adequate and effective?

**Task 7. Read the material about dialectics of translation and retell it.**

*Inseparability of form and meaning.*

A translator is to convey not only the ideas and themes of the source text (meaning, sense); he should also pay attention to the adequate form to express these ideas. He should not become carried away with a free (loose) form of translation, nor force the target language by following the source text word for word. A translator always bears in mind a standard language of the target text.

*Social functions.*

Translation does not exist outside of society. It appeared in society when communities began to trade and exchange ideas. At the same time, translation helps the world community develop. Nations could hardly have achieved the technological success as it is in the 20th century if there had been no translations in electronics, physics, chemistry and other branches of science and technology.

According to the Encyclopedia Britannica, in the 20th century most of the world's people speak one of about 75 primary languages. A small minority speak one

of 450 secondary languages, and more than 4,400 other languages are in use. Without translation and translators the world would not be able to progress.

*Translation and culture are inseparable.*

Translation could not have developed without culture. Literature, science, and philosophy influence translators' conceptualizations. On the other hand, culture could not have developed without translation, since translations enrich nations with the cultural values of other nations.

*Reflection and creativity in translation.*

Translation reflects the source text but it does not copy it. To translate adequately, a translator must do his or her best to find the proper means of expression. Translator bears in mind that the receptor has a cultural background other than that of a receptor of the original text; therefore, he has to be very resourceful in producing the same impact upon the receptor as that of the source text. Special problems arise in translating dialects, foreign speech, puns, poetry, etc. Translator is in constant search for new tools to solve translation problems.

*Translation is the art and the science.*

Translation is dominated by objective, scientific, and linguistic description and explanation. At the same time it is a subjective choice of means preserving stylistic equivalence of the source text.

**Task 8. Answer the following questions. Prove your point of view with the material, what you have read.**

- 1) Do you agree with the statement that translation is the art and the science?
- 2) What is the target of the translator when working on the text?
- 3) Do the translation helps the world community develop? Explain it.
- 4) What has translation do with the culture? How are they related?
- 5) What has to do a translator to do his work properly?
- 6) Can you give the example of the tools to solve translation problems?

**Task 9. Read the text about translation invariant. What is it based on?**

Many linguistic terms have been borrowed from mathematics. Translation invariant is one of them. By translation invariant we mean what is in common between the two expressions, a source one and a target one, after our manipulations and transformations of variable phrases.

By translation invariant we should understand the semantic equivalence of the source and the target texts.

Some linguists, however, consider the notion to be broader than this definition. They suppose that it is the real situation described by the text that brings together the source and the target texts. If the situation is understood differently, it leads to misunderstanding, which can happen in a monolanguage situation as well, and is often the basis for all sorts of comical jokes.

Therefore, the invariant of translation is based not only on semantics (meaning), but also on pragmatics (communicative intention).

**Task 10. Answer the following questions. Prove your point of view with the material, what you have read.**

- 1) From what disciplines many linguistic terms have been taken?
- 2) What is translation invariant?
- 3) How can we avoid misunderstanding when translating? Substantiate your answer.

**Task 11. Read the material and retell it in your own words. What is it about?**

According to R. Bell, a unit of translation is the smallest segment of a source language text which can be translated, as a whole, in isolation from other segments (as small as possible and as large as is necessary).

There exists the notion of a word-for-word translation, the word can hardly be taken for a translation unit. First of all, this is because word borders are not always clear. Sometimes a compound word is written in one element, sometimes it is hyphenated, or the two stems are written separately as a phrase: e.g., moonlight, fire-light, candle light. On the other hand, in oral speech it is difficult to single out separate words because they tend to fuse with each other into inseparable complexes: [*'wudʒə 'ko:lim?*] – according to the stress, there should be two words, while in written speech we can see four words: *Would you call him?*

Furthermore, it is impossible to consider a phrase (word combination) as a translation unit, because its boundaries are also vague.

Thus, it is not a language unit that should be considered in translation, but a discourse (speech) unit. A translation unit is a group of words united in speech by their meaning, rhythm and melody, i.e. it is a syntagm, or rhythmic and notional segment of speech.

This definition of the unit of translation is process-oriented. If considered from a product-oriented point of view, it can be defined as the target-text unit that can be mapped onto a source-text unit.

**Task 12. Answer the following questions. Prove your point of view with the material, what you have read.**

- 1) What is a unit of translation? Why the word can hardly be taken for a translation unit?
- 2) Can a word combination be considered as a translation unit? Explain it.
- 3) What can you say about the speech unit?
- 4) What segments of speech do you know?

## UNIT 2. What are the types of translation?

### Task 1. Read these criteria. Think over it. Can you add something to it?

There are some criteria for classifying translation:

- 1) The first one is based on who does the translation. These days translation may be done by a human translator or by computer.
- 2) Form of speech: according to this criterion, translation as a written form, sight translation (or translation-at-sight, on-sight translation) as the oral translation of written text, and interpreting as oral translation of oral discourse are differentiated. This criterion also involves subtitling, that is visual translation involving the superimposition of written text onto the screen, and dubbing, or the replacement of the original speech by a voice track which attempts to follow as closely as possible the timing, phrasing and lip movements of the original dialogue.
- 3) Source text perception: a translator can see or hear the text.
- 4) Time lapse between the source text perception and translation: consecutive and simultaneous interpreting.
- 5) Number of languages in translation situation: one-way or two-way translation.
- 6) Direction of translation: direct translation, that is, translation into the mother-tongue, and inverse translation, or translation into a foreign language.
- 7) Methods of interpreting: note-taking interpretation, phrase-by-phrase interpretation
- 8) Functional style and genre of the text: literary works and informative texts.

### Task 2. Answer the following questions. Prove your point of view with the material, what you have read.

- 1) Which ways the translation can be made?
- 2) Concerning the translation what forms of speech do you know?
- 3) What can you say about the subtitling and dubbing? Characterize them.
- 4) What is the difference between the source text perception and dubbing?
- 5) How much time must be the time lapse between the source text perception and translation?
- 6) List criteria that you know for classifying translation. Characterize them.

### Task 3. Read the text about machine translation. What are the benefits of it?

Today, machine translation is often called computer-aided translation (CAT). CAT systems are divided into two groups: machine-aided human translation (MAHT) and human-aided machine translation (HAMT). The difference between the two lies in the roles of computer and human translator.

In MAHT, a translator makes the translation, then uses the computer as a tool for typing, checking spelling, grammar, style; for printing the target text, for looking up words in electronic dictionaries and data bases, for getting references on CD-

ROMs and other sources, for consulting about contexts, for discussing problems in the web, for searching a job, etc.

In HAMT, the translation is automated, done by a computer but requiring the assistance of a human editor. There are two phases of human help: pre-editing and post-editing. In pre-editing, an operator (or a customer) prepares the text for input. A special computer translation program transfers the text from one language to another. Then a translator does the post-editing, mostly by correcting the word usage.

Machine translation has a number of advantages and disadvantages. The advantage is, first and foremost, its fast speed, which saves time, so important these days. The computer is tireless; it can work day and night. Now that there are lap-tops, a computer is a very flexible and convenient tool: it can accompany a translator anywhere. Computers are also of great help to disabled people, especially computers working with a human voice.

On the other hand, computers are restricted to the materials. They can translate only clichéd texts. They cannot translate unpredictable texts, like fiction, for example. Usually they provide «raw translation». Another disadvantage is that they are still rather expensive. They require constant upgrading, which is usually not cheap. Computer viruses are a serious danger to work. And computers are not absolutely safe for human health, either.

**Task 4. Answer the following questions. Prove your point of view with the material, what you have read.**

- 1) Into what groups computer-aided translation systems are divided?
- 2) Characterize the machine-aided human translation.
- 3) How can you describe the human-aided machine translation?
- 4) List the advantages and disadvantages of the machine translation.
- 5) Do you agree with the statement that computers are not absolutely safe for human health? Can you explain why?

**Task 5. Read the text about translation and interpreting. Outline the main points.**

Difference in written translation and interpreting had been fixed by two international professional associations: F.I.T. (Fédération Internationale des Traducteurs) or the International Federation of Translators, the association of written translators; and A.I.I.C. (Association Internationale des Interprètes de Conférence), or the International Association of Conference Interpreters, dealing with oral translation. Conference interpreting is known to have started after World War I, at the Conference on the Preliminaries of Peace in 1919. Until then all international meetings had been held in French, the language of 19th century diplomacy.

The first conference interpreters did consecutive interpreting, i.e. they delivered their translation after listening to the speaker so that there was some time between the source language text and the translation. The interpreters worked in teams of two, each into his mother tongue. At the League of Nations, interpreters went to the rostrum to deliver their translation as soon as the speaker had finished.

Occasionally speeches lasted well over an hour, so the interpreters, considering it bad taste to interrupt a speaker, developed a technique of consecutive interpreting with note-taking.

Two Geneva conference interpreters, J.-F. Rozan and J. Herbert, after having reviewed their own as well as their colleagues' writing pads, came to the conclusion that although each interpreter had his or her own manner of writing, there was something common to all the notes reviewed. This brought to life recommendations to would-be interpreters on how to take notes in order to memorize the message and not to interrupt the speaker.

The «sentence-by-sentence» interpreting often found in liaison and community interpreting is not regarded now as 'true consecutive'. Liaison interpreting takes place in spontaneous conversational settings, while community interpreting is typical of the public service sphere.

These days consecutive interpreting is used mostly in bilateral contacts, to serve only two languages.

Interpreting may take place in two directions when the interpreter has to work for both language participants. This is a two-way, or bidirectional, translation (interpretation) and it requires a special skill of switching the languages to speak to.

A one-way interpreting means translation from one language only and is usually employed for summit meetings.

There is a sub-variety of the consecutive interpreting, known as postponed consecutive interpreting. This is a translation which is not performed in the presence of the participants, but which is dictated from the interpreter's notes into a dictating machine or typed, in case the participants have understood the speaker but want to think over the discourse to take appropriate decisions on it.

Consecutive interpreters are also called linear interpreters, for their translation is in line with the source text unlike simultaneous translation that overlaps the original speech.

Simultaneous interpreting, i.e. interpreting almost immediately as the speaker produces the text (the interpreter can lag behind the speaker not more than 2 or 3 seconds), came into life much later, at the Nuremberg trials (1945-1946) and Tokyo trials (1946-1948) of war criminals, though some attempts had been made in the late 1920s and the early 1930s. In the USSR, simultaneous interpreting was first introduced at the 6th Congress of the Communist International in 1928, with the interpreters sitting in the front row of the conference hall trying to catch speakers' words coming from the rostrum, and talking into heavy microphones hanging on strings from their necks. Isolated booths for interpreters appeared five years later, in 1933.

Simultaneous interpreting gained ground at the United Nations Organization that began the era of multilateral diplomacy. Today's simultaneous interpreters, unlike their predecessors, are provided with special equipment. They work in a special booth, listening through a headset to the speaker in the conference room and interpreting into a microphone, while at the same time watching what is going on in the meeting room through the booth window or viewing projections on the TV

screen. Delegates in the conference room listen to the target-language version through a headset.

Simultaneous translation is usually employed at multilanguage (multilateral) meetings, so that conference participants can switch their headphones to the appropriate language channel.

Simultaneous interpreting is very exhausting work. It requires extremely concentrated attention. The interpreter should adjust his/her own speech tempo to that of the speaker. Several skills are simultaneously featured: listening, speaking, switching to another language, compressing information. Simultaneous interpreting is possible due to the human ability to anticipate and forecast what will be said in some minutes. To do it, one must have a good command of the subject matter under discussion. Since the simultaneous interpreter's work is so intense and the conditions are extreme, interpreters are usually changed at the microphone every 20 or 30 minutes.

Simultaneous translation may take place not only in the special booth. There is also whispered interpreting (or chuchotage) where the interpreter sits between the participants and whispers his/her translation to them. This type of translation is often used in a business meeting.

The simultaneous interpreter can get the source text in written form, which does not make his/her job easier, since the interpreter has to do simultaneously three jobs: read, listen and interpret. It is a most strenuous task, for the interpreter has to be watchful of the speaker deviating from the text.

Written translation is also divided into sub-varieties. It may be a visual translation (a written text is before the translator's eyes), translation by ear (in this case the translator listens to the text and writes the translation: dictation-translation), sight translation, (i.e. translation of the written text without preliminary reading, usually done orally).

The most obvious differences between written translation and interpreting are as follows:

- translators have time to polish their work, while interpreters have no time to refine their output
- any supplementary knowledge, for example terminological or world knowledge, can be acquired during written translation but has to be acquired prior to interpreting
- translators can re-read their texts, they do not have to memorize big segments, while interpreters are able to listen to the text but once
- interpreters have to make decisions much faster than translators
- unlike written translation, interpreting requires attention sharing and involves severe time constraints. Following the United Nations norms of six to eight pages of written translation per day, the professional translator typically produces about five words per minute or 300 words per hour. The simultaneous interpreter, in contrast, has to respond instantly at a rate of 150 words per minute or 9000 words per hour.

**Task 6. Answer the following questions. Prove your point of view with the material, what you have read.**

- 1) By what international associations the difference in written translation and interpreting had been fixed?
- 2) What can you say about the International Association of Conference Interpreters?
- 3) What do you know about their speeches?
- 4) Where the liaison interpreting and the community interpreting take place?
- 5) What is postponed consecutive interpreting?
- 6) What interpreters called «linear interpreters» Explain why?
- 7) What can you say about the simultaneous interpreting? Tell briefly about its history.
- 8) Explain why the simultaneous interpreting is such an exhausting work. What you think about yourself, could you work as a simultaneous interpreter?
- 9) Tell about the sub-varieties of the written translation.
- 10) How can you describe the sight translation?
- 11) What is the difference between written translation and interpreting?

**Task 7. Read about functional classification. Are there any important points that the author has forgotten to add?**

According to the dominating function of the source text, translations are divided into literary and informative groups.

In literary translation, the poetic function of the text prevails. It is the translation of fiction prose, drama, and poetry. To translate a literary work, a translator should apply for the copyright.

Informative translation is the translation of texts on science, technology, official writings, business messages, newspaper and magazine articles, etc. These texts can also have an expressive function, but it is not dominating in the text. The prevailing function here is informative.

**Task 8. Answer the following questions. Prove your point of view with the material, what you have read.**

- 1) To what groups according to the dominating function of the source text translations are divided?
- 2) What is the poetic function of the text?
- 3) What should do a translator to translate a literary work?
- 4) What does the informative translation means?

### UNIT 3. Evaluative classification of translation

#### Task 1. Read the text about the adequate and equivalent translations.

Translation theorists have long disputed the interrelation of the two terms.

V. Komissarov considers them to denote non-identical but closely related notions. He claims that adequate translation is broader in meaning than equivalent translation. Adequate translation is good translation, as it provides communication in full. Equivalent translation is the translation providing the semantic identity of the target and source texts. Two texts may be equivalent in meaning but not adequate.

A. Shveitser refers the two terms to two aspects of translation: translation as result and translation as process. We can speak of equivalent translation when we characterize the end-point (result) of translation, as we compare whether the translated text corresponds to the source text. Adequacy characterizes the process of translation. The translator aims at choosing the dominant text function, decides what he can sacrifice. Thus, adequate translation is the translation corresponding to the communicative situation.

Close to this understanding of translation adequacy is E. Nida's concept of dynamic equivalence, «aimed at complete naturalness of expression» and trying «to relate the receptor to modes of behavior relevant within the context of his own culture». Nida's principle of dynamic equivalence is widely referred to as the principle of similar or equivalent response or effect.

Y. Retsker states that the notion of adequate translation comprises that of equivalent. According to him, an adequate target text describes the same reality as does the source text and at the same time it produces the same effect upon the receptor.

Translation adequacy is achieved by three types of regular correlations:

- 1) equivalents, that is regular translation forms not depending upon the context (they include geographical names, proper names, terms): the Pacific Ocean, hydrogen.
- 2) analogs, or variable, contextual correspondence, when the target language possesses several words to express the same meaning of the source language word.
- 3) transformations, or adequate substitutions.

#### Task 2. Answer the following questions. Prove your point of view with the material, what you have read.

- 1) How can you describe adequate translation?
- 2) According to V. Komissarov how the adequate translation and the equivalent translation are interrelated?
- 3) What does the adequacy in translation mean from your point of view?
- 4) What does A. Shveitser claim speaking of the aspects of translation?
- 5) What does A. Shveitser say about the equivalent translation?
- 6) What translation corresponds to the communicative situation the most?
- 7) What can you say about the E. Nida's concept of dynamic equivalence?
- 8) What does Y. Retsker state about the adequate translation?

9) What are the regular correlations? What types of the regular correlations are being used to achieve the translation adequacy?

10) What do you mean under the word «equivalents»? Give examples.

11) Give examples of the contextual correspondence. How can this concept be named differently?

### **Task 3. Read the text about the literal translation and retell it.**

Literal translation is the translation that reproduces communicatively irrelevant elements of the source text, This usually happens when the translator copies the source language form on this or that level of the language.

According to the language level, there exist various types of literal translation:

1) *on the sound level*: this type of literal translation results in the so called «translator's false friends», that is words similar in sounds but different in meaning: conductor, herb, computer silicon chips.

2) *on the syntactic level*: copying the structure of the source language. Sometimes an inexperienced translator is hypnotized by the source language, and, to translate «accurately», he tries to render the meaning word for word, thus breaking combination rules of his own language.

3) *on the semantic level*: giving the primary meaning of the word or its part, whereas a semantic transformation is required.

4) *etymological errors*: disregarding language changes. Words acquire new meanings over time and use.

5) *following the style of the source text*: different registers require different language means.

We can see that very often literal translation is not necessarily a word-for-word translation, although it is often associated with a rather negative evaluation of the translation.

### **Task 4. Answer the following questions. Prove your point of view with the material, what you have read.**

1) What is literal translation?

2) What is etymology?

3) How many types of literal translation exist according to the language level?

What are they?

4) What are the so called «translator's false friends»? Give some examples.

5) Is it possible not breake combination rules of the result language when translating from the source language?

6) What are the etymological errors?

7) Is it necessary to come up to the word-for-word translation?

**Task 5. Read the text and think over. Is there something you can add to this material about the free translation?**

Free translation is the reproduction of the source form and content in a loose way. This concept means adding extra elements of information or losing some essential ones.

Of course, it is not very good when a translator add details not described by the author, neither it is proficient to reduce the source text.

Nevertheless, free translation is appropriate in some cases: poetry translations are done with a certain degree of freedom. A translator is also free to modernize a classic text in order to subvert established target-language reader-response. Free translation is also admitted in the titles of novels, movies, etc.

Recently translation theorists have begun to relate free translation to communicative translation, depending on the purpose of the translation, and literal translation to the so-called semantic translation. Communicative translation tends to undertranslate, i.e. to use more generic, catch-all terms in difficult passages. A semantic translation tends to overtranslate, i.e. to be more detailed, more direct, and more awkward. P. Newmark, however, distinguishes semantic translation as the attempt to render as closely as possible the semantic and syntactic structures of the target language, from literal translation, when the primary senses of the lexical words of the original are translated as though out of context. He defines communicative translation as that which produces on its receptors an effect similar to that on the receptors of the original.

**Task 6. Answer the following questions. Prove your point of view with the material, what you have read.**

- 1) What can you say about free translation?
- 2) In which cases the free translation is appropriate?
- 3) What mistakes in your point of view can make a translator when using free translation in his work? How can he avoid the mistakes?
- 4) In what areas free translation is admitted? Give examples.
- 5) What is the difference between communicative translation and semantic translation? Substantiate it. Give examples.
- 6) What does P. Newmark say about semantic and communicative translations?

**Task 7. Read the text. What can you say about the concept of «untranslatability»?**

It is a cardinal problem that is a cornerstone of the translation art and craft. The reasons for the lack of belief in achieving adequate translation have been expressed time and again. In trying to replace a message in one language with a message in another language, the translator loses some meaning, usually associative, either because he belongs to a different culture or because the receptor's background knowledge does not coincide with that of the source text receptor (cultural overlap). Thus the transfer can never be total.

Reality is segmented differently by languages, which depends upon the environment, culture and other circumstances people live in.

Translators' scepticism and pessimism came to be known in the Middle Ages. Dante Alighieri (1265-1321) claimed that no poem can be translated without having its beauty and harmony spoilt. Miguel Cervantes de Saavedra (1547-1616) likened the works in translation to the wrong side of a Flemish tapestry: you can see only vague figures and cannot admire the bright colors of its right side.

Wilhelm von Humboldt (1767-1835), a German philologist and translator, stressed that «no word in one language is completely equivalent to a word in another language», and that «each language expresses a concept in a slightly different manner, with such and such a denotation, and each language places it on a rung that is higher or lower on the ladder of feeling.»

No matter what reasons might be given by theorists, translation practice has been proving that this concept is groundless. Translators have always attempted to be not just a «window open to another world» but rather «a channel opened», through which foreign influences can penetrate the native culture, challenge it, and influence it. So the concept of untranslatability is not shared by practical translators who help people of various countries to communicate.

Though sceptical and negative, the concept played its positive role in the history of translation. It has caused scholars to ponder over language and culture discrepancies and to give up the idea of one language mechanically overlapping another one to convey the message.

**Task 8. Answer the following questions. Prove your point of view with the material, what you have read.**

- 1) Describe the problem of «untranslatability».
- 2) How can a translator achieve adequate translation without losing details?
- 3) What are the reasons of losing the meaning of the source text?
- 4) What can you say about the cultural overlap?
- 5) In what century translators' scepticism and pessimism is known to be used?
- 6) What did philologists and translators of the Middle Ages claim about ways of translation?
- 7) What can you say about the concept of untranslatability?
- 8) What role did the concept of untranslatability play in the history of translation?

## **UNIT 4. Translation Equivalence**

**Task 1. Read this material about the types of equivalence and retell it.**

Translation equivalence does not mean that source and target texts are identical. It is a degree of similarity between source and target texts, measured on a certain level.

Viewed from the semiotic angle, the source and target texts can be identical pragmatically, semantically and structurally.

Every text should be equivalent to the source text pragmatically, which means that the both texts should have one and the same communicative function. The target text should have the same impact upon the receptor as the source text has.

Semantic identity implies describing the same situation, using similar lexical meaning of the units, and similar grammatical meaning of the elements.

Structural similarity presupposes the closest possible formal correspondence between the source text and the target text.

According to V. Komissarov, one can distinguish five levels of equivalence: pragmatic, situational, lexical (semantic), grammatical, structural levels.

**Task 2. Answer the following questions. Prove your point of view with the material, what you have read.**

- 1) What is the translation equivalence?
- 2) How to make the target text match the source text?
- 3) What does semantic identity imply?
- 4) What does the structural similarity presuppose?
- 5) What are the levels of equivalence according to V. Komissarov?

**Task 3. Read and say in your own words about the pragmatic level of translation.**

First and foremost, the translation must retain the same communicative function as the source text. The description and enumeration of speech functions can be found in the work by R. Jakobson, who pointed out the following:

1) informative function, i.e. conveying information: *I am green with envy because of the success of my competitor.*

2) emotive function, i.e. expressing the speaker's emotions: *What on earth do I need such a friend for?*

3) conative function, i.e. expressing one's will: *Could you do me a favor, please?*

4) phatic function, i.e. making communicative contact: *How do you do!*

5) metalingual function, i.e. describing language features: *Don't trouble trouble until trouble troubles you.*

6) poetic function, i.e. aesthetic impact:

*Tiger Tiger, burning bright,*

*In the forests of the night;*

*What immortal hand or eye,*

*Could frame thy fearful symmetry? (W.Blake)*

These sentences have only one thing in common: general intent of communication, communication aim, or function. At first glance, the source and target texts have no obvious logical connection; they usually designate different situations, have no common semes (i.e. smallest components of meaning), and have different grammar structures.

**Task 4. Answer the following questions. Prove your point of view with the material, what you have read.**

- 1) What did R. Jakobson say about the speech functions?
- 2) What does the same mean? Describe it.
- 3) What is the name of the function that helps to make communicative contact?

Give examples.

- 4) What function describes language features? Give examples.
- 5) What function contains the aesthetic impact? Give an example.
- 6) What is the difference between emotive and conative function?
- 7) What function expresses the speaker's will?
- 8) What function conveys information?
- 9) What function expresses the speaker's emotions?
- 10) Give examples of the use of informative function.
- 11) Think of advantages and disadvantages of every speech function separately.

**Task 5. Read and think over. What can you add about situational level of translation?**

The source and the target texts can describe the same situation from different angles with different words and structures: *I meant no harm*. (the situation in the bus); *Who shall I say is calling?* (the situation on the phone); *Wet paint*. (the situation in the park).

There are no parallel lexical or structural units in these counterparts. Therefore, their content is different, the word senses are different, grammar relations between the sentence components are different. Nevertheless, the utterances correspond to each other in their communicative functions and in the similarity of the described situation. Because of this identity, V. Komissarov calls this type of equivalence «identification of the situation».

Frequently one and the same situation is referred to in different languages. This is particularly true of set phrases: *Fragile.*; *Beware of the dog!* *Push/Pull*

**Task 6. Answer the following questions. Prove your point of view with the material, what you have read.**

- 1) What does V. Komissarov states under the «identification of the situation»?
- 2) Give some examples of the situational level.

**Task 7. Read the text about the semantic paraphrase and retell it.**

Dealing with the transformation the meaning implies the semantic variation, or semantic paraphrase of the source language utterance. For example, the sentence in the original can be translated as if the situations were viewed from the different angle: *He was not unlike his mother*.

Or some words of the source language sentence are paraphrased in translation: *After her illness, she became as skinny as a toothpick*.

Or the target sentence can verbalize the idea in more detail than the source language sentence: *Boris is in no mood for joking today.*

On this level of equivalence, the source and the target sentences have the same function (aim), they describe the same situation, and their meanings are approximately identical, whereas their grammar structures are different. As is known, the meaning of each word consists of semes, the smallest sense component. The set of semes in the source and target sentences is the same, but they are grouped differently and, therefore, are verbalized in different ways and do not have the same syntactic structure.

V. Komissarov states that on this level the two sentences match because they have approximately the same method of the situation description.

**Task 8. Answer the following questions. Prove your point of view with the material, what you have read.**

1) What can you say about the semantic paraphrase? Give some examples considering the viewed situations from the different angles.

2) What is the role of the smallest sense component in the translation? How is it called?

**Task 9. Read the text. What can you say about the transformational equivalence?**

On this level, the target and the source language sentences manifest grammar transformations: the passive predicate can be translated by the active: *The port can be entered by big ships only in tide.*

Likewise, part of speech can be changed in translation: *We had a long walk.* Or the structure of the sentence can be modified: *Jane was heard playing the piano.* Any other change of the grammar meaning within the sentence testifies to the equivalence on the transformational level, which is called by V. Komissarov the level of the invariant meaning of the syntactic structure.

This level of equivalence presupposes retention of the utterance function, the description of the same situation, the same meaning of the source and target sentences, and a very close (but variable) grammatical meaning.

**Task 10. Answer the following questions. Prove your point of view with the material, what you have read.**

1) What is transformational equivalence? Give examples.

2) How the equivalence on the transformational level was called by V. Komissarov?

3) What does the level of equivalence presuppose?

**Task 11. Look through this information about lexical and grammatical equivalence. Give more examples.**

On this level, the most possible semantic similarity between the source and target sentences is found:

- *Every mother loves her children.*
- *I will write you every week.*

As a matter of fact, this is a word for word translation where each word and the whole structure retains its lexical and grammatical meaning, the situation designated by the sentences is identical, and the communicative function of the utterances is the same. Every form of the target sentence is equal, with no variations, to that of the source language sentence. Therefore, this level might be called the level of formal equivalence.

**Task 12. Answer the following questions. Prove your point of view with the material, what you have read.**

- 1) What is the lexical equivalence?
- 2) What is the grammatical equivalence?
- 3) Is it possible to reach the lexical and grammatical equivalence at the same time? Explain why.
- 4) What can you say about the formal equivalence? Give examples.

**Task 13. Read the text. What can you say about the levels of equivalence hierarchy?**

The relationship between the levels of equivalence is not random. Each subsequent level presupposes a preceding one. Thus, the level of lexical and grammatical equivalence implies that the phrases have the same grammatical and lexical meanings (transformation and semantic equivalence), refer to the same situation, and have the same function. Phrases equivalent at the semantic level have similar semantics, describe the same situation and perform the same function; however, they do not have close grammatical meaning, since this level of equivalence is higher than the transformational level. Thus, the hierarchy observed between the levels of equivalence is unilateral, the lower levels presupposing the higher ones, but not the other way about.

The hierarchy of levels does not imply the degree of evaluation. A lower level of equivalence does not mean a worse level. A higher level of equivalence is not a better one. A translation can be good at any level. This depends on a number of factors, such as the aim of the author, the requirements of the text, the perception by the receptor.

Pragmatics of translation seems to dominate all other aspects of this type of communication.

**Task 14. Answer the following questions. Prove your point of view with the material, what you have read.**

- 1) What does the level of lexical and grammatical equivalence imply?
- 2) Characterize the phrases equivalent at the semantic level.
- 3) Explain why the hierarchy between the levels of equivalence is unilateral.
- 4) Describe the levels of equivalence.
- 5) At what level a translation is better? Explain why.
- 6) What does the quality of translation depend on? Substantiate your point of view.

## **UNIT 5. Translation Models**

**Task 1. Read the text and say in a few words what you mean under the translation process.**

To start a machine translation, computer designers invited a group of experienced translators to ask them a question, seemingly naive but directly referring to their profession: how do you translate? Could you tell us in detail everything about the translation process? What goes on in a translator's brain? What operation follows? Dmitri Zhukov, a professional translator, reminisces that this simple question took everyone by surprise, for it is a terribly difficult thing to explain what the process of translation is.

Attempts to conceptualize the translation process have brought to life some theories, or models, of translation. The translation model is a conventional description of mental operations on speech and language units, conducted by a translator, and their explanation.

Approximately, translation models can be singled out:

- 1) Situational (denotative) model of translation;
- 2) Transformational model of translation;
- 3) Semantic model of translation;
- 4) Psycholinguistic model of translation.

Each model explains the process of translation in a restrictive way, from its own angle, and, therefore, cannot be considered comprehensive and wholly depicting the mechanism of translation. But together they make the picture of translation process more vivid and provide a translator with a set of operations to carry out translation.

**Task 2. Answer the following questions. Prove your point of view with the material, what you have read.**

- 1) What is the process of translation in your point of view?
- 2) What is the translation model?
- 3) How can translation models be singled out?
- 4) What does each translation model explain?

**Task 3. Read the text. What can you say about the situational model of translation?**

One and the same situation is denoted by the source and target language. But each language does it in its own way.

To denote means to indicate either the thing a word names or the situation a sentence names. Hence is the term of denotative meaning, or referential meaning, i.e. the meaning relating a language unit to the external world; and the term of denotation, or a particular and explicit meaning of a symbol.

To translate correctly, a translator has to comprehend the situation denoted by the source text, as P. Newmark stressed, one should translate ideas, not words and then find the proper means of the target language to express this situation (idea). If the translator does not understand the situation denoted by the source text, his translation will not be adequate, which sometimes happens when an inexperienced translator attempts to translate a technical text. The main requirement of translation is that the denotation of the source text be equal to the denotation of the target text. That is why a literary word-for-word translation sometimes results in a failure of communication.

Thus, this model of translation emphasizes identification of the situation as the principal phase of the translation process.

A weak point of this model is that it does not explain the translation mechanism itself. One situation can be designated by various linguistic means. Why choose this or that variable over various others? The model gives no answer to this question.

**Task 4. Answer the following questions. Prove your point of view with the material, what you have read.**

- 1) Tell about the word «denote». What does it mean in translation process?
- 2) Describe the term «denotative meaning».
- 3) What does denotation mean?
- 4) What did P. Newmark say about translation?
- 5) What does P. Newmark claim about the main requirement of translation?
- 6) What do you think about the word-for-word translation?
- 7) What does the situational model of translation emphasize?
- 8) Tell about the weak points of the situational model of translation.

**Task 5. Read about the transformational model of translation. Retell it.**

When translating, a person transforms the source text into a new form. Transformation is converting one form into another one.

There are two transformation concepts in the theory of translation.

In one of them, transformation is understood as an interlinguistic process, i.e., converting the source text into the structures of the target text, which is translation

proper. Special rules can be described for transforming source language structures as basic units into target language structures corresponding to the basic units.

In the second concept, transformation is not understood as broadly as replacing the source language structures by the target language structures. Transformation here is the part of a translation process, which is:

Analysis: the source language structures are transformed into basic units of the source language. For example, the sentence *I saw him entering the room* is transformed into *I saw him. He entered the room.*

What are the advantages and disadvantages of this model? It is employed in contrastive analysis of two language forms that are considered to be translation equivalents, as it verbalizes what has been transformed in them and how. This model provides us with transformation techniques. It explains how we translate equivalent-lacking structures into another language. This model is important for teaching translation because it recommends that one transform a complex structure into a simple one.

However, a disadvantage of this model consists in inability to explain the choice of the transformation made, especially at the third synthesis phase. It does not explain the facts of translation equivalence on the situational level. It also ignores sociocultural and extralinguistic aspects of translation.

**Task 6. Answer the following questions. Prove your point of view with the material, what you have read.**

- 1) How many transformations are there in the theory of translation? What are they?
- 2) What is the interlinguistic process?
- 3) What is transformational model of translation? Give examples.
- 4) Tell about the advantages of the transformational model.
- 5) What are the disadvantages of the transformational model?

**Task 7. Read about the semantic model of translation. What is the difference of this model from previous?**

This model places special emphasis on semantic structures of the source and target texts. According to it, translation is conveying the meaning of the source text by the target text. The two texts can be called equivalent in meaning if their semantic components are close or identical. In order to translate, one must single out the meaningful elements of the original and then choose the target language units that most closely express the same content elements. (This model is sometimes called Content-Text Model) For this procedure, a componential (or seme) analysis is widely employed.

Like in the transformation model, the process of translation is subdivided into some phases:

- 1) Analysis: the semantics of the source language units are represented by deep semantic categories.

2) Translation: the relevant semantic categories of the source language are made equal to the deep semantic categories of the target language.

3) Synthesis: the semantic categories of target language are verbalized.

This model gives a good explanation of the translation equivalence and of the reasons for translation failures when irrelevant (or not all relevant) semes have been taken into consideration. It explains the mechanism of selecting one variable among synonyms: that synonym is chosen which has the greatest number of relevant semes similar to the source language word.

But the insufficiency of this model is that the process of singling out semes is a very difficult one. It does not explain the cases of situational equivalence.

**Task 8. Answer the following questions. Prove your point of view with the material, what you have read.**

1) How can you describe the process of translation according to semantic model?

2) What model is called Content-Text Model?

3) Into what phases the process of translation is subdivided?

4) What do you understand under «analysis» and «synthesis»?

5) What is the source language?

6) What is the target language?

7) What are the advantages of the semantic model of translation?

8) What are the disadvantages of the semantic model of translation?

**Task 9. Read the text. What is psycholinguistic model of translation? What information can you add to this text?**

Translation is a kind of speech event. And it develops according to the psychological rules of speech event.

The scheme of the speech event consists of the following phases:

- the speech event is motivated;
- an inner code program for the would-be message is developed;
- the inner code is verbalized into an utterance.

Translation is developed according to these phases: a translator comprehends the message (motif), transforms the idea of the message into his own inner speech program, then outlays this inner code into the target text.

The point of this theory is that it considers translation among speaking, listening, reading and writing as a speech event. But there is evidence to suggest that translators and interpreters listen and read, speak and write in a different way from other language users, basically because they operate under a different set of constraints. While a monolingual receiver is sender-oriented, paying attention to the speaker's/writer's message in order to respond to it, translator is essentially receiver-oriented, paying attention to the sender's message in order to re-transmit it to the receiver of the target-text, suppressing, at the same time, personal reactions to the message.

There are two essential stages specific to the process of translating and interpreting: analysis and synthesis – and a third stage, revision, available only to the translator working with the written text. During the analysis stage, the translator reads/listens to the source text, drawing on background knowledge, to comprehend features contained in the text. During synthesis, the target text is produced. Then the draft written translation is revised /edited.

However, the explanatory force of this model is very restricted, inner speech being the globally disputable problem in both psychology and linguistics.

**Task 10. Answer the following questions. Prove your point of view with the material, what you have read.**

- 1) Of what phases the scheme of the speech event consists of?
- 2) What is the inner code in the speech event?
- 3) How the translation is performed according to the psycholinguistic model?
- 4) What is the point of the theory of the psycholinguistic translation?
- 5) What are the essential stages specific to the process of translating?
- 6) What does revision mean?
- 7) How does the translator do his work during the analysis stage?
- 8) How does the translator work the during synthesis stage?

## II. METHODOLOGICAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR STUDENTS' INDEPENDENT WORK

### Exercise 1. Write down the answers to the following questions.

- 1) What is the difference between free-lance and in-house translator?
- 2) What is the difference between translator and interpreter?
- 3) What does the term «bilingualism» mean?
- 4) In what ways do translators learn and master their languages?
- 5) What does it mean «to know the field of translation» and «to have necessary resources»?
- 6) What are the pitfalls of translation?

### Exercise 2. Rephrase the following sentences paying attention to Passive Constructions in italics:

- 1) Such trifles should be *put up with*.
- 2) The drowning man *was thrown* a rope.
- 3) This poor old blind man is never *read to*.
- 4) The ship *was lost sight of*.
- 5) Are we really *meant* to learn this by heart?
- 6) The room *could be entered* through a massive oak door.
- 7) This case of mental illness should *be dealt with* separately.
- 8) Edgar Poe *is felt to be* of insane mind in his later poems.
- 9) Such results *are not to be wondered at*.
- 10) His presence *was taken no notice of*.
- 11) This boy *is not spoken to*.
- 12) I don't understand why *I am asked* such a question.
- 13) John *is not to be* relied upon.
- 14) The bed *was not slept in*.
- 15) The house *was not lived in*.

### Exercise 3. Write down the answers to the following questions.

- 1) What are four qualities of translator?
- 2) What are the don't's of translator?
- 3) What does the Client expect of his interpreter?
- 4) What kind of troubles emerges while interpreting?
- 5) What is common between the professions of translator and programmer?
- 6) Why do the translators leave the profession?
- 7) For what reasons do the translators leave their profession within five years?

### Exercise 4. Rephrase the following sentences paying attention to polysemantic words and «false friends of interpreter»:

1) The faculty of the New Orleans University consists of the best *scholars*, especially in *Arts*. I asked the chemist whether they had these *preparations* at the dispensary, I also asked him for *dressing material*.

2) The salesman showed me a number of *patterns* for various fabrics.

3) The *officers* of that company consist of the president, the treasurer, the counsel, the auditor, etc.

4) «Look here, *officer*», said the old woman — «stop the traffic for a moment, so that I might walk over the square to the pavement on the other side».

5) Little Oliver Twist was very much afraid of the *master* in the working house.

6) «It is so hot in the stokehold» — said Jackson — «we ought to have better *fans*».

7) Michael Jackson has lost many of his *fans* after the scandal.

8) Five *papers* by excellent scholars were read at the Fuel Conference.

9) The film has been *edited* by A.Peterson. He is a very good specialist.

10) There are many creepers in the *conservatory*.

#### **Exercise 5. Write down the answers to the following questions.**

1) What is the aim of translation theory?

2) Why can we say that in the sentence translated from «To Kill a Mockingbird» the equivalence of meaning is preserved?

3) Why is the problem of non-translation invalid?

4) Why should we have profound background knowledge?

5) Give the examples in which our knowing history, culture, traditions, specific terms, etc., are essential for correct translation. Explain them.

6) What types of background knowledge do you know?

#### **Exercise 6. Rephrase the following sentences paying attention to polysemantic words and «false friends of interpreter»:**

1) The crew of the boat consisted of her husband, his two *mates*, three *engineers*, twelve *firemen* and ten *able-bodied seamen*.

2) *The undersecretary* was in evening dress.

3) «Take the chair» — shouted the comrades to comrade Johnson — «and don't give the floor to anybody for more than ten minutes; we want to hear your *paper* at full length».

4) A *physician* working with X-rays must be something of a *physicist*.

5) The work of a *compositor* is rather difficult.

6) *The speaker* of the House of Commons stops a *speaker* if he puts things too bluntly.

7) The *tramp* took up some kind of shipment at every port.

8) The book was edited by a famous *scholar*.

9) Mendeleev was a great *student* of chemistry.

10) A librarian must know both *Sciences* and *Arts*.

**Exercise 7. Write down the answers to the following questions.**

- 1) How to cope with lexical and grammatical ambiguity in translation?
- 2) What are the grammatical problems of scientific-technical translation?
- 3) What are the grammatical differences between English and Ukrainian?
- 4) What types of grammatical transformations are used in scientific-technical translation?
- 5) What is complex transformation?
- 6) What are lexical and grammatical problems of machine translation?

**Exercise 8. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian paying attention to polisemantic auxiliary words: *as, but, but for, either, neither, which*:**

1) Members were solemn *as* they took their seats: The Prime Minister gave a measured account of interests at stake and events of the past. *Neither* pace *nor* tone altered *as* he passed on to «what our next step should be». («*The New York Times*»)

2) The Premier's speech followed a weekend of warnings by the Chinese leaders in Peking *as* celebrations for New China's National Day got underway. («*Daily Worker*»)

3) The resolution considered it unnecessary — and so that part disappeared from the resolution *as* adopted. («*Economic Issues*»)

4) *As* stated in the program of the Communist Party of Great Britain, the aims of the working class are expressed both clearly and pointedly.

5) *As* released to the press, the communiqué was as softly toned as just only possible, *but* rumour has it that, there had been another communiqué which was withheld at the very last moment. («*DW*»)

6) He is *but* a child, do not be angry with him!

7) *But* for your help I shouldn't be able to understand this.

8) He is anything *but* a good poet.

9) Woods grew on *either* side of the river.

10) *However* tired you are, you must finish your work.

11) Yesterday my little son went out of the house to play without his overcoat. Now he recovered from pneumonia only a short time ago which will easily make you understand how anxious I was *for* him.

12) Who will come with me, your brother or your sister? — *Neither*. They are both busy.

13) The weather is very bad today, *which* prevents us from taking a long walk.

14) *Where* a young bibliographer may make a mistake, a more experienced one will find the matter easy.

15) Every student *whether* of the junior or senior courses must attend the lectures regularly.

**Exercise 9. Write down the answers to the following questions.**

- 1) What is the main peculiarity of translation units?
- 2) How many units of translation are differentiated? Enumerate them.

- 3) Why is the level of intonation important in interpretation?
- 4) What is transcription and transliteration?
- 5) What are the problems of translating proper names?
- 6) What role does the level of phonemes/graphemes play in translating poetry?

**Exercise 10. Translate the portion from the famous S. Coleridge's (1772-1834) poem «The Rhyme of the Ancient Mariner» preserving stylistics, meanings and rhyme:**

*The ship was cheered,  
the harbor cleared,  
Merrily did we drop Below the kirk\*, below the hill.  
Below the lighthouse top.*

*The Sun came up upon the left,  
Out of the sea came he!  
And he shone bright, and on the right,  
Went down into the sea.*

*And now there came both mist and snow,  
And it grew wondrous cold:  
And ice, mast-high, came floating by,  
As green as emerald.*

*And a good south wind sprung up behind;  
The Albatross did follow,  
And every day, for food and play,  
Came to the mariners' hollo.*

*The Sun now rose upon the right:  
Out of the sea came he,  
Still hid in mist, and on the left  
Went down into the sea.*

*kirk\* (Scottish) – church*

**Exercise 11. Translate the following sentences paying attention to conversion which means changing the syntactical function of a word (e.g.: book, *n* → to book, *v*):**

- 1) I *papered* my room yesterday.
- 2) I have *watered* my flowers.
- 3) The hospital *houses* 500 patients.
- 4) The goods have been *tabled*.
- 5) Don't *gas* so much.
- 6) I have a *cut* on my cheek.
- 7) *He has a burn* on his leg.
- 8) *The test run* of the locomotive was very successful.
- 9) There is a *give* in the beam.

- 10) He went through *the cold* and through *the damp*, never afraid of catching *cold*.
- 11) *The then* President of the United States was Lincoln.
- 12) Don't *syrup* water!
- 13) Don't *water* syrup!
- 14) *The dog spotted* the hare.
- 15) Jones was one of the best engine-drivers of that line. And Peter who *fired for* him was considered a first-rate worker too.
- 16) The train *steamed out* of the station.
- 17) He *thundered out* a command.
- 18) I prefer to *pencil* that note, because, otherwise, I'll *ink* my fingers with your bad penholder.
- 19) I don't like his *looks*. That *red* in his cheeks speaks of T.B. (tuberculosis).
- 20) The cow has been *milked*.
- 21) He *clerked* at a small factory.
- 22) Your hat wants a *brush*.
- 23) *It's a mere nothing*.
- 24) It's a *good buy*.
- 25) I don't like the *feel* of flannel of my skin.
- 26) Give your horse a *feed* (give a read, give a thought).

**Exercise 12. Write down the answers to the following questions.**

- 1) What English diminutive suffixes do you know?
- 2) How did Latin influence English vocabulary?
- 3) What synonymous Latin and Greek prefixes do you know?
- 4) What properties do roots and affixes possess?
- 5) What do the given Latin roots mean etymologically?

**Exercise 13. Translate the following sentences paying attention to converted words and word combinations in italics:**

- 1) Through London streets yesterday the king's funeral procession took two-and-half hours to *slow-march* from Westminster to Paddington station.
- 2) We should not *porch-porch* the idea that this country should annex Egypt in order to safeguard the communications with India ... so say the Tories now and so they went on saying for years *on end*.
- 3) The *die-hards* are in fact nothing but *have-beens*.
- 4) The *whys* and *wherefores* of a war in which children must die have never been made clear.
- 5) We must live in *the now* and pursue a constructive policy.
- 6) Hiroshima was *atombombed* without the slightest mercy.
- 7) This is a *robber budget* that the Tories want to introduce.
- 8) Weigh the *fors* and the *against* and the decision will be clear as daylight.
- 9) She watched her son *wolfing* his meal.

10) We are *inching* forward to our target yet progressing we are.

11) It was a novel experience to find *himself head-lined*.

12) Don't be *yanked* into war.

13) Within the offices *were* newly *plastered*, newly *painted*, newly *papered*, newly *floorclothed*, newly *tabled*, newly *chaired*, newly *fitted up* in every way with goods that were substantial and expensive.

14) How many a time have we mourned over the dead body of Julius Caesar and *to be'd and not to be'd* in this very room.

15) The number of signatures to the Appeal will *snowball* rapidly.

16) The short-time working which began in Lancashire has *snowballed* into a large-scale slump in the cotton industry.

17) Both sides *Ink* Treaty.

**Exercise 14. Translate the following sentences paying attention to figurative expressions in italics:**

1) He *crowded* a lot of adventures *into* his young life.

2) The invention of the printing press is among the *highest points in* the history of education.

3) This political party contains a new *plank* in its platform.

4) *His span of life* was but short.

5) The steam drop hammer has a massive frame which takes the *punishment* from the terrific impact of the ram.

6) *Cast iron* proof was given to show that he was guilty.

7) This was rather an unusual mood for Mr.N. whose mind *navigated* rather larger seas than those where his daughter's small barques adventured.

8) In spring plants *shoot out* rapidly.

9) Fear *dogged* in his steps.

10) It was then that I *embarked on* my study of Shakespeare.

11) Time is *disjoined* and *out of frame*. (W. Shakespeare)

12) Why should I write down what's *riveted*, *screwed* to my memory. (W. Shakespeare)

13) This alloy is first *cousin* to another one.

14) A number of conferences have been organized at which seasoned literary critics will discuss and analyze the works of *budding* authors.

15) Let us *spur* the local industry of our country.

16) England considers Canada as her *granary*, Australia as her *butcher* and New Zealand as her *henhouse*.

17) Before the war Italy, not wanting to have *all her eggs in one basket*, tried alternatively to make friends with all the great powers.

### III. CHECK OF KNOWLEDGE

#### Variant 1

**Answer the following questions:**

- 1) What is the main concern of translation theory?
- 2) Do the translation helps the world community develop? Explain it.
- 3) How can we avoid misunderstanding when translating? Substantiate your answer.

#### Variant 2

**Answer the following questions:**

- 1) What is the difference between translation and interpretation? What do you understand under the term «rendering»?
- 2) Describe the term «denotative meaning».
- 3) Is it possible to reach the lexical and grammatical equivalence at the same time? Explain why.

#### Variant 3

**Answer the following questions:**

- 1) What is that specific work, where the Science of Translation was the first time mentioned?
- 2) Tell about the weak points of the situational model of translation.
- 3) Describe the levels of equivalence.

#### Variant 4

**Answer the following questions:**

- 1) Tell about the word «denote». What does it mean in translation process?
- 2) What are the main aspects of the translation theory?
- 3) Of what phases the scheme of the speech event consists of?

#### Variant 5

**Answer the following questions:**

- 1) What can you say about the possibilities of code switching? By whom were they mentioned? Do you agree with their point of view?
- 2) What is the point of the theory of the psycholinguistic translation?
- 3) What are the essential stages specific to the process of translating?

#### Variant 6

**Answer the following questions:**

- 1) What do you understand under «analysis» and «synthesis»?
- 2) What is the source language?
- 3) Tell about the weak points of the situational model of translation.

**Variant 7****Answer the following questions:**

- 1) Explain why the hierarchy between the levels of equivalence is unilateral.
- 2) What does the quality of translation depend on? Substantiate your point of view.
- 3) What does the level of equivalence presuppose?

**Variant 8****Answer the following questions:**

- 1) What is the role of the smallest sense component in the translation? How is it called?
- 2) What can you say about the semantic paraphrase? Give some examples considering the viewed situations from the different angles.
- 3) What is transformational equivalence? Give examples.

**Variant 9****Answer the following questions:**

- 1) What did philologists and translators of the Middle Ages claim about ways of translation?
- 2) What can you say about the concept of untranslatability?
- 3) What is the difference between communicative translation and semantic translation? Substantiate it. Give examples.

**Variant 10****Answer the following questions:**

- 1) What mistakes in your point of view can make a translator when using free translation in his work? How can he avoid the mistakes?
- 2) What are the regular correlations? What types of the regular correlations are being used to achieve the translation adequacy?
- 3) What do you understand under the word «paraphrase»? Give some examples.

### Variant 11

#### Answer the following questions:

- 1) How many types of literal translation exist according to the language level? What are they?
- 2) Is it possible not break combination rules of the result language when translating from the source language?
- 3) Explain in your own words code switching.

### Variant 12

#### Answer the following questions:

- 1) What is transformation? Describe in simple way the process of transformation.
- 2) What can you say about rewording? Give examples of it.
- 3) What role did the concept of untranslatability play in the history of translation?

### Variant 13

#### Answer the following questions:

- 1) What is the difference between the interlanguage translation and the intersemiotic translation?
- 2) Does the translation help the world community develop? Explain it.
- 3) What is a unit of translation? Why the word can hardly be taken for a translation unit?

### Variant 14

#### Answer the following questions:

- 1) Explain why the simultaneous interpreting is such an exhausting work. What you think about yourself, could you work as a simultaneous interpreter?
- 2) Give examples of the contextual correspondence. How can this concept be named differently?
- 3) Can a word combination be considered as a translation unit? Explain it.

### Variant 15

#### Answer the following questions:

- 1) What is the semiotic theory?
- 2) What has to do a translator to do his work properly?
- 3) List the advantages and disadvantages of the machine translation.

### **Variant 16**

#### **Answer the following questions:**

- 1) What is the object of Translation Studies?
- 2) What segments of speech do you know?
- 3) How can we avoid misunderstanding when translating? Substantiate your answer.

### **Variant 17**

#### **Answer the following questions:**

- 1) By what international associations the difference in written translation and interpreting had been fixed?
- 2) How to make the target text match the source text?
- 3) How can you describe the human-aided machine translation?

### **Variant 18**

#### **Answer the following questions:**

- 1) To what groups according to the dominating function of the source text translations are divided?
- 2) According to V. Komissarov how the adequate translation and the equivalent translation are interrelated?
- 3) How many types of literal translation exist according to the language level? What are they?

### **Variant 19**

#### **Answer the following questions:**

- 1) What is the object of Translation Studies?
- 2) What can you say about rewording? Give examples of it.
- 3) Do you agree with the statement that translation is the art and the science? Prove your point of view.

### **Variant 20**

#### **Answer the following questions:**

- 1) What has to do a translator to do his work properly?
- 2) What function describes language features? Give examples.
- 3) What are the advantages and disadvantages of the speech functions?

### **Variant 21**

**Answer the following questions:**

- 1) What are the etymological errors?
- 2) Is it necessary to come up to the word-for-word translation?
- 3) What mistakes in your point of view can make a translator when using free translation in his work? How can he avoid the mistakes?

**Variant 22****Answer the following questions:**

- 1) In which cases the free translation is appropriate?
- 2) To what groups according to the dominating function of the source text translations are divided?
- 3) Explain why the simultaneous interpreting is such an exhausting work. What you think about yourself, could you work as a simultaneous interpreter?

**Variant 23****Answer the following questions:**

- 1) Of what phases the scheme of the speech event consists of?
- 2) What model is called Content-Text Model? Describe it.
- 3) How does the translator do his work during the analysis stage?

**Variant 24****Answer the following questions:**

- 1) What are the disadvantages of the transformational model?
- 2) How does the translator work the during synthesis stage?
- 3) Is it possible to reach the lexical and grammatical equivalence at the same time? Explain why.

**Variant 25****Answer the following questions:**

- 1) What is transformation? Describe in simple way the process of transformation.
- 2) What does the quality of translation depend on? Substantiate your point of view.
- 3) What is the name of the function that helps to make communicative contact? Give examples.



## PART IV. SOCIAL COMMUNICATIONS

### I. METHODOLOGICAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR SEMINAR (PRACTICAL) CLASSES

#### UNIT 1. Social Interaction

##### **Task 1. Read the text and translate it.**

Tourism is one of the world's fastest-growing industries and a major foreign exchange and employment generation for many countries. It is one of the most remarkable economic and social phenomena. The world «tour» is derived from the Latin word *tornus*, meaning «a tool for making a circle».

Tourism may be defined as the movement of the people from their normal place of residence to another place (with the intention to return) for a minimum period of twenty-four hours to a maximum of six months for the sole purpose of leisure and pleasure. Essentially, with the development of jet travel, communication, new technology, tourism, and travel became the world's largest and fastest-growing industry. Travel and tourism, recently have emerged as a dominant economic force on the global scene accounting for more than 12% of total world trade and growing at the rate of 8 percent annuals.

Tourism can be classified into six distinct categories according to the purpose of travel. These are following as:

1) **Recreational:** Recreational or leisure tourism takes a person away from the humdrum of everyday life. In this case, people spend their leisure time at the hills, sea beaches, etc.

2) **Cultural:** Cultural tourism satisfies cultural and intellectual curiosity and involves visits to ancient monuments, places of historical or religious importance, etc.

3) **Sports/Adventure:** Trips have taken by people with a view to playing golf, skiing and hiking, fall within this category.

4) **Health:** Under this category, people travel for medical, treatment or visit places where there are curative possibilities, for example, hot springs, spa yoga, etc.

5) **Convention Tourism:** It is becoming an increasingly important component of travel. People travel within a country or overseas to attend conventions relating to their business, profession or interest.

6) **Incentive Tourism:** Holiday trips are offered as incentives by major companies to dealers and salesmen who achieve high targets in sales. This is a new and expanding phenomenon in tourism, These are in lieu of cash incentives or gifts, Today incentive tourism is a 3 billion dollar business in the USA alone.

Tourism as a socio-economic phenomenon comprises the activities and experiences of tourists and visitors away from their home environment and serviced by the travel and tourism industry and host destination. The sum total of this activity experience and services can be seen as a tourism product.

The tourism system can be described in terms of supply and demand. Tourism planning should strive for a balance between demands and supply. This requires an

understanding not only of market characteristics and trends but also of the planning process to meet the market needs.

Often tourist from core generating markets are identified as the demand side; the supply side includes all facilities, programmes, attraction, and land uses designed and managed for the visitors. These supply-side factors may be under the control of private enterprise, non-profit organizations, and government. New and innovative forms of partnerships are also evolving to ensure the sustainable development and management of tourism related resources.

The supply and demand side can be seen to be linked by flows of resources such as capital, labor, goods and tourist expenditures into the destination, and flows of marketing, promotion, tourist artifacts and experiences from the destination back into the tourist generating region.

In addition, some tourist expenditures may leak back into the visitors generating areas through repatriation of profits of foreign tourism investors and payment for improved goods and services provided to tourists at the destination. Transportation provides an important linkage both to and from the destination.

The tourism system is both dynamic and complex due to many factors linked to it and because of the existence of many sectors contributing to its success. These factors and sectors are linked to the provision of the tourist experience and generation of tourism revenue and markets.

The dynamic nature of tourism system makes it imperative to scan the external and internal environment of the destinations on a regular basis so as to makes changes when necessary to ensure a healthy and viable tourism industry.

Thus, it is now an accepted fact that tourism development can no longer work in isolation of the environment and the local communities, nor can it ignore the social and cultural consequences of tourism.

**Task 2. Write the translation of the following words and make sentences with them. In what collocations can they be used?**

*Tourism, country, procedure, subset, government, region, influence, decision, facilitate, healthcare, access, assurance, income, benchmarking, mobility.*

**Task 3. Write the interpretation of the given words.**

*impact (n)    environment (n)    heritage (n)    integrity (n)    recycling(n)*

**Task 4. Make phrases and translate them.**

1) protected	a) tourism
2) human	b) habitat
3) primary	c) scale
4) local	d) areas
5) natural	e) part
6) integral	f) respect
7) greenwashing	g) rights

8) jungle	h) communities
9) foster	i) practice
10) small	j) attraction

**Task 5. Translate the given phrases and make sentences with them.**

*Small scale, personal growth, low impact, cultural heritage, directly benefit, conventional tourism, foster respect, local communities, human rights, energy efficiency.*

**Task 6. Choose the correct item.**

1) There is also time \_\_\_\_\_ its fascinating bazaars at your own pace before we fly to Pokhara.

- a) to look after;                      c) to wander at;  
b) to wander in;                      d) to spend.

2) Eurobus has well-trained and experienced guides available \_\_\_\_\_ any questions you may have.

- a) to present;                      c) to answer;  
b) to give;                      d) to solve.

3) You will be travelling with people from all parts of the world, it is a great opportunity ...

- a) to lose friends;                      c) making new friends;  
b) to make new friends;                      d) gaining new friends.

4) A trip offered to a group of employees as a reward for good work is:

- a) incentive tour;                      c) gratuity;  
b) panoramic tour;                      d) commission.

5) In addition to these budget hotels, Sydney has \_\_\_\_\_ Backpacker's lodges.

- a) dozen of;                      c) pairs of;  
b) dozens of;                      d) group of.

**Task 7. Identify which parts of speech the given words belong to and translate them.**

*Outside, massive, waterfall, usually, a, may, extend, these, likely, they, an, vertically, Asia, by, religious, for, the, facility, enter, their, law, include, on, health, with, Asian.*

Noun	
------	--

Pronoun	
Verb	
Adverb	
Adjective	
Preposition	
Article	

**Task 8. Translate these phrases and make sentences with them.**

- |                             |                          |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1) massive construction;    | 6) religious beliefs;    |
| 2) indoor pool;             | 7) family oriented;      |
| 3) centuries-old tradition; | 8) modesty laws;         |
| 4) enclosed waterslide;     | 9) fast-food facilities; |
| 5) leisure centre;          | 10) outdoor pool.        |

**Task 9. Make the test.**

1) Which is produced by insects?

- a) fruit
- b) honey
- c) poultry

2) If something is «edible», it can be

- a) very delicious
- b) easily cooked
- c) safely eaten

3) Before the development of agriculture, what did people hunt?

- a) fruits and seeds
- b) dairy foods
- c) animals and birds

4) Before the development of agriculture, what did people gather?

- a) fruits and seeds
- b) dairy foods
- c) animals and birds

5) Agriculture developed when people began cultivating

- a) edible plants
- b) wild animals
- c) meat and eggs

6) Which word could be defined as «an edible seed that grows in a long seed pod»?

- a) nut
- b) bean
- c) grain

7) What are seeds from grasses such as wheat, rice and millet called?

- a) food seeds
- b) grains
- c) beans

8) What do poultry farmers usually raise?

- a) eggs
- b) chickens
- c) feathers

9) Which are raised for their milk?

- a) dairy cows
- b) dairy foods
- c) beef cattle

10) Which type of food does not always have a hard outer shell?

- a) nuts
- b) seafood
- c) shellfish

## UNIT 2. Cultural influences

### Task 1. Read the text and translate it.

We've become an increasingly global world. Travel has never been easier – at least before the pandemic hit. Every year, billions of people travel internationally to the point where popular tourist destinations have started to suffer from the effects of overtourism.

The existence of some of the world's most beautiful locations is now under threat and it's getting out of control. Travel is a gift but it needs reform. Perhaps, as a result of the pandemic, the industry will be forced to cut back and it will become more sustainable to manage.

One way this can work is if travel becomes more responsible. The answer is **ecotourism**. So, what is ecotourism and why is it important? What are the benefits of ecotourism and how does it work?

To put it simply, the International Ecotourism Society defines ecotourism as responsible travel to natural areas that conserves the environment, sustains the well-being of the local people, and involves interpretation and education.

Ecotourism is all about active tourism. It's a small-scale and low impact form of travel that seeks out ways to preserve the natural world by ensuring that biodiversity, ecosystems and local communities remain protected and unspoiled. It's a rewarding and educational experience which improves our cultural awareness and understanding of nature.

Ecotourism destinations tend to be fragile, untouched and fairly preserved. Think islands, densely biodiverse reserves and significant cultural landmarks. This form of travel was first introduced in the 1970s but it only started to take off towards the end of the 1980s. Thanks to the growing trend in people prioritising greener choices, ecotourism is getting more and more popular every year.

Ecotourism helps preserve and foster respect for some of the most beautiful environments on earth. It encourages travellers to help protect the environment and contribute to local communities on a much deeper level than the tourists just passing through.

This hands-on approach plays a vital part in educating travellers about some of the hardships these environments face, which can only be a good thing. The more knowledge we have about the world, the better we can protect it – both from ourselves and climate change.

Overtourism is a huge problem for a number of reasons. It can put a strain on a destination's resources and inhabitants, and it can prevent them from safeguarding their most fragile assets effectively.

Popular places like Machu Picchu in Peru were beginning to limit the number of tourists for fear of long term and irreversible damage to these precious sites.

Ecotourism is an antidote to unsustainable tourism.

It's also an ally of conservation.

No one wants to visit a beach that's covered in plastic. Ecotourism-focused attractions put the welfare of the environment first to ensure that they can provide an excellent service long term.

The growing trend in ecotourism has made it easier than ever to find bucket list-worthy eco-adventures.

You can now do ecotourism activities that focus on working with and protecting the environment. These can involve attractions and locally-run small group tours that take their environmental and social impact into consideration.

Ecotourism can also be about where you stay on your travels. Eco-resorts and ecolodges are now popular places to stay among travellers.

## **Task 2. Ask questions for the whole sentence.**

- 1) Ecotourism in Ukraine is fast becoming a big lure.
- 2) Ecotourism helps to set up systems which protect the natural wildlife.
- 3) Ukraine ecotourism is a popular travel option and is well worth looking into.

4) When winter blankets some wilderness areas with snow, the ecotourism doesn't necessarily stop.

5) Hiking options are changing to guided overland-skiing.

6) The whiteness of the snow presents the wonders of the wilderness.

7) Ecotourism appeals to ecologically and socially conscious individuals.

8) Ecotourism must above all sensitize people to the beauty and the fragility of nature.

9) Responsible ecotourism includes programs that minimize the negative aspects of conventional tourism on the environment.

10) Ecotourism focuses on volunteering, personal growth and learning new ways to live on the planet.

**Task 3. Open the brackets and put the verb in Present Simple or Present Continuous.**

1) Ukrainian ecotourism companies often \_\_\_\_\_ (offer) guided hiking tours.

2) Nowadays guided mountain hiking tours \_\_\_\_\_ (become) popular with both Ukrainians and tourists from other countries of the world.

3) Wait, I \_\_\_\_\_ (book) my tour to the Carpathians over the telephone.

4) Ukraine \_\_\_\_\_ (cooperate) with developed countries to strengthen or establish environmentally-sound technology centers.

5) Are you busy? – Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ (look) through the list of ecotour companies that offer eco adventure travel in Ukraine.

6) Your weekly Ukraine Discovery \_\_\_\_\_ (start) in the beautiful city of Lviv, said to be the new Prague.

7) Next month I \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) Chernobyl, the site of the world's worst environmental disaster in history.

8) I \_\_\_\_\_ (live) in a very beautiful region of Ukraine.

9) Ecotourism \_\_\_\_\_ (appeal) to ecologically and socially conscious individuals.

10) We have evidence that these companies \_\_\_\_\_ (carry out) greenwashing practices in the name of ecotourism.

**Task 4. Fill in the blanks and translate the sentences.**

1) I \_\_\_\_\_ in Ecotourism Web Conference which took place a month before.

2) I \_\_\_\_\_ summary document when my daughter phoned me.

3) At 5 p.m. yesterday Mary \_\_\_\_\_ a draft of the Quebec Declaration.

4) The Summit Organizers \_\_\_\_\_ a delegation of indigenous people participants during the event.

5) This time last year I \_\_\_\_\_ the Carpathians.

6) Last year he \_\_\_\_\_ in the project on how to protect ecosystems, preserve local cultures, and spur economic development.

7) Three years ago I \_\_\_\_\_ the expedition and \_\_\_\_\_ jungle trekking and mountaineering.

8) While his son \_\_\_\_\_ homework, he \_\_\_\_\_ a book about medicinal plants

9) What \_\_\_\_\_ at 6 last night?

10) In the evenings he \_\_\_\_\_ small port towns, or just relaxed in a high-quality hotel.

**Task 5. Make questions to the words in italics.**

1) We have *wonderful environment* today.

2) He has got a beautiful house in a *splendid landscape*.

3) She has a chance to visit pristine, fragile, protected *areas* of Costa Rica.

4) Ecotourism, responsible tourism, jungle tourism and sustainable development have become *prevalent concepts* since the late 1980s.

5) *Ecotourism* must above all sensitize people to the beauty and the fragility of nature.

6) Local indigenous people also have *strong resentment* towards the change, the tourism has had on their lives.

7) Many environmentalists have argued for a *global standard* of accreditation.

8) I have got *little information* about ecotourism.

9) Local peoples have a vested interest in the well being of their community, and are therefore more *accountable* to environmental protection than multinational corporations.

10) The problems associated with defining ecotourism have led to *confusion* among tourists and academics alike.

**Task 6. Choose the correct item.**

1) No trip to Bangkok is complete without a visit to at least one of the \_\_\_\_\_ temples.

a) Orthodox;

c) Muslim;

b) Buddhist;

d) Catholic.

2) Thailand is situated between «secret» countries of:

a) Burma, Laos and Cambodia;

c) Laos, Cambodia and China;

b) Japan, Burma and The Philippines;

d) Russia, Burma and Laos.

3) Please, show the card at check-in \_\_\_\_\_ your points.

a) to demand;

c) to receive;

b) receive;

d) to lose.

4) The expression «to creep out» means:

a) to jump slowly;

c) to move slowly;

b) to move fast;

d) to run slowly.

5) Belize's barrier reef has always been an essential source of food and income for local \_\_\_\_\_ .

- a) carpenters;                      c) plumbers;  
b) businessmen;                    d) fishermen.

**Task 7. Make phrases and translate them. Give examples in what situations they can be used.**

1) therapeutic	a) pool
2) fitness	b) approach
3) lap	c) revolution
4) wave	d) centre
5) original	e) park
6) aquatic	f) facility
7) unique	g) area
8) traditional	h) value
9) water	i) goal
10) community	j) swimmer

**Task 8. Identify which parts of speech the given words belong to and translate them.**

*Therapeutic, the, by, flexible, strength, soon, monotonous, pool, ultimately, value, with, routine, his, new, any, alone, development, an, money, this, profitable, improve.*

Noun	
Pronoun	
Verb	
Adverb	
Adjective	
Preposition	
Article	

**Task 9. Make the test.**

1) If you've never been to this city, you should take a look at our sight-seeing

- a) menu  
b) brochures  
c) front desk

2) Sorry, we don't have a \_\_\_\_\_ service. You'll have to park your car yourself.

- a) room  
b) laundry  
c) valet

3) The room has a pull-\_\_\_\_\_ couch, so it will sleep an extra person.

- a) off
- b) over
- c) out

4) I'm sorry, but we don't have any vacancies. We are fully-\_\_\_\_\_ tonight.

- a) vacant
- b) booked
- c) closed

5) After your long conference you can relax in the

- a) kitchenette
- b) parking lot
- c) hot tub

6) I'll call housekeeping and ask them to bring you some fresh

- a) ice
- b) milk
- c) linen

7. If you need to do your workout we have a \_\_\_\_\_ on the third floor.

- a) gym
- b) restaurant
- c) library

8) You might like to voice your complaint about the rate to the

- a) housekeeper
- b) valet driver
- c) hotel manager

9) Please put your used \_\_\_\_\_ in the basket and leave unused ones hanging on the rack.

- a) dishes
- b) towels
- c) tissues

10) If you need a midnight snack there's a \_\_\_\_\_ full of potato chips on your floor.

- a) bellboy
- b) kitchenette
- c) vending machine

## UNIT 3. Gender communication differences

### Task 1. Read the text and translate it.

Dental tourism, as a phenomenon, has been formed in a separate direction in the market of medical services long ago. Main clients are patients from Western countries who appreciate beautiful teeth, but do not perform dental procedures at home, because of their high cost. Such people are looking for places where dental treatment is relatively inexpensive, and the quality of the services provided is at a high enough level. One such country is Ukraine, which has a huge number of dental clinics and centers that provide dental services at a much lower cost than European countries.

As a result, dental tourism in Ukraine is available to a larger number of patients, because the price of a dental tour to Ukraine is much lower than the cost of treatment at home. In addition to receiving a really high-quality treatment, tour allows the dental tourist to save money and make an exciting trip to a new country – Ukraine.

Dental tours in Ukraine have a number of positive moments:

1) The possibility of combining dental treatment with vacation in one of the most beautiful countries of Eastern Europe. In addition to money saving, a dental tourist has the opportunity to get to know Ukraine - a country rich in historical monuments, present in almost all major cities;

2) It is easy to get to Ukraine. The tourist has a wide choice of transport routes, depending on his capabilities and needs. You can use air transport, rail, get on the bus or own car;

3) You do not need a visa to enter the country. Residents of post-Soviet countries, the European Union, the countries of the American continent and many other countries can visit Ukraine without opening an entry visa. It is simply not required. For citizens of Belarus, visiting the country is possible with an internal passport only;

4) Absence of a language barrier. Tourists from former Soviet republics, will not feel any discomfort, in almost all clinics communication takes place in Russian. For European and American dental tourists many respectable centers recruit staff with knowledge of English, so there will be no difficulties with communication.

### *What is the cost of dental services in Ukraine?*

The cost of services provided in Ukraine is several times lower than similar procedures in other countries. In order to confirm this statement, we will quote examples of prices for dental services in the US and Ukraine.

For example, a simple plastic prosthesis in the United States, will cost the patient about 26000 UAH, While in Ukraine its price, roughly will be about 4150 UAH.

However, low cost does not mean low quality of services offered. Simply in Ukraine there is a low cost of living, and an increase in the price of dental services

will turn over most of the local population. Therefore, in this situation, a dental tourist has the opportunity to acquire healthy teeth for little money.

***What services are most popular for dental tourists?***

Dental tourists are interested in the following types of services:

*Prosthetic dentistry.* The service is considered the most popular. About 40% of all patients from other countries choose this kind of service.

*Implantation.* Installation of new dental implants attracts 25% of dental tourists;

*Healing procedures,* for example caries treatment, attract another 20% of patients;

*Orthodontics.* In the last few years, 10% of patients have got alignment of teeth. But because of high quality and low cost, the installation of braces in Ukraine is gaining popularity, and the number of dental tourists for this service will increase.

**Task 2. Fill in the blanks and translate the sentences.**

- 1) When I came in he \_\_\_\_\_ about dental tourism as a revenueboosting mechanism for the countries like India, Indonesia.
- 2) Last year he \_\_\_\_\_ Poland as a dental tourist .
- 3) At 8 p.m. yesterday he \_\_\_\_\_ his teeth.
- 4) I \_\_\_\_\_ dental tourism a lot when I was younger.
- 5) What \_\_\_\_\_ at 5 last night?
- 6) I \_\_\_\_\_ to dentist office when Peter rang me up.
- 7) This time last year Kate \_\_\_\_\_ another country.
- 8) Last year he \_\_\_\_\_ foreign dentistry school.
- 9) Some years ago medical tourism \_\_\_\_\_ not as popular as it is today.
- 10) I \_\_\_\_\_ him yesterday. He \_\_\_\_\_ a trip to Ukraine.

**Task 3. Open the brackets and put the verb in Present Simple or Present Continuous.**

- 1) Crisis \_\_\_\_\_ (to propagate) all over the world. The economy system is not stable.
- 2) Today the dental tourism and the crisis \_\_\_\_\_ (to become) closer one to another.
- 3) These two elements of people's world \_\_\_\_\_ (to act) together, even if seem to be total enemies.
- 4) The first one \_\_\_\_\_ (to save) money while the second \_\_\_\_\_ (to make) them to be lost.
- 5) We can notice that the dental tourism (to have) \_\_\_\_\_ two big advantages.

6) The first one \_\_\_\_ (to be) the much smaller prices in the developing countries, even if the quality \_\_\_\_ (to be) usually the same.

7) The second one is the combination between the dental treatment and a nice and relaxing vacation.

8) Considering these two we realize why the dental tourism \_\_\_\_ (to increase) its popularity while the crisis \_\_\_\_ (to develop).

9) Everyone \_\_\_\_ (to have) the chance to kill two birds with one stone.

#### **Task 4. Make questions for the whole sentence.**

1) Forms of dental anesthesia are similar to general medical anesthesia.

2) The most commonly used local anesthetic is lidocaine.

3) Dental tourism involves individuals seeking dental care outside of their local healthcare systems.

4) Dental tourists may travel for a variety of reasons.

5) Wide variations in the economics of countries with shared borders have been the historical mainstay of the sector.

6) For countries within the European Union, dental qualifications are required to reach a minimum approved by each country's government.

7) We have to take care of our health, especially of our teeth health.

8) Today the dental tourism and the crisis become closer one to another.

9) Dental tourism during crisis saves more money and allows you to travel abroad and to have a great time.

10) Costs in dental tourism countries are 70% less than in the UK and US.

#### **Task 5. Ask questions to the words in italics.**

1) Dental tourism *involves* individuals seeking dental care.

2) The UK and the Republic of Ireland are two of the *largest sources* of dental tourists.

3) Other *factors* can influence a decision to travel, including differences between the funding of public healthcare or general access to healthcare.

4) For countries within the European Union, *dental qualifications* are required to reach a minimum approved by each country's government.

5) The UK and the Republic of Ireland were *criticised for* a lack of pricing transparency.

6) Thus price lists are no *guarantee* of final costs.

7) *Dental care* is the taking care of teeth.

8) Regular tooth cleaning by a dental professional is *recommended* to remove tartar (mineralized plaque).

9) Professional cleaning *includes* tooth scaling and tooth polishing.



9) Did they pay you \_\_\_\_\_ money for working there?

10) There aren't \_\_\_\_\_ towns in this part of England.

**Task 9. Make the test.**

1) What is the famous papaya salad from Thailand's north-eastern region called?

- a) som tam
- b) papaya yum-yum
- c) chilli fruit salad

2) Which is often added to Thai dishes to make them taste saltier?

- a) tomato sauce
- b) chilli sauce
- c) fish sauce

3) What is Thailand's popular hot and sour shrimp soup called?

- a) khao soi
- b) tom kha gai
- c) tom yum kung

4) Which kind of rice is usually eaten with the fingers?

- a) fried rice
- b) sticky rice
- c) jasmine rice

5) Which ingredient gives Thai dishes like Massaman curry their smooth, creamy texture?

- a) chilli powder
- b) full-cream milk
- c) coconut milk

6) Khao pat (Thai fried rice) and pad thai (stir-fried noodles) are examples of Thailand's famous \_\_\_\_\_ food.

- a) fast
- b) street
- c) take-away

7) The four condiments found in Thai food stalls are dried chilli, fish sauce, vinegar (or fresh lime) and

- a) sugar
- b) peanut oil
- c) black pepper

8) Which tropical fruit has very sharp spikes on the outside and delicious creamy flesh on the inside?

- a) custard apple
- b) pineapple
- c) durian

9) Which Thai street dessert is cooked on a hot plate and topped with sweetened condensed milk?

- a) Thai pancakes
- b) sweet roti
- c) milk crepes

10) Many Thai restaurants have yellow, red and \_\_\_\_\_ Thai curries listed on their menu.

- a) green
- b) brown
- c) blue

## UNIT 4. Language interference

### Task 1. Read the text and translate it.

There's an emerging industry thought to be only science fiction not too long ago that's close to becoming a reality: space tourism.

And a handful of companies – including one publicly traded name – are competing neck and neck to be leaders in the emerging market.

But what space tourism entails, and how much it costs per person, varies greatly depending on a company's technological capabilities. For example, both Virgin Galactic and SpaceX expect to fly private paying passengers to space next year. But, while passengers flying with both companies would go to space by the Federal Aviation Administration's definition, a Virgin Galactic passenger spends about 0.04% as much time in space as on a SpaceX trip, while a ride with Elon Musk's company is expected to cost roughly 200 times as much.

UBS in a report last year estimated that space tourism, with both suborbital and orbital together, has a potential market value of \$3 billion by 2030. More recently, space industry consultancy Northern Sky Research broke out its expectations for suborbital versus orbital tourism. By 2028, NSR expects suborbital will be a \$2.8 billion market, with \$10.4 billion in total revenue over the next decade, while orbital will be a \$610 million market, with \$3.6 billion in total revenue over the next decade.

There are two companies competing in the realm of suborbital tourism: Virgin Galactic, which debuted on the public market last year and trades under the ticker «SPCE», and Blue Origin, the private space company funded almost entirely by Amazon founder Jeff Bezos.

Both of the companies' systems are rocket-powered and capable of carrying up to six passengers on a flight, but that is where the similarities end.

Virgin Galactic's spacecraft SpaceShipTwo, which has two pilots in addition to the passengers, is docked underneath a jet-powered carrier aircraft known as WhiteKnightTwo. With the spacecraft attached, the carrier aircraft takes off from a runway and climbs to an altitude of more than 40,000 feet. Then the spacecraft is dropped, free-falling briefly before firing its rocket motor and ascending to an altitude of about 295,000 feet, or roughly 90 kilometers. The spacecraft essentially does a slow back flip at the edge of space, with passengers spending a few minutes floating in microgravity, before it re-enters and then glides back to land on its runway in New Mexico. The company reuses the spacecraft, replacing the hybrid rocket engine and reconnecting it to the carrier aircraft.

Blue Origin's more traditional rocket New Shepard launches with a domed capsule on top of the about 60 foot tall booster. It ascends straight up, with the capsule separating near the top of the flight and reaching an altitude of more than 330,000 feet, or about 100 kilometers. There the capsule floats for a few minutes in microgravity before returning back to Earth, slowing down using a system of parachutes to land in the West Texas desert floor.

But unlike conventional rockets, New Shepard's booster also comes back to land separately – with the company reusing the boosters for future launches.

Virgin Galactic has sold about tickets to about 600 passengers at a price between \$200,000 and \$250,000 each, although the company expects it could increase its prices substantially for the first commercial flights. Blue Origin has said its ticket pricing is yet to be determined, but Bezos expects his company will price flights on New Shepard comparable to competitors.

To date Virgin Galactic has flown five people to space on two test flights. All five are company employees, with four pilots controlling the spacecraft and chief astronaut trainer Beth Moses riding along as a test passenger on the second flight. The company expects to conduct two more test spaceflights before it flies founder Richard Branson, which is planned for the first quarter of 2021 and will effectively mark the beginning of Virgin Galactic's commercial service. Blue Origin, on the other hand, has yet to fly passengers on New Shepard despite completing 12 missions in the past few years. The company's CEO Bob Smith earlier this year said New Shepard will need to fly three or four more test flights before Blue Origin puts people on board.

Additionally, Virgin Galactic has said that passengers will spend three days training before a flight, while Blue Origin expects its passengers will train for just one day.

Unlike suborbital, which reaches an altitude of about 100 kilometers (or 330,000 feet) and gives passengers a few minutes in space, orbital missions reach an altitude of over 400 kilometers (or 1.3 million feet) and spend days or even more than a week in space. To date, orbital space tourism has largely been limited to a few flights to the International Space Station that used Russian Soyuz spacecraft.

The SpaceX launch system is similar to Blue Origin's, but with a more powerful rocket and a larger capsule. Its Crew Dragon spacecraft is built to hold as

many as seven passengers and sits on top of the company's 230 foot tall Falcon 9 rocket booster. Launching from NASA's Kennedy Space Center in Florida, it takes the spacecraft several hours to reach either the ISS or its intended orbit. NASA astronauts on the recent Demo-2 mission described riding in SpaceX's capsule as «a little bit smoother» than the Space Shuttles of the past, which were «a little bit rougher, at least at the beginning».

**Task 2. Write the interpretation of the given words.**

*tourism candidate scientist phenomenon opposition experiment flight passenger vehicle space visit spaceflight spacecraft millionaire descent*

**Task 3. Translate the given phrases and make sentences with them.**

*Space tourism, private venture, space agency, senior figures, provide transport, put on hold, sign contract, join the ranks, third party, conduct experiments*

**Task 4. Make phrases and translate them.**

1) available	a) agency
2) senior	b) costs
3) offset	c) transport
4) conduct	d) tourism
5) third	e) opposition
6) space	f) figure
7) sign	g) hold
8) space	h) research
9) put on	i) contract
10) strong	j) party

**Task 5. Write the interpretation of the given words.**

*venture (n) opportunity (n) participant (n) experiment (n) descent (n)*

**Task 6. Make questions to the words in italics.**

- 1) I can't fly into *space*, because I haven't got any money.
- 2) The *concept* of solar sailing is particularly attractive for some missions.
- 3) With the Augustine committee's work nearly done, some of its *members* are starting to speak individually about their work.
- 4) There is no *chance* for people to reach Mars.
- 5) The recent IAU General Assembly has come and gone *without any changes* in the definition of «planet» or Pluto's classification.
- 6) Dennis Tito became the *first* «fee-paying» *space tourist*.
- 7) Unlike other major space faring nations, the UK doesn't support any sort of human *spaceflight program*.
- 8) Jeff Foust reports on a recent conference where some of the *obstacles* to future development of space tourism were discussed.

9) According to some news reports last week, the GPS system is *on the verge of failure* because of delays in launching new satellites.

10) As some *suborbital companies* struggle to raise the funding needed to develop their vehicles, NASA is taking an increasing interest in these vehicles' capabilities to do science.

**Task 7. Make questions for the whole sentence.**

1) A whole new aspect of space industry is under development.

2) This weekend's launch of a North Korean rocket was supposedly intended to put a satellite into orbit.

3) Point-to-point suborbital spaceflight has attracted the interest of some commercial space enthusiasts.

4) Some of the early history of American reconnaissance satellite programs is still classified, even though those systems were long ago declared obsolete.

5) The space tourists usually sign contracts with third parties to conduct certain research while in orbit.

6) Anousheh Ansari, an Iranian American, became the fourth space tourist.

7) Some see Mars as the ultimate goal of any new space exploration policy.

8) The people in the space field are happy to talk about scientific and technical issues.

9) A common refrain among space advocates is that NASA is given too much to do and too little funding to accomplish it.

10) Few books have been published about the solar system, making it difficult for new ones to stand out.

**Task 8. Open the brackets and put the verb in Present Simple or Present Continuous.**

1) Hubble Space Telescope\_\_\_\_\_ (be) now back on its journey of exploration.

2) Megan McArthur\_\_\_\_\_( release) the nearly 13-ton telescope tomorrow morning.

3) Right now Atlantis astronauts\_\_\_\_\_(make) a historic repair to Hubble's failed advanced camera.

4) This versatile instrument also\_\_\_\_\_(take) images in ultraviolet and visible light.

5) From time to time the astronauts\_\_\_\_\_(replace) aging gyroscopes, batteries, and insulation, and a science data computer.

6) The rejuvenated Hubble telescope\_\_\_\_\_(be) now ready to take on space again.

7) Atlantis\_\_\_\_\_(cruise) at more than 17,000 miles an hour as it orbits Earth.

8) So, on this «travel day», the astronauts\_\_\_\_\_(inspect) the shuttle's thermal shield tiles.

9) Each time astronauts\_\_\_\_\_(visit) the Hubble telescope, equipment and tools are transported on special pallets called carriers.

10) While astronauts \_\_\_\_\_(check) out the shuttle and their SM4 tools, Hubble \_\_\_\_\_(make) its last science observations.

**Task 9. Make the test.**

1) A thin Mexican flatbread made of cornflour or wheat flour is called

- a) a taco
- b) a tamale
- c) a tortilla

2) Which civilization did not develop in the place we now call Mexico?

- a) Inca
- b) Aztec
- c) Maya

3) Salsa is a hot, spicy \_\_\_\_\_ made from tomatoes, onions, chilli peppers, etc.

- a) soup
- b) sauce
- c) sandwich

4) The food of which European country has influenced Mexican cuisine the most?

- a) France
- b) Italy
- c) Spain

5) The Mayan snack food in which a meat or vegetable filling is wrapped in a corn husk and steamed is

- a) a nacho
- b) a tamale
- c) an enchilada

6) What do we call toasted tortillas covered in various taco-style toppings?

- a) toasties
- b) tostadas
- c) tortoises

7) What's the main ingredient of a popular Mexican dip called guacamole?

- a) mashed avocado
- b) green pepper
- c) sweet potato

8) What do we call tortilla wraps filled with ingredients like meat, beans, cheese, lettuce, salsa, etc?

- a) sopapillas
- b) burritos
- c) tequilas

9) Strips of deep-fried dough sprinkled with sugar and cinnamon are called

- a) gorditas
- b) flautas
- c) churros

10) The style of food in which Mexican dishes are tailored to the US market is called

- a) A-Mex
- b) Tex-Mex
- c) Amexican

## **UNIT 5. Conflict resolution**

### **Task 1. Read the text and translate it.**

«Birth tourism» is the practice of travelling to countries that practice birthright citizenship to have children, thereby ensuring the child citizenship in the destination country. The Fourteenth Amendment to the United States Constitution guarantees citizenship to those born in the U.S. It has been reported that some women, wishing their children to be born in the United States, engage in «birth tourism» so that their children become U.S. citizens. This practice is believed to be popular among women in Korea, Hong Kong and Taiwan.

According to Edward Chang, a scholar of Asian American Studies at the University of California, Riverside, the practice is popular among the elite of South Korea, since sons of these women can avoid compulsory military service. Temporary homes for these mothers are often located in residential neighborhoods, which neighbors allege decrease the quality of life in the neighborhood, primarily due to increases in traffic and other business-like effects.

Being US citizens, these children do not have to meet the stricter international student rules to enter U.S. universities and colleges. In addition, when they turn 21, they become eligible to petition for a grant of permanent residency for their parents through family reunification. Some prospective mothers misrepresent their intentions of coming to the United States, a violation of U.S. immigration law.

However, it is not illegal for a woman to come to the U.S. to give birth. Canada's citizenship law has, since 1947, generally conferred Canadian citizenship at birth to anyone born in Canada, regardless of the citizenship or immigration status of the parents.

The only exception is for children born in Canada to representatives of foreign governments or international organizations. In the mid-1990s, the Canadian government considered a proposal to limit jus soli citizenship in cases where neither parent was a citizen or permanent resident of Canada, but the idea was eventually dropped and never became part of Canadian law. Sometimes emigrants move to countries with big cultural differences and will always feel as guests in their destinations, and preserve their original culture, traditions and language, sometimes transmitting them to their children.

The department contends that birth tourism has created an industry «rife with criminal activity, including international criminal schemes».

Under the new rule, consular officials will have the authority to deny a visitor visa if they have reason to believe the applicant intends to travel to the U.S. for the «primary purpose» of giving birth.

Moreover, if a consular officer has reason to believe a visa applicant will give birth during her stay in the U.S., the rule states that the officer should conclude that the main reason for the trip is to secure U.S. citizenship for the child.

The State Department did not specifically say how many babies are born in the U.S. due to birth tourism, saying that it's a challenge to derive a precise number. But the department estimates that «thousands of children» are born in the U.S. each year to people who are either visiting or conducting business on nonimmigrant visas.

In 2018, a total of about 3.8 million births were registered in the U.S., according to the National Center for Health Statistics.

The 14th Amendment holds that «All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States».

Most legal scholars take that as an explicit protection of birthright citizenship, or jus soli — «right of the soil» — which has long meant that children born in the U.S. have a claim to citizenship, even if their parents lack legal documentation to be in the country.

**Task 2. Open the brackets and put the verb in Present Perfect, Past Perfect, Present Perfect Continuous, Past Perfect Continuous.**

- 1) We (understand) everything we (hear) this morning.
- 2) I just (put) the washing out when it started to rain.
- 3) The researcher (explore) the territory since last December.
- 4) The volunteers (collect) hundreds of pounds.
- 5) The volunteers (collect) money all morning.
- 6) They (lose) their way because the night was pitch-dark. If...
- 7) He (be) in the town; therefore he wasn't present at our meeting. If...
- 8) If he (live) in St. Petersburg, he would go to the Hermitage every week.
- 9) If they were on a hijacked plane, they (stay) calm and probably (survive).
- 10) If you'd (remember) to buy some petrol, we'd (be) home by now.

**Task 3. Insert the missing modal verbs: *can, could, may, must, might*.**

- 1) Tourism also not only offers business opportunities to local residents, but it \_\_\_\_\_ serve as a vehicle for marketing a place to potential residents and firms, as today's tourist \_\_\_\_\_ return later to retire or start a business locally.
- 2) The bill \_\_\_\_\_ not be so much. There \_\_\_\_\_ be a mistake.
- 3) I \_\_\_\_\_ be going to Ireland in July.
- 4) I \_\_\_\_\_ have got tickets, but there were only very expensive ones left.
- 5) I \_\_\_\_\_ go downtown tomorrow; it depends on the weather.

**Task 4. Open the brackets, form the required degree of comparison of adjectives.**

- 1) While most parents do have the (good) intentions of their child and do want to give him or her best, this is really taking things into unethical waters.
- 2) (Many) of the persons who come to America are people who have a lot of money.
- 3) Birth Tourism does address the problem of illegal immigration at a (large) level.
- 4) In fact (many) persons are loathe to stay back once the child is born and the registration papers are in order.
- 5) The requires policy changes in the countries and this needs (much) understanding of the conditions under which people want to go to another country to give birth.

**Task 5. Insert the appropriate preposition where it is necessary and translate the sentences.**

*Of, out, before, after, between, with, for, from, to, by, at.*

- 1) Leisure or free time, is a period \_\_\_\_\_ time spent \_\_\_\_\_ work and essential domestic activity.
- 2) It is also the period \_\_\_\_\_ recreational and discretionary time \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ compulsory activities.
- 3) The distinction \_\_\_\_\_ leisure and compulsory activities is loosely applied.
- 4) Leisure studies is the academic discipline concerned \_\_\_\_\_ the study and analysis \_\_\_\_\_ leisure.
- 5) People sometimes do work-oriented tasks \_\_\_\_\_ pleasure as well as \_\_\_\_\_ longterm utility.
- 6) Most people enjoy socializing \_\_\_\_\_ friends \_\_\_\_\_ dinner or a drink \_\_\_\_\_ a hard day at work.
- 7) \_\_\_\_\_ many young people, having a regular night \_\_\_\_\_ a week is a normal part \_\_\_\_\_ their free time.
- 8) Time \_\_\_\_\_ leisure varies \_\_\_\_\_ one society \_\_\_\_\_ the next.
- 9) One \_\_\_\_\_ the ways that wealthy people can choose to spend their money is \_\_\_\_\_ having additional leisure time.

10) Workaholics are those who work compulsively \_\_\_\_\_ the expense \_\_\_\_\_ other activities.

**Task 6. Insert articles where it is necessary and translate the sentences.**

- 1) \_\_\_\_\_ single rooms are for single travellers.
- 2) In many hotels, \_\_\_\_\_ single room is actually \_\_\_\_\_ same as \_\_\_\_\_ double room.
- 3) Double rooms are for two travellers sleeping in the same bed.
- 4) Triple rooms have either three separate bed, or \_\_\_\_\_ double bed plus \_\_\_\_\_ single bed.
- 5) There is considerable variation and many frills within these basic types, \_\_\_\_\_ rule of thumb being that \_\_\_\_\_ more you pay, \_\_\_\_\_ larger your room becomes.
- 6) Some business-oriented hotels offer \_\_\_\_\_ executive level, where \_\_\_\_\_ steep premium gets you access into \_\_\_\_\_ airline-style lounge.
- 7) Hotels may additionally offer meal service included in \_\_\_\_\_ price.
- 8) \_\_\_\_\_ five-star hotels also tend to have opulent and \_\_\_\_\_ expensive decorations.
- 9) \_\_\_\_\_ four-star hotel is \_\_\_\_\_ good business hotel.
- 10) Everything works smoothly, there's Internet in every room, \_\_\_\_\_ well-equipped business center.

**Task 7. Make phrases and translate them.**

1) birth	a) organization
2) birthright	b) mother
3) military	c) differences
4) temporary	d) government
5) residential	e) culture
6) prospective	f) tourism
7) foreign	g) service
8) international	h) neighbourhood
9) cultural	i) citizenship
10) original	j) home

**Task 8. Write the interpretation of the given words.**

*emigrant (n) government (n) law(n) neighbor(n) university(n)*

**Task 9. Translate the statements and determine if they correspond to the content of the text.**

1) Some women, wishing their children to be born in the United States, participate in «birth tourism».

2) Temporary homes for the mothers are often placed in residential neighborhoods.

3) Sometimes emigrants move to countries with big cultural differences.

4) Emigrants preserve their original culture, traditions and language, sometimes transmitting them to their children.

5) When children turn 21, they become eligible to petition for a grant of permanent nationality for their parents through family reunification.

### **Task 10. Make the test.**

1) Legal agreements between two companies are:

- |               |             |
|---------------|-------------|
| a) contracts; | c) memos;   |
| b) decisions; | d) reports. |

2) An agreement to pay money as compensation for loss or accident (in tourist industry):

- |                  |                        |
|------------------|------------------------|
| a) compensation; | c) travel insurance;   |
| b) points;       | d) insuring documents. |

3) Company which transport passengers (such as airline) is known as:

- |                 |                      |
|-----------------|----------------------|
| a) Eurobus;     | c) carrier;          |
| b) transporter; | d) Lincoln airlines. |

4) «Hard man» and «Soft man» is a:

- |                        |                                 |
|------------------------|---------------------------------|
| a) tactic of behavior; | c) way of signing an agreement; |
| b) manner of dressing; | d) way of looking at people.    |

5) \_\_\_\_\_ everyone Mackenzie Airport, I wish you a very pleasant journey.

- |                  |                  |
|------------------|------------------|
| a) on behalf of; | c) on behalf to; |
| b) at behalf of; | d) due to.       |

6) The flight attendant tells the seat number while:

- |                  |                         |
|------------------|-------------------------|
| a) checking in;  | c) landing;             |
| b) checking out; | d) introducing herself. |

7) You must declare any goods \_\_\_\_\_ the allowances listed on page 6.

- |          |           |
|----------|-----------|
| a) down; | c) over;  |
| b) at;   | d) above. |

8) If you arrive by air and are \_\_\_\_\_ a flight to another EU country ...

- |                 |                    |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| a) transfer to; | c) transferred to; |
|-----------------|--------------------|

b) transferring to;                      d) transferring at.

9) Payment for treatment or medication should be \_\_\_\_\_ on board direct to the medical personnel.

a) paid;                                      c) made;  
b) done;                                      d) make.

10) Bed linen \_\_\_\_\_ twice a week.

a) is changed;                              c) has changed;  
b) is changing;                              d) will change.

## **UNIT 6. Power relationships**

### **Task 1. Read the text and translate it.**

Medical tourism can be defined as the process of traveling outside the country of residence for the purpose of receiving medical care. Growth in the popularity of medical tourism has captured the attention of policy-makers, researchers and the media. Originally, the term referred to the travel of patients from less-developed countries to developed nations in pursuit of the treatments not available in their homeland.

Today we are experiencing both qualitative and quantitative shifts in patient mobility, as people travel from richer to less-developed countries in order to access health services. Such shift is mostly driven by the relative low-cost of treatments in less developed nations, the availability of inexpensive flights and increased marketing and online consumer information about the availability of medical services.

What really puts the word «tourism» in medical tourism concept is that people often stay in the foreign country after the medical procedure. Travelers can thus take advantage of their visit by sightseeing, taking day trips or participating in any other traditional tourism activities.

### *Cost*

Medical tourism represents a worldwide, multibillion-dollar phenomenon that is expected to grow considerably in the next decade. For the individual interested in health services, cost is the key factor involved in the decision to receive medical care abroad. As healthcare costs in the US and other parts of the world are excessively soaring, many employers and insurance companies started to view medical tourism as a way to lower them. More and more countries around the globe start to see the financial benefits from this emerging market, so they offer premium medical services at notably lower prices.

The primary reason that clinics and hospitals in the developing countries are able to lower their prices is directly related to the nation's economic status. The direct correlation with per capita gross domestic product of the country is observed, which

is a proxy for income levels. As a consequence, surgery prices are from 30% to 70% lower in the countries that are promoting medical tourism when compared to the US.

### *Quality*

There are two major components of the service quality in the health care sector - technical or mechanical quality and serviceable or functional quality. Technical equipment is at the core of the patients' diagnostic algorithm, while the functional quality is measured by the service offered in the healthcare centers (such as the services of staffs, nurses and, most importantly, the doctors towards the patient and their assistants). The service quality in medical tourism industry is a vital part in attracting customers.

One of the fundamental barriers in accepting medical tourism is the perception of inadequate quality. A key to overcome it is using adequate marketing strategies and quality assessment via accreditation from an internationally recognized institution. Such accreditation is pivotal for strengthening confidence in the quality of healthcare.

This confidence can be even stronger if accreditation is followed by an affiliation with reputable hospitals or health care systems in industrialized countries. Once healthcare providers are accredited and become a part of international referral networks, they can be appropriately rated for risks.

### *Treatment types*

Categories of different treatments and their availability also represent an important factor in decision to engage in medical tourism. The most common types of procedures that patients pursue during medical tourism trips are elective cosmetic surgery, dentistry, organ transplantation, cardiac surgery and orthopedic surgery.

However, a wide variety of services can be obtained through medical tourism, ranging from various essential treatments to different kinds of traditional and alternative treatments. Reproductive tourism and reproductive outsourcing are growing in popularity, which is the practice of traveling abroad to engage in surrogate pregnancy, *in vitro* fertilization and other assisted reproductive technology methods.

In addition to cost, other major factor responsible for the increase of medical tourism is access. The lack of it, either due to the unavailability of the technology or the prohibition in the home country, can subsequently lead to medical tourism. The common examples are cytoplasmic transfer or stem cell therapy.

### **Task 2. Insert the missing modal verbs: *can, could, may, must, might*.**

- 1) Tourism \_\_\_\_\_ be an important source of jobs for no metro communities, especially for those that are economically underdeveloped.
- 2) This place \_\_\_\_\_ be crowded in summer.
- 3) Someone \_\_\_\_\_ have thanked me for all my trouble.
- 4) The trip was cancelled last week. Paul \_\_\_\_\_ not have gone anyway because he was ill.
- 5) Tell me your problem; I \_\_\_\_\_ be able to help you.

**Task 3. Open the brackets, form the required degree of comparison of adjectives.**

1) For many employees today-both male and female-their lives are becoming (consumed) with a host of family and other personal responsibilities and interests.

2) As the separation between work and home life has diminished, this concept has become (relevant) than ever before.

3) Three-quarters of employees believe the worker has (many) on-the-job stress than a generation ago.

4) Providers and customers commonly use informal channels of communication and in such cases this tends to mean (little) regulatory or legal oversight to assure quality and (little) formal recourse to reimbursement or redress, if needed.

5) (Great) numbers than ever before of student volunteers are working temporarily and anticipating future work in resource-starved areas.

**Task 4. Insert the appropriate preposition where it is necessary and translate the sentences.**

*Of, in, for, on, between, with, out, of, by, at, off, over.*

1) Recreation or fun is the expenditure \_\_\_\_\_ time \_\_\_\_\_ a manner designed \_\_\_\_\_ therapeutic refreshment \_\_\_\_\_ one's body or mind.

2) Recreation is active \_\_\_\_\_ the participant but \_\_\_\_\_ a refreshing and diverting manner.

3) Work-life balance is a broad concept including proper prioritizing \_\_\_\_\_ career and ambition \_\_\_\_\_ one hand, compared \_\_\_\_\_ pleasure, leisure, family and spiritual development \_\_\_\_\_ the other.

4) According to a survey, four \_\_\_\_\_ ten employees state that their jobs are «very» or «extremely» stressful.

5) Problems caused \_\_\_\_\_ stress have become a major concern to both employers and employees.

6) \_\_\_\_\_ similar discrimination is experienced \_\_\_\_\_ men who take time \_\_\_\_\_ or reduce working hours \_\_\_\_\_ taking care \_\_\_\_\_ the family.

7) Psychologically demanding jobs that allow employees little control \_\_\_\_\_ the work process increase the risk of cardiovascular disease.

8) Job stress is also associated \_\_\_\_\_ various biological reactions that may lead ultimately to compromised health.

9) Job stress increases the risk \_\_\_\_\_ development \_\_\_\_\_ back and upper-extremity musculoskeletal disorders.

10) Workers who report experiencing stress \_\_\_\_\_ work also show excessive healthcare utilization.

**Task 5. Insert articles where it is necessary and translate the sentences.**

- 1) But \_\_\_\_\_ use of motor vehicles to get to \_\_\_\_\_ camp site is popular in many parts of \_\_\_\_\_ world.
- 2) Car camping allows you to bring more equipment, and focus on enjoying \_\_\_\_\_ site, cook-outs, day hikes, and other outdoor activities.
- 3) \_\_\_\_\_ character of car camping sites varies greatly.
- 4) Some are rustic and remote, with bumpy two-track roads leading to sites consisting of nothing more than \_\_\_\_\_ partially-cleared patch of ground with \_\_\_\_\_ stone-circled fire pit.
- 5) Others are conveniently located with \_\_\_\_\_ playground and swimming pool on \_\_\_\_\_ grounds.
- 6) Others may be little more than \_\_\_\_\_ grassy field or \_\_\_\_\_ glorified parking lot, between \_\_\_\_\_ motel and \_\_\_\_\_ shopping center.
- 7) Some campers just use their vehicle for transportation, pitching \_\_\_\_\_ stand-alone tent to sleep in.
- 8) Some use it to pull \_\_\_\_\_ pop-up trailer/tent or use their car or van as part of \_\_\_\_\_ tent or shade structure.
- 9) Some drive large vans or recreational vehicles to sleep in, which may include many of \_\_\_\_\_ comforts of home.
- 10) In \_\_\_\_\_ car camping lingo, «bookdocking» or «dry camping» refers to camping anywhere that \_\_\_\_\_ hookups are not present.

**Task 6. Choose the correct item.**

- 1) Their \_\_\_\_\_ which took six month, nearly met with disaster.
 

a) journey;	c) love;
b) expedition;	d) voyage.
- 2) «Horticulture» is the science about:
 

a) growing flowers, fruits and vegetables;	c) Highlands culture;
b) growing vegetables;	d) taking care of old sculptures.
- 3) Tourists \_\_\_\_\_ to the area in their thousands.
 

a) travel;	c) live;
b) flock;	d) speak about.
- 4) \_\_\_\_\_ will need to have international conference experience.
 

a) applicants;	c) teachers;
b) citizens;	d) visitors.
- 5) T.Cook organized his first major continental \_\_\_\_\_ in 1885.
 

a) firm;	c) tour;
b) trip;	d) excursion.

**Task 7. Insert the missing modal verbs: *can, could, may, must, might*.**

- 1) Participants \_\_\_\_\_ gain valuable outdoor leadership knowledge such as how to filter water and even dig a backcountry latrine.
- 2) You \_\_\_\_\_ buy your ticket before starting your journey.
- 3) I \_\_\_\_\_ be travelling tomorrow if I \_\_\_\_\_ book the ticket.
- 4) The flight \_\_\_\_\_ have been delayed.
- 5) We \_\_\_\_\_ have to wait a long time for a bus, because they do not run very frequently.

**Task 8. Insert the appropriate preposition where it is necessary and translate the sentences.**

*Through, because of, of, about, according to, on, for, because, in, from, within, around.*

- 1) Outdoor education can be simply defined as experiential learning \_\_\_\_\_ , \_\_\_\_\_ , or \_\_\_\_\_ the outdoors.
- 2) Common definitions \_\_\_\_\_ outdoor education are difficult to achieve \_\_\_\_\_ interpretations vary \_\_\_\_\_ culture, philosophy, and local conditions.
- 3) Influences \_\_\_\_\_ a variety \_\_\_\_\_ learning and psychological theories have contributed to the complex theoretical combination \_\_\_\_\_ adventure therapy.
- 4) Adventure therapy is the creation \_\_\_\_\_ opportunities to explore the unknown \_\_\_\_\_ a safe environment \_\_\_\_\_ adventure activities.
- 5) Adventure therapy theory draws \_\_\_\_\_ a mixture of learning and psychological theories.
- 6) The practice continues \_\_\_\_\_ numerous reported positive outcomes in adventure therapy research.
- 7) There are many agreements and disagreements \_\_\_\_\_ the field of adventure therapy.
- 8) Recreation or fun is the expenditure \_\_\_\_\_ time \_\_\_\_\_ a manner designed \_\_\_\_\_ therapeutic refreshment \_\_\_\_\_ one's body or mind.
- 9) Private organised recreation is usually focused \_\_\_\_\_ a specific type \_\_\_\_\_ sport as river rafting or mountaineering.
- 10) Hundreds \_\_\_\_\_ health resorts and spas exist \_\_\_\_\_ the world, offering specialized beauty and fitness services, and extended programs to improve your health.

**Task 9. Make the test.**

- 1) A typical French breakfast includes light, flaky rolls called
  - a) baguettes
  - b) crêpes
  - c) croissants
- 2) A small French restaurant serving affordable home-style meals is

- a) a bistro
- b) a pâtisserie
- c) a buffet

3) Restaurants that serve «haute cuisine» are usually

- a) cheap
- b) expensive
- c) informal

4) «I'll have the French \_\_\_\_\_ soup, please.»

- a) fries
- b) onion
- c) bread

5) Which is a savoury paste made from finely-minced meat or fish?

- a) pâté
- b) foie gras
- c) daube

6) What will you get if you order a plate of «escargot»?

- a) spiders
- b) snails
- c) worms

7) «Coq au vin» means «chicken in \_\_\_\_\_».

- a) wine
- b) vinegar
- c) vine leaves

8) Which egg-based dish puffs up and gets taller while being cooked?

- a) soufflé
- b) quiche
- c) mousse

9) Which is a salad dressing made by mixing oil and vinegar with herbs and spices?

- a) vol-au-vent
- b) hollandaise sauce
- c) vinaigrette

10) What are the tube-shaped French pastries with cream inside and chocolate on top called?

- a) éclairs
- b) ratatouilles
- c) crêpes

## UNIT 7. Emotional competence

### Task 1. Read the text and translate it.

According to the United Nations World Tourism Organization, cultural tourism is «movements of persons for essentially cultural motivations such as study tours, performing arts and cultural tours, travel to festivals and other cultural events, visits to sites and monuments, travel to study nature, folklore or art, and pilgrimages».

We expand this definition to encompass the participation of visitors in cultural activities whether those activities are the primary purpose of their travel or not.

Cultural tourism is big business in Florida. Our state attracts more than 100 million visitors per year, and 65% of those visitors take part in at least one cultural activity. These visitors spend more on their trips and stay longer than other visitors.

Creating a plan to attract cultural tourism can do more than affect your bottom line, it can also help define your area as a cultural and artistic destination. Travelers look for an «authentic experience», and your community has its own special attributes that set it apart from others. These features include your history, traditions, and yes, your arts and culture.

Your community has a story to tell, and finding an engaging way to tell that tale is one way to attract visitors. Tools are available for creating an inventory of community assets. A few of them are found as links in this toolkit.

That's up to you! Engage with other organizations and individuals in your area, or simply measure the effect visitors have on your own organization. The important thing to do is to start *somewhere*. You don't even have to spend any money.

Sometimes arts and cultural organizations may be daunted at the idea of approaching the local DMO or CVB. Arts and cultural organizations create value for tourists by offering experiences that cannot be found elsewhere. You have a product that your DMO can sell... and their goal is to sell your area to visitors. You may find that showing them how many visitors take advantage of your services will catch the DMO's interest. You may find that the excellent quality of your work will excite them as much as you know it will excite tourists.

Finding your way in may be difficult, but it can be done. Remember, bring them a quality product and show them how they can use it to their own advantage.

Another helpful step is to integrate the boards of directors of DMO/CVB's with the boards of arts and cultural organizations. If a member of the DMO board is interested in arts and culture, there may be an opportunity for expanding their interest by having a conversation regarding an upcoming project or event.

In addition, if you have someone from the tourism industry on *your* board, they may be able to provide some useful guidance and new ideas for promoting cultural tourism in the community.

You can always start small in measurements. Try collecting the zip codes of your patrons as a way to find out how many of them traveled to your event or activity. Think of what you want to accomplish, and ask yourself some important questions:

«*Why do we do what we do?*»

«*Why do people take advantage of my current offerings?*»

«*For what reasons are we funded?*»

«*What change are we trying to create in our community?*»

These questions and others like them can help you decide what to measure and how to measure it. Once you have your numbers, analyze them and look at how you can improve what you're doing. Once you've implemented a change, no matter how small, measure again to see if you've achieved the outcome you wanted.

**Task 2. Translate the statements and determine if they correspond to the content of the text.**

- 1) «Cultural tourism» is the division of tourism concerned with a country or region's culture.
- 2) One type of cultural tourism purpose is living cultural areas.
- 3) Cultural tourism can play in national increase in different world regions.
- 4) Cultural sightseers spend substantially more than standard tourists do.
- 5) Cultural tourism includes tourism in urban areas, particularly famous or large cities.

**Task 3. Read the statements and say if they are true or false.**

1. When various countries collect statistics on tourism they are all measuring different things.
2. All travellers are classified under various headings.
3. Visitors are people who cross the borders for various reasons.
4. Passengers on a cruise stopping over in a port are same-day visitors.
5. Travellers cease to be tourists if their purpose is not leisure or recreation.
6. Domestic tourism means the same as internal tourism.
7. Inbound tourism involves the residents of a particular country going abroad.
8. Outbound tourism means that people who live in another country come to visit the country where you live.

**Task 4. Study the definitions, translate them and then complete the sentences.**

journey	crossing
flight	drive
trip	tour

voyage

ride

- 1) If you are visiting Madrid, why not go on a day \_\_\_\_\_ to Toledo?
- 2) The \_\_\_\_\_ was delayed because of air traffic congestion over Heathrow.
- 3) The \_\_\_\_\_ on the ferry was very rough.
- 4) The train \_\_\_\_\_ from Madras to Bangalore was uncomfortable.
- 5) The Titanic sank on its maiden \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6) Why not hire a car and go for a \_\_\_\_\_ in the country?
- 7) There`s a volleyball team on \_\_\_\_\_ and they want hotel accommodation.
- 8) The museum is a short bus \_\_\_\_\_ from the tourist information office.

### Task 5. Choose the correct item.

- 1) Mass-market tour operator is one who sells:
  - a) very cheap holidays;
  - b) very nice holidays;
  - c) very popular holidays;
  - d) dangerous holidays;
- 2) With a \_\_\_\_\_ the current economic situation, we can expect fewer visitors this year.
  - a) demand to;
  - b) view into;
  - c) view at;
  - d) view to;
- 3) \_\_\_\_\_ is a trip which informs people about resorts.
  - a) business trip;
  - b) familiarization trip;
  - c) luxurious trip;
  - d) holiday trip;
- 4) A plan of a journey is known as:
  - a) itinerary;
  - b) route;
  - c) scheme;
  - d) map;
- 5) A very large show of goods, advertising, etc., for people who work in a particular industry is:
  - a) exhibition;
  - b) rack display;
  - c) vanity fair;
  - d) trade fair.

### Task 6. Correct mistakes in the given sentences.

- 1) Last night, Samantha have pizza for supper.
- 2) What was happened to your leg?
- 3) Who is the person on this picture?
- 4) I kepted away from him. I knew how vicious he was.
- 5) There are too much water in the bath tub.

- 6) Last week, Tonya fix her neighbour's car.
- 7) This morning before coming to class, Jack eats two bowls of cereal.
- 8) They didn't stayed in a four star hotel.
- 9) New York is more bigger than London.
- 10) Did they have some news for you?

**Task 7. Identify which parts of speech the given words belong to and translate them.**

*Destination, main, multi-story, strictly, prohibit, intact, attraction, arrive, daily, toward, kid, lively, quarter, discover, beyond, functional, amount, direction, tower, lined, customer, a, through, their, canal.*

Noun	
Pronoun	
Verb	
Adverb	
Adjective	
Preposition	
Article	

**Task 8. Open the brackets and put the verb in Past Simple.**

1. Last year I \_\_\_\_\_ (spend) my holiday in Ireland.
2. It \_\_\_\_\_ (be) great.
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ (travel) around by car with two friends and we \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) lots of interesting places.
4. In the evenings we usually \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to a pub.
5. One night we even \_\_\_\_\_ (learn) some Irish dances.
6. We \_\_\_\_\_ (be) very lucky with the weather.
7. It \_\_\_\_\_ (not / rain) a lot.
8. But we \_\_\_\_\_ (see) some beautiful rainbows.
9. We \_\_\_\_\_ (have) the opportunity to see all the main attractions.
10. Where \_\_\_\_\_ (spend / you) your last holiday?

**Task 9. Make the test.**

- 1) Cabaret \_\_\_\_\_ very evening in the cocktail lounge.
  - a) is taken place;
  - b) will take place;
  - c) will be taken;
  - d) will take places.
- 2) A large, single platform boat with most of the deck used for carrying cars and other vehicles is:
  - a) catamaran;
  - b) hydrofoil;
  - c) landing craft ferry;
  - d) passenger boat.



## UNIT 8. Executive functioning

### Task 1. Read the text and translate it.

What is Voluntourism?

Voluntourism means volunteering your time, skills, and energy with an organization, issue, or causes to help make a difference in communities around the world as part of your vacation package.

Voluntourism is a new way of traveling that is becoming increasingly popular around the world. Voluntourism is when people volunteer overseas while they travel. It is similar to «eco-tourism» in a way, because the objective of improving lives is still present. But unlike eco-tourism, voluntourism is aimed at helping other people rather than helping the environment. Voluntourism involves tourists going on vacation or rather, missions to help out on a particular project.

This volunteer work overseas entails not only the duties a volunteer will do, but it also gives a chance for tourists to discover new places, experience a foreign culture, and learn more about people in other countries. The time spent becomes an exciting and fulfilling vacation because you get to immerse yourself in another world while helping out those in need.

Doing voluntary work overseas is very different from the typical idea of a «relaxing» or «sightseeing» vacation which is in fact very artificial and does not allow you to really engage with the people in the country you are visiting and to form relationships with them as other human beings. In a sense, that sort of trip is more like taking a long trip to a human zoo to look at people and things rather than to live and be with them as one people.

Volunteer travel is a lot more sustainable as well because it deviates from the typical indulgent vacation. In voluntourism, you get to be responsible for the growth and change of others which is an experience unlike any other. This makes your trip to another country worth so much more than just «having fun» the whole time.

One thing that is clear is that going abroad and giving money and gifts to strangers, even if you do it from a place of love and with the best intentions, may not actually be helping them.

Ultimately, volunteering abroad is a rewarding, worthwhile activity. Your hard work and dedication in making a change in the world will touch lives – not least, your own.

### Task 2. Choose the correct item.

1) Your car will be delivered to your hotel free of \_\_\_\_\_ with a full \_\_\_\_\_ of patrol.

a) payment, trunk;

c) charge, bank;

b) charge, tank;

d) money, tank.

2) If you have problems with the car hired it will be \_\_\_\_\_ without any problems.



10) Cruising the Internet (to create) great opportunities and challenges.

**Task 5. Make the questions to the words in italics.**

1) *Disney* is a man of extreme talent, perseverance, vision, and drive.

2) Here you can see *the familiar faces of film stars*.

3) The Internet allows you to cruise *the computer highways* around the world.

4) Technology changes *exponentially*.

5) Employers are looking for *employees* who are well written and well spoken.

6) We think of ourselves as *modern and scientific* people.

7) *We* need to predict possible outcomes.

8) Change is happening constantly *in our world*.

9) For most of us *our* window of concern extends from today to the end of the year.

10) The *amusement* industry is embracing new technologies.

**Task 6. Identify which parts of speech the given words belong to and translate them.**

*Major, railroad, own, over, between, eventually, into, spectacular, kill, enjoy, a, thrill, the, free, could, originally, celebrate, it, with, they, development, you, side, on, have.*

Noun	
Pronoun	
Verb	
Adverb	
Adjective	
Preposition	
Article	

**Task 7. Correct mistakes in the given sentences.**

1) No career or job decision are forever.

2) Tens of workers spending their days plotting their escape from jobs.

3) They are liberate from their desk or duties.

4) Increasing the quality of your life happen two ways.

5) They further remind we that our work is what we do.

6) You are face with countless decisions during your academic journey.

7) No career or job description last forever.

8) We can only speculate about what work will be like at the future.

9) It is no inevitable that work be like this.

10) You need have a plan.

**Task 8. Translate these phrases and make sentences with them.**

- |                           |                       |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1) to have a monopoly on; | 6) Ferris wheel;      |
| 2) to be afraid of;       | 7) amusement park;    |
| 3) leisure industries;    | 8) push up;           |
| 4) surplus revenue;       | 9) steeplechase ride; |
| 5) all over the world;    | 10) moving staircase. |

**Task 9. Read the statements and decide whether they are true or false. Explain why.**

1. The travel tourism industry is regarded as a people industry.
2. There are a vast number of jobs that involve dealing with customers in public.
3. There are many less jobs at a basic or operative level in tourism than there are in management.
4. The tourism industry offers good promotion prospects from basic jobs to supervisory and higher management positions.
5. The competition for jobs in tourism industry at all levels isn't intense.
6. Working unsocial hours may be a good attraction to people in tourism industry.

**Task 10. Make the test.**

- 1) What is northern China's staple grain?
  - a) rice
  - b) wheat
  - c) soybean
- 2) «I'll have deep-fried pork with sweet and \_\_\_\_\_ sauce, please.»
  - a) salty
  - b) sticky
  - c) sour
- 3) Rice vermicelli is a very thin type of
  - a) bread
  - b) noodle
  - c) pastry
- 4) Wontons are traditional Chinese
  - a) dumplings
  - b) pancakes
  - c) hot dogs

- 5) To add flavour, diners often sprinkle \_\_\_\_\_ on Chinese food.
- a) soya beans
  - b) soya milk
  - c) soy sauce
- 6) Which is a porridge made by boiling rice for a long time?
- a) congee
  - b) mapo tofu
  - c) hot pot
- 7) Wildlife activists want \_\_\_\_\_ to be banned and no longer eaten.
- a) hundred-year eggs
  - b) shark fin soup
  - c) Peking duck
- 8) Spring rolls have become a popular \_\_\_\_\_ in many countries.
- a) appetizer
  - b) dessert
  - c) leftover
- 9) Which dish is made by stir-frying egg noodles and meat or tofu?
- a) chow mein
  - b) dim sum
  - c) chop suey
- 10) Which is a dish of steamed rice topped with slices of chicken cooked in broth?
- a) Kung Pao chicken
  - b) sweet and sour chicken
  - c) Hainanese chicken rice

## UNIT 9. Speech acts

### Task 1. Read the text and translate it.

Beach tourism is the major segment of holiday tourism that has led to an overall development of tourism in many parts of the world. Each year during the months of mellow sunshine and warm winter, thousands of tourists throng the famous beaches of the world. Beach tourism utilizes the aesthetic and environmental values of the beach. It also combines water and land resources usage. Water usage swimming, surfing, sailing and other water sports.



b) simmer; d) fillet.

2) There's no need to get a taxi from the airport. We provide a \_\_\_\_\_ .

a) taxi; c) courtesy bus;  
b) charter train; d) underground.

3) We decided that the cheapest way of giving people in wheelchairs access to the first floor was to install a:

a) stair lift; c) ramp;  
b) hoist; d) fire exit.

4) Because many of our clients are elderly, we have a \_\_\_\_\_ in case they need medical attention.

a) doctor; c) teacher;  
b) resident nurse; d) adviser.

5) Closet is a special place where a person can:

a) wash hands; c) leave/put clothes;  
b) cook food; d) iron clothes.

### **Task 3. Fill in the correct word from the list below.**

*direct, negative, recent, way, enthusiasm, guarantee, list, positive*

- 1) to speak in the chaotic ...
- 2) rules that ... success;
- 3) a ... of facts;
- 4) to start with the most ... job;
- 5) the first ... contact with the prospective employer;
- 6) not to include any ... information;
- 7) to be ... about yourself;
- 8) to convey ... for work.

### **Task 4. Write the answers to the questions.**

- 1) What does the travel tourism industry offer to its employees?
- 2) The career growth in tourism industry can be relatively quick, can't it?
- 3) Why is the competition for jobs often intense?
- 4) What features of work in tourism industry attract people?
- 5) What features may be a significant barrier for people in tourism?
- 6) What personal and technical skills are common in most tourism jobs?

**Task 5. Study the list of the evaluative adjectives. Find or guess the meaning of the words. Analyse their derivation.**

*Comprehensive, detailed, different, extensive, external, favourable, final, formal, formative, future, good, independent, individual, initial, internal negative objective, periodic, personal, poor, positive, previous, psychological, qualitative, quantitative, recent, regular, retrospective, scientific, separate, specific, statistical, subjective, subsequent, such, summative, systematic.*

**Task 6. Make phrases and translate them. Give examples in what situations they can be used.**

1) amusement	a) park
2) tourist	b) view
3) theme	c) organization
4) steep	d) industry
5) thrill	e) staircase
6) spectacular	f) whales
7) nonprofit	g) attraction
8) moving	h) escalator
9) giant	i) ride
10) killer	j) promontory

**Task 7. Open the brackets, using verbs in Present Simple (Active or Passive) or in Present Continuous (Active or Passive).**

- 1) Waterpark development (to influence) by weather, land prices and cultural laws.
- 2) Nowadays parks (to experience) massive construction and expansion.
- 3) European parks (to tend) to be indoors.
- 4) Some parks may (to built) vertically and (to combine) with nonwater amusements.
- 5) Computer-generating ticketing (to become) a popular method of issuing tickets.
- 6) America (not to have) a monopoly on the amusement industry.
- 7) Walt Disney Company (to remain) an extremely capable organization.
- 8) Older parks with water areas (to try) to stay competitive at present.
- 9) Now many of the Canadian projects (to build) by municipalities.
- 10) European leisure centres (to include) a swim-through feature and a hydrotube.

**Task 8. Insert the missing words *a few, a little, much, many***

- 1) Not \_\_\_\_\_ people come here in the winter.
- 2) Could I have \_\_\_\_\_ sugar for my tea, please?
- 3) Don't eat so \_\_\_\_\_ chocolate or you'll get fat.



8) In large building complexes, fresh air will be supplied to rooms through an \_\_\_\_\_ system.

- |                      |                     |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| a) humidity;         | c) heating;         |
| b) air-conditioning; | d) water-supplying. |

9) Heating may be underfloor or a \_\_\_\_\_ may be fitted to the wall in each room.

- |           |              |
|-----------|--------------|
| a) radar; | c) radiator; |
| b) lamp;  | d) pipe.     |

10) Waste water is removed through \_\_\_\_\_ .

- |            |              |
|------------|--------------|
| a) drains; | c) radiator; |
| b) pipes;  | d) thermos.  |

**Task 10. Find the examples how the levels of communication are fulfilled in life in different languages and cultures. Compare them. Write about differences and similarities. Say which level of communication you think is the most important one and why.**

## UNIT 10. Communicative intentions

### Task 1. Read the text and translate it.

Wildlife tourism is among the most misunderstood sectors of the Travel & Tourism industry, but awareness is changing among operators and travellers alike. Travellers must increase their understanding of the wildlife tourism industry — which activities jeopardise animal welfare — and commit to avoiding exploitative and harmful animal experiences. One of the key challenges facing responsible animal tourism is education about understanding exactly which activities contribute to conservation, and which fall on the other side of the spectrum. A major wildlife tourism study from University of Oxford's Wildlife Conservation Research Unit found that at questionable wildlife experiences, typically 80% of «attending tourists did not recognise and/or respond to negative welfare impacts». That statistic is troubling because it represents an overwhelming number of the 1.2 billion tourists annually vacationing around the world. «Whilst tourism can be a means for positive interactions between tourists and animals, where such attractions are not carefully managed or do not exhibit best practice there is the potential that such attractions can jeopardise animal welfare or the customer experience.»

As travellers raise their expectations about how animals are treated around the world, a number of types of animal experiences have come under fire. Activities like cuddling tigers, riding elephants, and orca whale shows have gained national conservation. But there are a range of tourist attractions that also fall under the umbrella of activities causing harm to animals. Let's look at a few examples and see

how you can apply the best practices within one activity to a broad range of animal tourism best practices. The conversation around riding elephants has reached a fever-pitch in recent years, and the industry seems to coalesce around the central idea that you should not ride elephants on vacation. Elephant riding is unsustainable and has a negative welfare impact on the animals. What's more, both elephants and mahouts, the elephant handlers, are subjected to cruel expectations and working conditions. In a scathing look at elephant tourism, *Vice News* found the industry almost purely profit driven, with little regard for the health and welfare of the animals. Elephants are expensive; according to *The Atlantic*, they «need to eat 250 kilos per day and cost owners approximately \$1,000 per month to house and feed». This constant expense has led to an industry that supports an «anything that sells» elephant tourism model — animals are forced to work sick, work in extreme heat, and perform for endless hours each day. On every level, riding elephants has a negative impact on the animals and the local society. So what's a responsible traveller to do? While all elephants deserve to live in the wild, that is no longer a viable solution. Calls to ban all captive elephants in places like Thailand don't take into account the reality that there is no longer enough land — nor adequate protection from poachers — to safely reintroduce wild elephants into most of Southeast Asia. Instead, across Africa and Asia tourists can visit elephant sanctuaries, which do not allow elephant rides or shows. These sanctuaries provide a low-stress environment for the elephants, while still allowing visitors to view the animals up close. These alternative interactions score well on both conservation, and animal welfare studies. And just as with the elephants, responsible travellers should apply these same standards to any interactions with big cats like lions, tigers, and cheetahs. Many wildlife tourism attractions related to the big cats are nothing more than breeding centres providing opportunities for tourists take selfies cuddling the cute cubs. And if that were the worst of it, perhaps the industry would have remained under the radar for longer, but as a *National Geographic* investigation discovered in 2016, some locations — like the Tiger Temple in Bangkok — bred tigers not only for tourism, but to supply the illegal tiger trade. And the implications of selling endangered animals on the black market are dire. «The underworld sales of captive tigers and their body parts stokes demand — meaning that more tigers are killed in the forests and jungles of India, Sumatra, Thailand, and elsewhere across their range.» [*National Geographic*].

### **Task 2. Choose the correct item.**

1) Tourism as one of the service industries employs a lot of people, so it is ...

- |                                  |                      |
|----------------------------------|----------------------|
| a) the world's largest employee; | c) labour effective; |
| b) labour-intensive;             | d) labour efficient. |

2) What is the range of jobs in tourism?

- a) from the unskilled, the semi-skilled to the high skilled;
- b) from the unskilled to the semi-skilled;
- c) from the semi-skilled to the high-skilled;

d) from the unskilled to the high-skilled.

3) Everyone in tourism agrees that ... is more important in this sector than in most others.

a) qualification;

c) special education;

b) experience;

d) personality.

4) What is common to a majority of jobs in the tourism industry?

a) career;

c) contact with people;

b) training;

d) knowledge of a foreign language.

5) The final result of the tourism employee's effort should be ...

a) a complaining customer;

c) a pleasant customer;

b) a satisfied customer;

d) a smiling customer.

**Task 3. Find the information and write a summary.**

When did tourism begin?

Who were the first tourists?

Where did they travel?

What means of transportation did they use?

What are the most common means of transportation nowadays?

What future does tourism expect?

**Task 4. Look at these phrases. Make 2-3 sentences with each of them regarding tourism.**

*Service industry, labour-intensive, to estimate, the range of jobs, skilled employee, to solve a problem, background, facilities for training, to be eager to do smth.*

**Task 5. Think how you would answer these questions. Write down your point of view.**

1) Why is tourism labour-intensive?

2) What is the range of jobs in tourism?

3) What personal qualities are very important for those working in the tourism industry?

4) What qualifications are needed for some jobs in tourism?

5) What is common feature of a majority of the jobs in the tourism industry?

6) What result must each person working in tourism seek for?

**Task 6. Choose the correct item.**

1) We travel to Hveragerdi, the «greenhouse village», where fruit, vegetables and flowers are grown in \_\_\_\_\_ geothermal water.

- a) ghost houses, warmed by;                      c) glass houses, run by;  
 b) wooden houses, drawn by;                    d) greenhouses, heated by.

2) Would you like to visit a \_\_\_\_\_ area like the Antarctic?

- a) protected;                                      c) designated;  
 b) restricted;                                      d) inhabited.

3) One of the product weaknesses is lack of foreign language skills especially good quality, \_\_\_\_\_ interpretation in other language.

- a) on-site;                                        c) respectful;  
 b) qualified;                                      d) intelligent.

4) A complimentary range of activities such as pony-\_\_\_\_\_ and walking are normally on offer.

- a) trekking;                                      c) trek;  
 b) jumping;                                        d) exploring.

5) We set out by jeep or elephant searching for one-horned rhino and perhaps even \_\_\_\_\_ tiger.

- a) Bengal;                                        c) Indian;  
 b) Benjamin;                                      d) red.

**Task 7. Make 5 qualities you think are most important for anybody working in tourism. Mark the qualities you think you have, make a list of your good points.**

- 1) \_\_\_\_\_ ;  
 2) \_\_\_\_\_ ;  
 3) \_\_\_\_\_ ;  
 4) \_\_\_\_\_ ;  
 5) \_\_\_\_\_ .

**Task 8. Complete these questions with the correct question word. Then answer these questions.**

- 1) \_\_\_\_\_ was your last job?  
 2) \_\_\_\_\_ languages can you speak?  
 3) \_\_\_\_\_ language do speak the best?  
 4) \_\_\_\_\_ job are you looking for?  
 5) \_\_\_\_\_ did you stay in England?  
 6) \_\_\_\_\_ did you choose to study tourism?  
 7) \_\_\_\_\_ will I be able to start?  
 8) \_\_\_\_\_ responsibility is it to supervise staff?

**Task 9. Write a short essay (200-300 words).**

- 1) What sector of the travel industry most appeals to you?
- 2) What is your idea of a good job? Put the following ideas in order of importance. Discuss your choices with your partner.

**Task 10. Find the information about healthy and non-healthy food. Make the test.**

- 1) Potato chips and chocolate bars are examples of
  - a) healthy food
  - b) junk food
  - c) fast food
- 2) According to the article, too much fatty food causes
  - a) obesity
  - b) trans fats
  - c) mouth watering
- 3) Which of the following can have high levels of trans fats?
  - a) fresh produce
  - b) fried foods
  - c) saturated fats
- 4) What do trans fats do to the body?
  - a) raise good cholesterol
  - b) lower good cholesterol
  - c) lower bad cholesterol
- 5) Food companies and restaurants started using trans fats in order to save
  - a) time
  - b) time
  - c) money
- 6) Which would doctors now say is the healthiest?
  - a) margarine
  - b) butter
  - c) peanut butter
- 7) What tip does the article give for avoiding trans fats?
  - a) eat out in restaurants
  - b) avoid tasty foods
  - c) check the ingredients

- 8) Processed foods are nearly always \_\_\_\_\_ fresh or unprocessed foods.
- a) unhealthier than
  - b) healthier than
  - c) as healthy as
- 9) If the majority of people eat junk food, \_\_\_\_\_ eat it.
- a) half of them
  - b) more than half
  - c) less than half
- 10) A good diet \_\_\_\_\_ your chances of living a long and healthy life.
- a) has no effect on
  - b) decreases
  - c) increases

## UNIT 11. Body language

### Task 1. Read the text and translate it.

As travelers seek new and different experiences, adventure tourism continues to grow in popularity. Adventure tourism, according to the Adventure Travel Trade Association, is a tourist activity that includes physical activity, a cultural exchange, or activities in nature. You don't necessarily have to go base jumping or go scuba diving with sharks to be an adventure tourist (although those activities definitely qualify). Adventure tourism is about connecting with a new culture or a new landscape and being physically active at the same time. It is not about being risky or pushing your boundaries. In fact, it is especially important to know and respect your limits while you are in an unfamiliar area. Our list of adventure tourism activities has plenty of options if you aren't necessarily a thrill seeker. If you are an adrenaline junkie, don't worry we still have a few ideas for your next trip.

### Day Hiking

Getting out and experiencing a new location under the power of your own two feet is always a great option. Hiking allows you to slow down and enjoy more aspects of your surroundings. Day hikes are a good option for most anyone that loves the outdoors. If you happen to be in Costa Rica, you can take a guided hike up to the top of Cero Chato, a dormant volcano. You get to hike through the rain forest and your reward for getting to the top is a beautiful lagoon! Be sure to remember to wear moisture-wicking clothes; Costa Rica can be quite humid.

## **Backpacking**

If you are more adventurous and have the proper equipment, you can extend your day hike into a backpacking trip. Backpacking allows you to stay out in nature longer and see more things than you would on a normal day hike. It is important to have the proper survival knowledge and gear. If you haven't backpacked before, make sure that you go with someone knowledgeable that will show you the proper backpacking techniques. The Gore Range Trail is a great way to explore the mountains outside Silverthorne, Colorado. The whole trail is 41.7 miles long and is rated as a difficult trail. The scenic views make it worth the effort. If you're not up for the full hike, you can set a goal for reaching one of the high alpine lakes along the trail.

## **Zip Lining**

Want to soar through the trees and experience nature from a different angle? You should try zip lining. Zip lines and canopy tours are a fantastic way to quickly see a new area. You see everything from a different angle. Some canopy tours will even get you up close and personal with the local wildlife. Niagara Falls recently installed a zip line called the MistRider. This zip line has 4 parallel lines, so you and your friends can all zip at the same time. It's great opportunity to turn your trip to Niagara Falls into an adventure tourism activity.

## **Climbing**

Climbing is a classic example of an adventure tourism activity. It combines physical activity and allows you to take in the beauty of nature. Even if you've never climbed a day in your life, you can still get up a rock wall with the help of a guide. Make sure to check the safety record and accreditations of your rock climbing guide before heading out! Another option is to try climbing indoors. Many cities have rock climbing gyms so you can easily access some adventure! Ask if they have TRUBLUE Auto Belays so you can walk in and start climbing without needing an introductory class.

## **Free Fall**

When most people hear free fall they think bungee jumping or skydiving. While those are viable adventure tourism activities, they might not be for everyone. Head Rush Technologies engineered the next generation of free fall devices, the QUICKflight and the FlightLine, to provide an authentic feeling of free fall with less risk. You can find these devices in ropes courses, adventure parks and other facilities all over the world. There's a good chance that there's a Head Rush Free Fall Device location in close proximity to your next destination.

## **Rafting**

Floating down a cool river on a hot summer day can be an excellent way to explore a new area. You get all the excitement of battling a rapid and you can also sit back and enjoy the view during the calmer sections of the river. The best season for rafting usually depends on the area you're in and your desired level of adventure.

Generally speaking, the water levels are usually higher earlier in the season and lower later in the season. Higher water levels provide bigger rapids and more thrills, while lower levels are more subdued.

### Mountain Biking

If you're talking about exciting physical activities that allow you to explore the outdoors, it would be a crime to leave out mountain biking. Mountain biking offers a great workout and a fun way to experience nature. You'll be able to travel further distances on trails and see more of the surrounding area. New to mountain biking? No worries! Many locations have trails that range from beginner to advanced. If you're near a ski resort, check to see if they have lift-serviced trails. You'll ride the ski lift to the top with your bike and then let gravity do most of the work as you cruise the green, blue, and black trails down.

### Skiing And Snowboarding

You might not have realized that your annual family ski trip qualifies as adventure tourism. Cruising down the slopes at a resort keeps you active and lets you experience the outdoors. The western United States is known for its exceptional skiing up and down the Rocky Mountains. You'll find fresh powder and amazing slopes all the way from Alaska down to Utah, Colorado and even northern New Mexico. If you're the adventurous type, you can abandon the resorts and set out into the backcountry. Backcountry skiing can be extremely dangerous if you aren't properly trained. It's absolutely necessary to take an avalanche safety class and buy all the proper safety equipment before you go off-piste. Consider hiring guide services for your first time trying backcountry skiing or snowboarding.

### Finding Your Next Adventure

The Adventure Travel Trade Association hosts resources for travelers to find their next adventure. The businesses they share are part of the association and part of the adventure tourism movement around the world. Find resources, check out destinations, and get inspired by the many photos and videos. The next adventure is out there waiting for you!

**Task 2. Match the people in the box to these sentences.**

*a) holidaymaker; b) migrant; c) globetrotter; d) tripper; e) nomad; f) itinerant; g) commuter; h) passenger; i) hiker.*

- 1) I travel daily on this route to work.
- 2) I travel from place to place looking for grass for my cattle.
- 3) I travel to a nearby attraction for a short period, usually a day, for pleasure.
- 4) I travel widely around the world but not necessarily for pleasure, sometimes for my work.
- 5) I am travelling in this vehicle but I am not driving it.

6) I travel by walking across country. It is not my normal means of transport and I usually do it for pleasure.

7) I travel from place to place because I do not have a permanent home.

8) I am travelling for my vacation.

9) I am travelling because I wish to make another country my home.

**Task 3. Look at the following list of people and decide who is and who is not a tourist.**

1) Mr. Miller travels to Lourdes in France in search of a miracle.

2) Ms. Fowler flies off to Turkey for a two-week holiday in the sun.

3) Mr. Baker emigrates to Australia to settle there and begin a new life.

4) Mrs. Shamir travels from Glasgow to London to spend a week with her relatives there.

5) Madame Boucher flies from Paris to America for three days to attend two business meetings in New York.

6) Miss Taylor spends a day out visiting a historic monument located on the edge of her town.

7) Mrs. Wheeler and her husband treat themselves to an evening's stay away from home in a country hotel.

**Task 4. Fill in the correct word from the list below. Use the words only once.**

survey	length
mass- market	same-day
residence	accommodated
reasons	low-wage

1) usual place of ...

2) travel for professional ...

3) ... of stay;

4) a ... visitor;

5) to be ... on board;

6) to carry out a ...

7) ... countries;

8) popular ... destinations.

**Task 5. Fill in the correct preposition, and then make sentences using these phrases.**

1) to be strongly associated ...

2) to distinguish ... two concepts;

3) to carry ... a research;

4) to exclude ... the classification system;

5) to spend a night ... board ship;

6) ... least;

7) to be employed ... companies;

8) to be attracted ... smth.

**Task 6. Write the opposites to the following words in italics.**

*Inbound* tourists, *high-wage* countries, *permanent* home, *carelessly*, *include in* the classification system, *continental* countries, *expensive*, *outside* the usual environment.

**Task 7. The information about people who are included in and excluded from tourism statistics of the WTO has been mixed up. Arrange it correctly under the proper headings.**

- people arriving in a country for work with or without a contract (including service personnel and people accompanying them);
- foreign airline and ship crews on stop-over in a country;
- people who emigrate;
- people travelling for pleasure, for family reasons, for health etc. (including nationals who live permanently abroad) ;
- people who live or work on an international border including those who live in one country and work in another;
- students and young people at boarding schools or colleges and those who travel or work temporarily during their holidays;
- musicians or artists tour;
- refugees;
- nomads;
- people travelling to attend meetings or for assignments (sports, scientific, management). Employees of large organizations on assignments abroad for less than one year;
- visitors from cruise ships even if their stay is less than 24 hours;
- people travelling for business (employees of commercial or industrial firms) who are travelling to install machinery or equipment abroad, etc.) ;
- diplomats, embassy staff, members of armed forces stationed abroad (including their service personnel and people accompanying them) ;
- transit passengers who cross the country in more or less than 24 hours;
- transit passengers who do not leave the transit area in the airport or at the port.

<i>Visitors included in tourism statistics</i>	<i>Visitors excluded from tourism statistics</i>
1)...	1)...
2)...	2)...
3)...	3)...
4)...	4)...

**Task 8. Choose the country you like the most. Then answer these questions about it.**

- 1) What forms of tourism are best developed in it?
- 2) Is domestic tourism popular in this country? If yes, give your grounds. If no, why not?
- 3) What are the main motives for travelling in the chosen country?
- 4) What categories of foreign visitors are most frequent in it?
- 5) Are there many commuters in it? Why (not)?
- 6) What do you know about excursionist tourism in the chosen country?
- 7) Where do people of this nationality prefer to spend their holidays? Why?
- 8) What other personal motives for travelling make these people move around?
- 9) What are the latest trends in tourism of this country?

**Task 9. Make the test.**

- 1) A tie is an item of clothes that is worn on:
 

a) neck;	c) wrist;
b) hip;	d) ankle.
  
- 2) Often 10% or 15% added to the restaurant bill. It is known as:
 

a) service;	c) charging;
b) service charge;	d) demand.
  
- 3) The level of administrative charges for changing money made by the hotel or bank is called:
 

a) commission rate;	c) points;
b) bonus;	d) earning.
  
- 4) Notes and coins from another country are known as:
 

a) cash;	c) foreign currency;
b) money;	d) foreigners.
  
- 5) The hotel should \_\_\_\_\_ the bill so that guests can see the cost of each item.
 

a) say;	c) explain;
b) itemize;	d) underline in.
  
- 6) At the end of their stay, guests \_\_\_\_\_ at reception.
 

a) checking out;	c) check in;
b) check out;	d) say good bye.
  
- 7) People who often use the same hotel are called:



		<b>Breakfast</b> on the lake.
<b>bellboy</b> <i>noun</i>	a staff member who helps guests with their luggage	The <b>bellboy</b> will take your bags to your room for you.
<b>book</b> <i>verb</i>	arrange to stay in a hotel	I can <b>book</b> your family in for the weekend of the seventh.
<b>booked</b> <i>adj</i>	full, no vacancies	I'm afraid the hotel is <b>booked</b> tonight.
<b>brochures</b> <i>noun</i>	small booklets that provide information on the local sites and attractions	Feel free to take some <b>brochures</b> to your room to look at.
<b>check-in</b> <i>verb</i>	go to the front desk to receive keys	You can <b>check-in</b> anytime after four o'clock.
<b>check-out</b> <i>noun</i>	return the keys and pay for the bill	Please return your parking pass when you <b>check-out</b> .
<b>complimentary breakfast</b> <i>noun</i>	free of charge	All of our rooms have <b>complimentary</b> soap, shampoo, and coffee.
<b>cot, rollaway bed</b> <i>noun</i>	a single bed on wheels that folds up	If you need an extra bed, we have <b>cots</b> available.
<b>damage charge</b> <i>noun</i>	money a guest owes for repairs to hotel property (when caused by violent or careless acts)	We will have to add a <b>damage charge</b> for the hole you put in the wall.
<b>deposit</b> <i>noun</i>	amount paid ahead of time to secure a reservation	You will not receive your <b>deposit</b> back if you cancel.
<b>double bed</b> <i>noun</i>	a bed large enough for two people	They are a family of four, so give them a room with two <b>double beds</b> .
<b>floor</b> <i>noun</i>	a level of the building	The swimming pool is on the main <b>floor</b> .
<b>front desk, reception</b>	the place where guests go	Towels are available at

<i>noun</i>	to check in and out and to get information	the <b>front desk</b> .
<b>guest</b> <i>noun</i>	a person that is staying at the hotel	Our washrooms are for <b>guests</b> only.
<b>hostel</b> <i>noun</i>	a very inexpensive place for backpackers and travelers on a budget	In the <b>hostel</b> you probably won't get your own room.
<b>hotel manager</b> <i>noun</i>	person in charge at the hotel	I'll let you make your complaint to the <b>hotel manager</b> .
<b>housekeeping, maid</b> <i>noun</i>	staff members that clean the rooms and linen	Put a sign on the door if you want <b>housekeeping</b> to come in and change the sheets on the bed.
<b>ice machine</b> <i>noun</i>	a machine that automatically makes ice that guests can use to keep drinks cold	There is an <b>ice machine</b> by the elevator on all of the even numbered floors.
<b>indoor pool</b> <i>noun</i>	place for guests to swim inside the hotel	The heated <b>indoor pool</b> is open until 10 pm.
<b>inn</b> <i>noun</i>	another word for «hotel»	There's an <b>inn</b> on the other side of town that has a vacancy.
<b>Jacuzzi, hot tub, whirl pool</b> <i>noun</i>	a small hot pool for relaxation	Our honeymoon room has a personal <b>hot tub</b> .
<b>king-size bed</b> <i>noun</i>	extra large bed	A room with a <b>king size bed</b> costs an extra ten dollars a night.
<b>kitchenette</b> <i>noun</i>	a small fridge and cooking area	Your room has a <b>kitchenette</b> so you can prepare your own breakfasts and lunches.
<b>late charge</b> <i>noun</i>	a fee for staying past the check-out time	You will be charged a ten dollar <b>late charge</b> for

		checking out after 11 am.
<b>linen</b> <i>noun</i>	sheets, blankets, pillow cases	We will come in and change the <b>linens</b> while you are out of your room.
<b>lobby</b> <i>noun</i>	large open area at the front of the hotel	You can stand in the <b>lobby</b> and wait for your bus.
<b>luggage cart</b> <i>noun</i>	a device on wheels that guests can push their luggage on	Please return the <b>luggage cart</b> to the lobby when you are finished with it.
<b>maximum capacity</b> <i>noun</i>	the most amount of people allowed	The <b>maximum capacity</b> in the hot tub is ten people.
<b>motels</b> <i>noun</i>	accommodations that are slightly cheaper than hotels	Our <b>motel</b> is very clean and is close to the beach.
<b>noisy</b> <i>adj</i>	loud	The guests next to you have complained that you are being too <b>noisy</b> .
<b>parking pass</b> <i>noun</i>	a piece of paper that guests display in the car window while in the hotel parking lot	Display this <b>parking pass</b> in your window to show that you are a hotel guest.
<b>pay-per-view movie</b> <i>noun</i>	extra charge for movies and special television features	If you order a <b>pay-per-view</b> movie, the charge will appear on your bill.
<b>pillow case</b> <i>noun</i>	the covering that goes over a pillow	Room 201 doesn't need their sheets changed, but they requested one new <b>pillow case</b> .
<b>queen size bed</b> <i>noun</i>	bed with plenty of space for two people (bigger than a double)	They have a <b>queen size bed</b> so the small child can easily fit in the middle.
<b>rate</b> <i>noun</i>	cost of renting a room for a certain time period	Our <b>rates</b> change depending on the season.
<b>reservation</b>	a request to save a specific	They say they made

<i>noun</i>	room for a future date	a <b>reservation</b> but it doesn't show on the computer.
<b>room service</b> <i>noun</i>	delivery of food or other services requested by guests	If you would like a bottle of wine, just call <b>room service</b> .
<b>sauna</b> <i>noun</i>	a hot room for relaxation, filled with steam	We don't recommend bringing young children into the <b>sauna</b> .
<b>single bed</b> <i>noun</i>	a bed for one person	The economy priced room includes one <b>single bed</b> .
<b>sofa bed, pull-out couch</b> <i>noun</i>	a bed built into a sofa or couch	The room contains a <b>sofa bed</b> so the room actually sleeps five.
<b>towels</b> <i>noun</i>	used to cover and dry the body after swimming or bathing	You can get your swimming pool <b>towels</b> at the front desk.
<b>vacancy</b> <i>noun</i> <b>vacant</b> <i>adj</i>	available rooms	We only have one <b>vacancy</b> left, and it is for a single room.
<b>valet</b> <i>noun</i>	staff that parks the guests' vehicles	If you leave your car keys with us, the <b>valet</b> will park your car underground.
<b>vending machine</b> <i>noun</i>	a machine that distributes snacks and beverages when you insert coins	The <b>vending machine</b> on the fifth floor has chocolate bars and chips.
<b>view</b> <i>noun</i>	a window that offers a nice image for guests	The room is more expensive because it has a spectacular <b>view</b> of the beach.
<b>wake up call</b> <i>noun</i>	a morning phone call from the front desk, acts as an alarm clock	What time would you like your <b>wake up call</b> ?
<b>weight room, workout room, gym</b>	a room that guests can use for exercise and fitness	Our <b>weight room</b> has a stair climber and a

<i>noun</i>		stationary bicycle.
-------------	--	---------------------

**Task 2. Look again to the words in task 1. Make your own sentences with each word and phrase.**

**Task 3. Look through some typical phrases and expressions to use when a guest makes a booking to stay at the hotel.**

### **Front Desk Receptionist**

- 1) Enterprise Hotels, Lise speaking. How can I help you?
- 2) What date are you looking for?
- 3) How long will you be staying?
- 4) How many adults will be in the room?
- 5) I'm afraid we are booked that weekend.
- 6) There are only a few vacancies left.
- 7) We advise that you book in advance during peak season.
- 8) Will two double beds be enough?
- 9) Do you want a smoking or non-smoking room?
- 10) The dining room is open from 4 pm until 10 pm.
- 11) We have an indoor swimming pool and sauna.
- 12) We serve a continental breakfast.
- 13) Cable television is included, but the movie channel is extra.
- 14) Take Exit 8 off the highway and you'll see us a few kilometers up on the left hand side.
- 15) The rate I can give you is 99.54 with tax.
- 16) We require a credit card number for a deposit.

### **Guest**

- 1) I'd like to make a reservation for next week.
- 2) Is it necessary to book ahead?
- 3) Do you charge extra for two beds?
- 4) How much is it for a cot?
- 5) Do you offer free breakfast?
- 6) Is there a restaurant in the hotel?
- 7) Do the rooms have refrigerators?
- 8) Do you do group bookings?
- 9) Is there an outdoor pool?
- 10) Do you have any cheaper rooms?
- 11) When is it considered off- season?

**Task 4. Read the conversation between the receptionist and the caller. Roleplay it with your colleagues. Write down new words and phrases which you have learned.**

**Receptionist:** Thanks for calling Quality Inn. Morine speaking.

**Caller:** Hello. I'm interested in booking a room for the September long weekend.

**Receptionist:** I'm afraid we're totally booked for that weekend. There's a convention in town and we're the closest hotel to the convention centre.

**Caller:** Oh, I didn't realize. Well what about the weekend after that?

**Receptionist:** So... Friday the seventeenth?

**Caller:** Yes. Friday and Saturday.

**Receptionist:** It looks like we have a few vacancies left. We recommend that you make a reservation, though. It's still considered peak season then.

**Caller:** Okay. Do you have any rooms with two double beds? We're a family of four.

**Receptionist:** Yes, all of our rooms have two double beds. The rate for that weekend is \$129 dollars a night.

**Caller:** That's reasonable. And do you have cots? One of my daughters might be bringing a friend.

**Receptionist:** We do, but we also charge an extra ten dollars per person for any family with over four people. The cot is free.

**Caller:** Okay, but I'm not positive if she is coming. Can we pay when we arrive?

**Receptionist:** Yes, but we do require a fifty dollar credit card deposit to hold the room. You can cancel up to five days in advance and we will refund your deposit.

**Caller:** Great, I'll call you right back. I have to find my husband's credit card.

**Receptionist:** Okay. Oh, and just to let you know...our outdoor pool will be closed, but our indoor pool is open.

**Task 5. Test your understanding of the conversation in task 4 with this quiz.**

1) Why did the caller phone the hotel?

- a) to change a reservation
- b) to report a cancellation
- c) to inquire about available rooms

2) The caller can't stay on the September long weekend because the hotel

- a) is fully booked
- b) is hosting a convention
- c) is closed for the season

3) What will the caller do before calling back?

- a) research other hotels
- b) discuss it with her husband

- c) find a credit card to pay the deposit

**Task 6. Read the typical phrases and expressions which are used when a guest checks in or checks out of the hotel.**

Note that the verbs *check in* and *check out* are separable phrasal verbs. So Mr Brown can *check in*. And you can *check* Mr Brown *in*, or you can *check in* Mr Brown. Using a pronoun (e.g. *him*), you can *check* him *in*. But you cannot *check in* him. The same is true for *check out*.

## Check In

### Front Desk Receptionist

- 1) What name is the reservation under?
- 2) How long will you be staying?
- 3) Are you planning on checking out tomorrow?
- 4) I'm afraid you can't check in until after 4:00 pm.
- 5) What type of vehicle are you driving?
- 6) Do you know the license plate number of your vehicle?
- 7) Complimentary breakfast is served in the lobby between 8 and 10 am.
- 8) I'll give you two room keys.
- 9) The dining room is on the main floor at the end of the hall.
- 10) The weight room and sauna are on the top floor.
- 11) Just call the front desk if you need any extra towels or pillows.

### Guest

- 1) We have a reservation under Jill McMann.
- 2) Do you have any vacancies?
- 3) Is the hotel booked, or can we get a room for tonight?
- 4) How do we get to our room from here?
- 5) Is it okay to park out front?
- 6) What time is the pool open until?
- 7) What time is breakfast served at?
- 8) Is it too early to check in?
- 9) Can we get a wake-up call?
- 10) When is check out time?

## Check Out

### Front Desk Receptionist

- 1) Are you ready to check out?
- 2) What room were you in?
- 3) How was your stay?
- 4) Was everything satisfactory?

- 5) Will you be putting this on your card?
- 6) And how will you be paying for this?
- 7) Would you like to speak to the hotel manager on duty?
- 8) I'll just need your room keys, please.
- 9) Enjoy the rest of your holiday.
- 10) Have a safe trip home.

### **Guest**

- 1) We're checking out of room 401.
- 2) Sorry we're a bit late checking out.
- 3) I'm afraid we overslept/slept in.
- 4) We really enjoyed our stay.
- 5) We have a few complaints.
- 6) We'll be back next time we're in town.

**Task 7. Read the conversation between the receptionist and guest. Roleplay it with your colleagues.**

**Receptionist:** Hi there. Are you checking out now?

**Guest:** Yes, sorry. I know we're a few minutes late.

**Receptionist:** That's no problem. It's always really busy at check out time anyway.

**Guest:** Oh, really. The last hotel we stayed in charged us for a late check out.

**Receptionist:** The hotel isn't booked this week, so it's not a problem. How was everything?

**Guest:** The room was great. The beds were really comfortable, and we weren't expecting our own fridge.

**Receptionist:** I'm glad you liked it.

**Guest:** The kids were disappointed that the pool wasn't open this morning, though.

**Receptionist:** I apologize for that. We can't get a cleaner in any earlier than 10 am.

**Guest:** Well we had a nice swim last night anyhow.

**Receptionist:** Will you be putting this on your credit card?

**Guest:** No. I'll pay cash.

**Receptionist:** OK. So the total comes to \$123.67, including tax.

**Guest:** I thought it was \$115 even. That's what they said yesterday when we checked in.

**Receptionist:** Yes, but there is an extra room charge on your bill.

**Guest:** Oh, I forgot. My husband ordered a plate of nachos. Sorry.

**Receptionist:** No problem. So...from \$140, here's your change. Now, I'll just need to ask you for your room keys.

**Task 8. Test your understanding of the conversation in task 7 with this quiz.**

- 1) Why does the guest apologize when she arrives at the front desk?
  - a) she forgot to pay
  - b) she is late checking out
  - c) her credit card isn't working
  
- 2) Which of the following did the woman's family NOT like about the hotel?
  - a) the pool hours
  - b) the room rates
  - c) the bed linen
  
- 3) What was the woman charged for besides the room rate?
  - a) telephone use
  - b) room service
  - c) pool towels

**Task 9. Repeat the words and phrases which you have learned during this practical lesson. Make this test below.**

- 1) If you've never been to this city, you should take a look at our sight-seeing
  - a) menu
  - b) brochures
  - c) front desk
  
- 2) Sorry, we don't have a \_\_\_\_\_ service. You'll have to park your car yourself.
  - a) room
  - b) laundry
  - c) valet
  
- 3) The room has a pull-\_\_\_\_\_ couch, so it will sleep an extra person.
  - a) off
  - b) over
  - c) out
  
- 4) I'm sorry, but we don't have any vacancies. We are fully-\_\_\_\_\_ tonight.
  - a) vacant
  - b) booked
  - c) closed
  
- 5) After your long conference you can relax in the

- a) kitchenette
- b) parking lot
- c) hot tub

6) I'll call housekeeping and ask them to bring you some fresh

- a) ice
- b) milk
- c) linen

7) If you need to do your workout we have a \_\_\_\_\_ on the third floor.

- a) gym
- b) restaurant
- c) library

8) You might like to voice your complaint about the rate to the

- a) housekeeper
- b) valet driver
- c) hotel manager

9) Please put your used \_\_\_\_\_ in the basket and leave unused ones hanging on the rack.

- a) dishes
- b) towels
- c) tissues

10) If you need a midnight snack there's a \_\_\_\_\_ full of potato chips on your floor.

- a) bellboy
- b) kitchenette
- c) vending machine

**Task 10. Learn the words about types of food. Think over the examples in which these words are being used.**

**1) agriculture** (noun): farming, incl. growing food crops and raising animals

- *If you study agriculture, you'll learn about the techniques and science of farming.*

**2) bean** (noun): an edible seed, often kidney-shaped, that grows in a long seed pod

- *Lima beans, kidney beans and coffee beans were first cultivated in South America.*

**3) cultivate** (verb): to grow plants for food or other products

- *The British Empire cultivated opium poppies in India and sold the opium in China.*

**4) dairy food** (noun): food made from milk, like butter, cheese and yoghurt

- *Dairy foods are a good source of protein.*

**5) domesticate** (verb): to tame animals and keep them for food, work or as pets

- *Animals want to be free, so domesticating them can be difficult.*

**6) grain** (noun): seeds used as food, like wheat, rice and millet.

- *Different grains are used to make different kinds of bread.*

**7) honey** (noun): a sweet and sticky food made by bees

- *My kids love honey on their toast.*

**8) insects** (noun): small animals with six legs such as bees, ants and flies

- *Our Thai friends like eating deep-fried insects.*

**9) nut** (noun): a hard, dry fruit with an edible seed inside a hard shell, such as a peanut or walnut - *He sat at the bar drinking beer and eating nuts.*

**10) poultry** (noun): Birds that people eat, like chickens, ducks, geese, etc

- *Most farmers keep some poultry so they don't have to buy eggs.*

**11) raise** (verb): to keep and look after animals or plants, esp. for food

- *We raised pigs and chickens and grew our own vegetables.*

**12) root** (noun): the parts of a plant that are under the ground

- *Did you know that potatoes and carrots are roots?*

**13) seafood** (noun): anything from the sea that can be eaten

- *Japanese people have always eaten lots of seafood.*

**14) seed** (noun): a small hard plant part that can grow into a new plant

- *We planted some tomato seeds and a few months later we were eating our own tomatoes.*

**15) shellfish** (noun): sea creatures with a hard shell, such as crabs, prawns mussels and oysters

- *Let's order a big plate of fresh shellfish to start with.*

## UNIT 13. Challenging behavior as communication

### Task 1. Read the text about Trans Fats. Retell it in your own words.

#### Trans Fats

Does your **mouth water** when you think of cookies, donuts, burgers and French fries? Many people prefer **junk food** like this to healthy food because they develop a taste for it. **Processed**, baked, and fried foods often contain a high amount of **trans fats**.

Trans fats raise bad **cholesterol** and lower the good cholesterol that your body needs. Fatty foods do more than cause **obesity**. Trans fats build up in the body and block blood flow to the heart. People whose **diet** contains a high percentage of trans fats are at risk of developing heart disease or having a **stroke**.

Trans fat is a semi-solid type of oil. It is made by adding **hydrogen** to liquid oil. Food companies and restaurants choose to use trans fat oils because they're cheap and they make food like crackers and baked goods last longer. They also improve the taste and **texture** of food. Trans fats became very popular in the second half of the 20th century. This is around the time butter got a bad name for its cholesterol levels. People were told to use margarine containing trans fats instead because it was «healthier», but we now know that butter is actually the healthier option.

Today doctors know how dangerous processed foods like margarine can be. In countries such as the US and Canada there are new government **restrictions** on food production. Food and beverage makers must attach a Nutrition Fact label to their products. These list daily recommendations and **detail** all the **ingredients** in a product, including trans fats if they're used. In 2007 New York City **banned** trans fats from all restaurants, and according to recent studies this has prevented hundreds of heart attacks and strokes. Even fast food chains such as McDonalds are being forced to change their recipes as people become more health-conscious. In Europe, food manufacturers have **voluntarily** started using labels that clearly show how healthy each product is according to a simple rating system.

We all need some fat in our diet. There are three different types of fats: **saturated fats**, unsaturated fats and trans fats. Doctors recommend that we get most of our fatty calories from unsaturated fats. Neither butter nor margarine fit this category, though other spreads like peanut butter do. Reading the list of ingredients on the label is a good way of **avoiding** dangerous ingredients like trans fats. Another way is to avoid eating out, especially in fast food restaurants. Also, when shopping try to buy the **majority** of your food in the fresh-food section and limit the amount of processed and packaged food you buy. You might not think this is important if you're young, but the choices you make now will affect you for the rest of your life. The healthier your diet is now, the longer and healthier your life will be.

**Task 2. Learn the words concerning the text above. Translate them into your own language.**

<b>Word</b>	<b>Meaning</b>
<b>avoid</b> <i>verb</i>	to not use, or to stay away from something
<b>ban</b> <i>verb</i>	to not allow something
<b>cholesterol</b> <i>noun</i>	a substance present in animal fat and tissues; too much can lead to heart disease
<b>detail</b> <i>verb</i>	to describe in full
<b>diet</b> <i>noun</i>	all the foods a person normally eats
<b>hydrogen</b> <i>noun</i>	a colourless gas that burns easily
<b>ingredients</b> <i>noun</i>	all of the foods that go into a meal or food product
<b>junk food</b> <i>noun</i>	unhealthy food, esp. snacks and take-away or take-out food
<b>majority</b> <i>noun</i>	most of the people or things in a group
<b>make sb's mouth water</b> <i>idiom</i>	to make someone want to eat a certain food, esp. after smelling or seeing it
<b>obesity</b> <i>noun</i>	the condition of being very overweight
<b>process</b> <i>verb</i>	to make something with technology and machines in a factory
<b>restriction</b> <i>noun</i>	a rule or regulation that limits what someone can do
<b>saturated fat</b> <i>noun</i>	a type of fat, esp. found in foods like butter, cheese, red meat, etc.
<b>stroke</b> <i>noun</i>	the sudden bursting of a blood vessel in the brain that can cause serious illness or death
<b>texture</b> <i>noun</i>	the way food feels in your mouth, eg. soft, smooth, rough, crunchy, etc.
<b>trans fats</b> (or <b>trans</b> )	artificial fats that make food last longer and

Word	Meaning
<b>fatty acids</b> ) <i>noun</i>	taste better but are bad for health
<b>voluntarily</b> <i>adverb</i>	without being required or forced, or without wanting payment

**Task 3. Read the text about dining. Make 10 questions to your colleagues concerning the information you have read. Let your colleagues answer them.**

## Dining

### *Breakfast, lunch and dinner*

In most parts of the world people have three meals a day. The first is breakfast, then lunch in the middle of the day and dinner in the evening. Most people have breakfast at home, and some take a home-made lunch to work or school. Most people also have dinner at home, and for many modern families **dinnertime** is the only chance we have to get together and talk to one another. At family dinners we don't have to follow the rules of **etiquette** for **formal** dining, but if you go to expensive restaurants or travel for business it's useful to know these rules. You might also need to know them if you're hosting a **dinner party** or having special guests for dinner.

### *Table settings and dining etiquette*

Houses and large apartments often have a **dining room** with a **dining table** that can seat many people. Dining rooms are sometimes used for everyday meals, but often they're only used for big family gatherings, dinner parties or formal meals. If you're hosting a meal like this, you'll probably use your best set of **dinnerware** and cutlery. Before your guests arrive you'll need to **set the table**. Begin by covering the table with a **tablecloth** and then place a **centrepiece** such as **candle sticks** or a flower arrangement in the middle of the table. Then arrange **place settings** around the table, making sure there's a place for everyone, including yourself.

Place settings for formal dinners usually include a **place mat**, or an empty space, in the middle with a **dinner fork** and a smaller salad fork to the left, a **table knife** and **soup spoon** to the right, and a **dessert fork and spoon** across the top. Each place setting also has a **bread plate** and **butter knife** on the left and a drinking glass or **tumbler** and a **wine glass** on the right. Sometimes these glasses are on **coasters**, but only if place mats are used instead of a tablecloth. The place settings for dinner in most hotel dining rooms and fancy restaurants are also like this.

Salad or soup **bowls**, **dinner plates** and dessert bowls are often brought to the table during the meal, and if so they shouldn't be on the table before the meal begins. There should, however, be a folded **napkin** at each guest's place, and if you're serving steak or fish you can add a **steak knife** or **fish knife** as well. **Salt and pepper shakers** and **jugs** full of drinking water should also be on the table. If you're serving

tea or coffee after the meal, bring **cups and saucers** as well as a sugar bowl, teaspoons and a small jug of milk or cream to the table.

**Task 4. Learn the new words. Repeat the words you are already familiar with.**

**1) bowl** (noun): a round dish for soup, salad or a serving of dessert

- *Where are the soup bowls?*

**2) bread plate** (noun): a small plate for buttering bread rolls

- *We need a bread plate for each guest.*

**3) butter knife** (noun): a knife with a blunt, rounded end for spreading butter

- *There should be a butter knife with each guest's bread plate.*

**4) candlestick** (noun): a holder, usually tall and thin, for one or more candles

- *If it's a romantic dinner for two, you'll need candlesticks.*

**5) centrepiece (US spelling «centerpiece»)** (noun): a display placed in the middle of a dining table

- *Did you arrange the flower centrepiece yourself?*

**6) coaster** (noun): a small mat or flat object under a bottle or glass that protects the table

- *Put out some coasters or there'll be round stains on the table.*

**7) cup and saucer** (noun): a small plate and matching cup for tea or coffee

- *Do dinnerware sets usually include cups and saucers?*

**8) dessert fork and spoon** (noun): a three-pronged fork with an oval spoon for eating desserts from a bowl or plate

- *Can we have an extra dessert fork and spoon, please?*

**9) dining room** (noun): the room in a house or hotel where meals are eaten

- *Do we really need such a big dining room?*

**10) dining table (also «dinner table»)** (noun): a table at which several people can sit together to eat

- *How many people can you fit around your dining table?*

**11) dinner fork** (noun): an eating utensil with four prongs used during a main course

- *Why do Americans hold a dinner fork in the right hand?*

**12) dinner party** (noun): a dinner in someone's home to which guests are invited

- *Can you come to our dinner party on Saturday night?*

**13) dinner plate** (noun): a flat dish for eating a meal's main course

- *You haven't broken another dinner plate, have you?*

**14) dinnertime** (noun): the time of day usually spent eating dinner

- *I only see my kids at dinnertime these days.*

**15) dinnerware** (also «**dishware or table service**») (noun): a set of matching plates, bowls, cups, saucers etc. for several people

- *Where did you get this beautiful dinnerware?*

**16) etiquette** (noun): rules for behaving correctly in social situations

- *I had to learn all the etiquette before my first business trip to Europe.*

**17) fish knife** (noun): a knife with a wide blade for eating fish

- *Can you lend us your fish knives for the dinner party?*

**18) formal** (adjective): requiring official or social rules be followed

- *If it's a formal occasion, wear a suit and tie.*

**19) napkin** (also UK «**serviette**») (noun): a cloth or paper towel for wiping your mouth and hands while eating

- *Can you bring some more napkins, please?*

**20) place mat** (noun): a flat piece of cloth, plastic or wood at the centre of each place setting on a dining table

- *There's a lovely set of eight place mats in that shop.*

**21) place setting** (noun): dishes, glasses and cutlery arranged in place for one person

- *Do you know how to make place settings for a formal meal?*

**22) set the table** (verb): to arrange place settings for everyone on a dining table

- *Can you set the table? Dinner's nearly ready.*

**23) shaker** (noun): a container for salt, pepper, chili powder, etc. with small holes from which the contents are shaken out

- *I love those salt and pepper shakers shaped like dogs.*

**24) soup spoon** (noun): a round or oval spoon for eating soup

- *Do you put soup spoons on the left or the right when you set the table?*

**25) steak knife** (noun): a knife with a serrated blade for diners to cut steak at the table

- *The waiter forgot to bring us steak knives.*

**26) tablecloth** (noun): a large cloth for covering a dining table

- *Have we got a clean tablecloth? This one's got stains on it.*

**27) table knife** (noun): the knife used for eating a main course

- *Table knives are bigger than butter knives, aren't they?*

**28) tumbler** (noun): a drinking glass with straight sides and no stem or handle

- *The tumblers are in a cupboard in the kitchen.*

**29) water jug (also US «pitcher»)** (noun): a large container with a handle from which drinking water is poured

- *The water jug's nearly empty.*

**30) wine glass** (noun): a glass with a long stem and a wide base for drinking wine

- *I poured water in my wine glass and someone laughed. I didn't know the etiquette.*

**Task 5. Look at the tests below. Choose the correct answer.**

1) When is dining etiquette strictly followed?

- a) at family breakfasts
- b) at school lunches
- c) at formal dinners

2) If you have to «set the table», you must do it \_\_\_\_\_ the meal.

- a) before
- b) during
- c) after

3) What does a dinnerware set include?

- a) cooking pots
- b) dinner plates
- c) a dining table

4) On a dining table, everyone has their own \_\_\_\_\_ .

- a) tablecloth
- b) place setting
- c) centrepiece

5) What's placed on a coaster?

- a) a glass
- b) a bowl
- c) a dish

6) Which should be the sharpest?

- a) a butter knife
- b) a fish knife
- c) a steak knife

7) Which word has the same meaning as «jug»?

- a) shaker

b) tumbler

c) pitcher

8) Which is usually used first?

a) a dessert fork

b) a table knife

c) a soup spoon

9) If you need to wipe your mouth at the table, use your

a) tablecloth

b) napkin

c) place mat

10) After a meal, what are dinner guests usually offered?

a) tea or coffee

b) salt or pepper

c) water or wine

**Task 6. Read the text about meat and poultry. Think of the information or interesting facts you can add to it.**

### **Meat and Poultry**

Many different animals and birds have been hunted in the wild, but only a few have been raised for their **meat**. In the ancient civilizations of Egypt, India, China and Greece people raised pigs, sheep, cattle and **poultry** like chickens and ducks, and all these are still being raised today. Even though much has changed since ancient times, the kinds of meat and poultry we eat today are still mostly the same.

#### *Meat*

In a modern supermarket we see the same meats, although the **cuts** may have changed. Today's cuts of **beef** include topside, **spare ribs** and **steaks** like fillet and T-bone steak as well as various cuts of **veal**. We also see legs of **lamb** and lamb **chops** as well as **mutton** from older sheep. Many cuts of **pork** are also seen, including legs of pork, pork chops and pork spare ribs as well as **cured** pig meats like **bacon** and **ham**. Meats of all kinds are **diced** for making dishes like stew or **minced** to make **sausages**, meat pies and hamburger patties.

Rabbit and goat meat is also eaten in many places, as are various kinds of **offal** like liver, kidney, heart, **tripe** and brains. Offal and meats like ox tongue, sheep's head and pig's feet or «trotters» are often eaten by people who can't afford more expensive meats, or in places where every edible part of a **slaughtered** animal is cooked and eaten. In ancient times people also hunted **game** like wild boar, deer, quail and pheasant, and all these meats are also eaten today, especially in expensive restaurants.

## **Poultry**

Birds kept as poultry include chickens, ducks, geese and turkeys. Whole birds can be boiled or roasted, or they can be cut into pieces before being cooked. When eating fried chicken, for example, we can eat pieces of **breast** or wings or **drumsticks**. Eggs from poultry are also an important type of food, with chicken eggs being the most popular. When shopping, you can choose to buy **free-range** poultry or free-range eggs if you don't like factory farming in which birds are kept in small cages and never allowed to range freely in the outside world.

**Task 7. Learn the words below. Make the dialogue with your colleagues including these words. Write them down.**

**1) bacon** (noun): meat from the back or sides of a pig that's cured and sliced  
- *We had bacon and eggs every morning when I was a kid.*

**2) beef** (noun): meat from a cow, bull or ox  
- *We're having roast beef and vegetables for dinner.*

**3) breast** (noun): meat from the front of a bird  
- *Who'd like another piece of chicken breast?*

**4) chop** (noun): a small cut of meat, usually lamb or pork, from near the ribs  
- *Could you get some pork chops from the supermarket, please?*

**5) cure** (verb): to preserve meat by smoking, salting or drying  
- *Ham and bacon can be cured by salting or smoking.*

**6) cut** (noun): a piece of meat cut from a certain part of an animal  
- *That butcher on High Street has the best cuts of beef.*

**7) dice** (verb): to cut food into small cubes or square-shaped pieces  
- *A steak and kidney pie contains diced meat and gravy.*

**8) drumstick** (noun): a cooked chicken leg  
- *Don't eat all the drumsticks!*

**9) free-range** (adjective): (of poultry) free to live naturally outside instead of being kept inside a farm building  
- *Make sure you get free-range eggs.*

**10) game** (noun): 1. wild animals and birds hunted by people  
2. meat from hunted animals and birds  
- *The only places that serve game these days are expensive restaurants.*

**11) ham** (noun): cured meat from a pig's upper leg, usually sliced  
- *I'll have a ham sandwich, please.*

**12) lamb** (noun): 1. a young sheep  
2. meat from a young sheep  
- *People have been eating lamb for thousands of years.*

**13) meat** (noun): animal or bird flesh eaten as food  
- *Jason quit eating meat, but he still eats fish and seafood.*

**14) mince** (verb): to cut meat into tiny pieces, often with a machine called a mincer  
- *If you get some minced beef I'll make hamburgers for dinner.*

**15) mutton** (noun): meat from an adult sheep  
- *David thinks they put mutton in the curry instead of lamb.*

**16) offal** (noun): organs from an animal or bird eaten as food, like liver, heart and kidney  
- *In the past everyone ate offal, but I've never tried it.*

**17) pork** (noun): meat from a pig  
- *Do you know which religions forbid the eating of pork?*

**18) poultry** (noun): 1. birds kept for their meat or eggs  
2. meat from these birds  
- *We serve meat, fish and poultry, all with salad or vegetables.*

**19) sausage** (noun): minced meat in a long tube of skin, usually fried  
- *How many sausages are you taking to the barbecue?*

**20) slaughter** (verb): to kill an animal for its meat  
- *Have you ever seen animals being slaughtered in a slaughterhouse?*

**21) spare ribs** (noun): a cut of pork or beef that contains rib bones  
- *Last night I dreamed about eating spare ribs.*

**22) steak** (noun): a thick slice of high-quality beef  
- *I don't think steak and chips is a very healthy dinner for kids.*

**23) tripe** (noun): the stomach of a sheep or cow eaten as food  
- *My uncle likes tripe, but I think it's awful.*

**24) veal** (noun): meat from a calf or young cow  
- *I'll have the veal with garden vegetables, please.*

**Task 8. Discuss what kind of meat you like to prepare most. What kind of meat tastes better for you? What kind of meat is the most useful? Justify your point of view.**

**Task 9. Maybe you like the fish? What do you think about the fish and seafood? Read the text and retell it. Would you like to add something? Or perhaps you may disagree with some points?**

## **Fish and Seafood**

Another important type of food is **seafood**, which includes many kinds of **fish** as well as **shellfish** and other sea creatures like **squid**. Some kinds of seafood are raised in ponds or in cages in the sea, but most of the fish we eat are taken alive from the ocean by big commercial fishing boats. Commercial fishing has done a lot of damage by overfishing and by **trawling** with huge nets that can catch everything, including fish too small to sell and other sea creatures like dolphins. But if you like fishing, don't worry. This sort of damage isn't caused by people who go fishing in small boats or who fish with a fishing rod.

### ***Fish***

Fish are an important source of protein that can be eaten raw, as in Japanese **sashimi**, or kept for future use by being pickled, as in **pickled** herring, by being smoked, as in smoked salmon, or by being canned, as in **canned** tuna. But most fish is cooked either by frying, baking, grilling or steaming. It can be cooked whole, or cut into large pieces called **fillets**, or cut into small pieces and used to make soup, curry, stew, etc. But however you eat your fish, watch out for bones!

The most widely-eaten fish include salmon, tuna, snapper, mackerel, cod, trout, carp, catfish and sardines. Most of these are caught in the sea or in lakes and rivers, but edible fish are also raised in ponds. In Chinese **aquaculture**, fish like the grass carp have been raised for nearly four thousand years, but the first known example of aquaculture is a complex of ponds and canals built by the Gunditjmarra people of Australia over eight thousand years ago to farm **eel**, a long, thin, snake-like fish that's still eaten today.

### ***Seafood***

Many other sea creatures can also be eaten, including some with an outer shell you have to remove before getting to the soft flesh inside. This type of seafood includes **lobsters**, crabs, **crayfish**, **prawns** and shrimp, a smaller relative of the prawn. Others live inside a very hard shell that can be difficult to open, and these include **oysters**, mussels, scallops and periwinkles. In some places the word «shellfish» covers both these kinds of seafood, but in others it only means the latter kind with very hard shells. Other edible sea creatures like the squid and the **octopus** have soft bodies and no shell, but long arms that help them move quickly

through the water. Fish eggs called **roe** can also be eaten, and one of the most high-class and expensive foods in the world is sturgeon roe, also known as **caviar**.

**Task 10. Look through these words. Repeat those that you already know. Learn those you are not familiar with. There are examples where these words can be used. Make your own examples.**

**1) aquaculture** (noun): the raising of fish and other aquatic animals for food  
- *Aquaculture was invented by Aboriginal Australians long before agriculture developed.*

**2) canned** (adjective): preserved in a metal can without air  
- *You can use canned tuna to make tuna salad.*

**3) caviar** (noun): the eggs of the sturgeon fish sold as an expensive food  
- *Why do people think caviar is so special? It's just fish eggs.*

**4) crayfish** (noun): a freshwater creature that looks like a small lobster  
- *In Australia, people used to call lobsters "crayfish".*

**5) eel** (noun): a long fish that looks like a snake  
- *Eels are hard to hold because they're so slippery.*

**6) fillet** (noun): one side of a fish with the bones taken out  
- *It's easy to overcook salmon fillets, so be careful.*

**7) fish** (noun): 1. an animal that lives and swims in water and breathes through gills  
2. the flesh of these animals  
- *I eat fish three or four times a week.*

**8) fish** (verb): to catch fish with a fishing rod, a net or a spear  
- *Let's go fishing next weekend.*

**9) lobster** (noun): a sea creature with a hard shell, eight legs, two claws and eyes on long stalks  
- *I ordered steamed lobster tails.*

**10) octopus** (noun): a sea creature with a soft round body, no shell, and eight arms called tentacles  
- *We shouldn't eat highly intelligent animals like octopuses.*

**11) oyster** (noun): shellfish with a rough shell in which pearls can grow  
- *Let's order a plate of oysters.*

**12) pickled** (adjective): preserved in salt water or vinegar

- *Have you ever tried pickled herring?*

**13) prawn** (noun): a sea creature with a thin shell and ten small legs

- *If you squeeze the tail of a prawn, the flesh comes out.*

**14) roe** (noun): all the eggs inside a female fish

- *Roe are taken from many kinds of fish and eaten in many different ways.*

**15) sashimi** (noun): a Japanese dish of raw fish eaten with soy sauce

- *The sashimi here is supposed to be really good.*

**16) seafood** (noun): food from the sea, incl. fish, shellfish, fish eggs, etc.

- *This is my favourite seafood restaurant.*

**17) shellfish** (noun): edible sea creatures with a shell, like lobsters and oysters

- *People living near the sea have always eaten shellfish.*

**18) squid** (verb): a sea creature with a soft body, eight arms and two long tentacles

- *Do you know how to cook squid?*

**19) trawl** (verb): to catch sea creatures, esp. fish, by pulling a large net behind a boat

- *If commercial trawling continues like this, there'll be no fish here in future.*

**Task 11. Make the dialogue using these words. Work with your colleagues. Present the results of your work to the professor.**

## II. METHODOLOGICAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR STUDENTS' INDEPENDENT WORK

### UNIT 1. Social Interaction

**Exercise 1. Write the opposites to the following words:**

*inhabited* island

*inbound* tourism

*business* tourism

a *penalty* to the employee

not to *cover* expenses

*healthy* people

**Exercise 2. Fill in the correct prepositions and make the sentences.**

- 1) to send the staff ... FAM tour;
- 2) to travel ... different missions;
- 3) ... the same time;
- 4) the purpose ... tourism;
- 5) a great deal ... special interest holidays;
- 6) to collect information ... trade partners;
- 7) to get familiar ... new destinations;
- 8) as a matter ... fact.

**Exercise 3. Give definitions to the following terms. Do it as in the example:**

*E. g. Special-interest tourism is a type of tourism which involves journeys for people who share the same hobby.*

- 1) Leisure tourism is a type of tourism which involves\_\_\_\_\_.
- 2) Sports tourism is a type of tourism which\_\_\_\_\_.
- 3) Incentive tourism is a type of tourism\_\_\_\_\_.
- 4) Convention tourism is\_\_\_\_\_.
- 5) Third-age tourism\_\_\_\_\_.
- 6) Fourth-age tourism\_\_\_\_\_.
- 7) Familiarization tourism\_\_\_\_\_.

**Exercise 4. Carry out a mini-survey to find out what kind of visitors travel to your area. Draw up a questionnaire and use it to interview approximately 50 visitors in the streets of your town or at a local attraction.**

For example, you could find out:

- the visitor`s place of origin;
- to length of their visit;
- the purpose of their visit;
- the type of accommodation used (if any);

- the type of transport used;
- whether this is their first or subsequent visit;

Remember to plan your survey well in advance: make sure that the questions you intend to ask can be clearly understood and easily answered. Test them on your friends first to make sure of this.

Remember also, that often people do not like to be stopped to answer survey questionnaires, so be polite and friendly and try to keep the number of questions to the minimum.

When you have completed your survey, combine the results of the whole class and represent the findings of the survey in the forms of graphs or charts.

## **UNIT 2. Cultural influences**

### **Exercise 1. Read the text and translate it.**

#### **The Origins of Mass Tourism**

In the late eighteenth century, sea water gained a reputation for its medicinal properties and as a result many British coastal fishing villages were transformed into fashionable resorts. Brighton and Weymouth both became popular with genteel holidaymakers after George III paid them a visit to try and cure the fits of madness from which he suffered. The earliest organization of anything that we would recognize today as tourism started in the mid-nineteenth century. Thomas Cook is historically credited with organizing the first ever tourist excursion in 1841 when he sold tickets for a train ride from Leicester to Loughborough. Methodist missionary Henry Lunn pioneered the skiing holiday just a few years later.

It was the Industrial Revolution that really began to open up tourism to the working classes. As a result of the widespread social and technological reforms a new middle class grew up, whose increased prosperity meant that they could afford to travel. The Bank Holiday Act of Parliament in 1871, creating four annual public holidays and the Factory Act of 1901, which gave the first ever paid annual holiday of six days, provided the necessary legislation to give the working British public leisure time at no financial loss.

The new railways provided cheap travel to seaside resorts. Public holidays would see a mass exodus from the large cities of Manchester, Liverpool and Leeds to the coast, for people to be entertained at fun-fairs and shows catering to the tastes of the working man.

People were also becoming aware of a world outside their own direct experience. Soldiers travelling to foreign countries saw opportunities and wanted to return in peacetime. The colonial areas brought India, Australia, Africa and other parts of the world into the spotlight of the European colonial powers. The advent of photography provided visual evidence of the existence of the exotic and began to stir interest among the more adventurers to see sights for themselves. The Taj Mahal, the

Pyramids and the Sphinx and the Statue of Liberty are all examples of famous tourist attractions which we travel to see in real life because we've seen pictures of them.

In only century the holiday has changed beyond recognition. In 1890 a typical family holiday would be a day trip to the nearest seaside town. Armed with bucket and spade and a picnic, the family would take advantage of the cheap-one-day excursions offered by the private companies who ran the new railway network. The 2000s family, however, is likely to take a two-week package tour to the Mediterranean, where the whole holiday will be paid for before leaving home and one can enjoy the guaranteed sunshine.

(«*The Good Tourist*», Wood K. and House S., 1992)

### Exercise 2. Translate and transcribe the following words:

<i>property</i>	<i>annual</i>	<i>genteel</i>	<i>legislation</i>	<i>cure</i>	<i>leisure</i>
<i>methodist</i>	<i>financial</i>	<i>pioneer</i>	<i>exodus</i>	<i>widespread</i>	<i>foreign</i>
<i>technological</i>	<i>visual</i>	<i>increase</i>	<i>guaranteed</i>		

### Exercise 3. Answer the questions to the text.

- 1) Why were many British coastal fishing villages transformed into fashionable resorts?
- 2) Who made sea water resorts popular with genteel holidaymakers?
- 3) Who organized the first train ride in the history of tourism?
- 4) How did the Industrial Revolution contribute to the development of tourism?
- 5) What documents provided necessary legislation to give the working public holidays at no financial loss?
- 6) What opportunities did soldiers see in foreign countries?
- 7) How did photography influence the development of tourism?
- 8) Why do families in 2000s prefer package tours to the Mediterranean?

### Exercise 4. Write questions to the answers.

- 1) \_\_\_\_\_  
- Yes, he did. George III made coastal towns and villages very popular with genteel holidaymakers.
- 2) \_\_\_\_\_  
- Thomas Cook organized the first train ride.
- 3) \_\_\_\_\_  
- The Industrial but not agricultural Revolution began to open up tourism to working classes.
- 4) \_\_\_\_\_  
- The first annual holiday of six days was given in 1901.
- 5) \_\_\_\_\_  
- No, it didn't. The new railways provided cheap travel to seaside resorts.
- 6) \_\_\_\_\_

- The Taj-Mahal, the Pyramids, the Sphinx and the State of Liberty are all examples of famous tourist attractions.

**Exercise 5. Give Ukrainian equivalents to the following word combinations:**

- in the late 18th century;
- medicinal properties;
- genteel holidaymakers;
- to suffer from the fits of madness;
- to be historically credited with smth;
- to sell tickets for a train ride;
- widespread social and technological reforms;
- to provide necessary legislation;
- to cater to the tastes of the working man;
- in peacetime;
- visual evidence;
- to stir interest;
- bucket and spade;
- to enjoy the guaranteed sunshine.

### **UNIT 3. Gender communication differences**

**Exercise 1. Mark the following statements as True or False.**

- 1) Many British coastal fishing villages were transformed into fashionable resorts.
- 2) Tourism started in the mid-eighteenth century.
- 3) Thomas Cook pioneered the first skiing holidays.
- 4) It was the Industrial Revolution that really opened up tourism to the working people.
- 5) The Bank Holiday Act of Parliament in 1871 and the Factory Act of 1901 provided the necessary legislation for paid annual holidays for the British working public.
- 6) The advent of cinema stirred the interest among the people to see exotic sights for themselves.
- 7) In 1890 a family was likely to take a day trip to the nearest seaside town.
- 8) In 2000s a typical family holiday is a two-week package tour to the Mediterranean.

**Exercise 2. Find in the text (unit 2) the opposites to the following words:**

- to *buy* tickets for a train ride;
- *decreased* prosperity;
- *expensive* travel;
- visual evidence of the existence of the *ordinary*;

- to *depress* the interest;
- *without* a bucket and spade;
- *public* companies;
- to enjoy the guaranteed *darkness*

**Exercise 3. Fill in the correct preposition and make the sentences.**

- 1) to transform villages ... fashionable resorts;
- 2) to give leisure time ... no financial loss;
- 3) to become popular ... genteel holidaymakers;
- 4) a mass exodus ... large cities ... the coast;
- 5) the fits ... madness;
- 6) to cater ... the tastes ... the working man;
- 7) ... the mid-nineteenth century;
- 8) to see exotic sights ... themselves.

**Exercise 4. Match the skills and qualities needed in tourism industry to their definitions.**

1) communication skills	a) strong feeling of interest and enjoyment about smth and willingness to be involved in it
2) flexibility	b) physical or mental strength that lets you continue doing smth for a long time without getting tired
3) smart appearance	c) the ability or tendency to think that things are funny or funny things you say that show you have this ability
4) organizational skills	d) the ability to change or be changed easily to suit a different situation
5) stamina	e) the way people express themselves so that other people will understand
6) outgoing personality	f) the way a neat person in tidy attractive clothes looks to other people
7) sense of humour	g) the character when a person likes to meet and talk to new people
8) enthusiasm	h) ability to plan and arrange something so that it is successful and effective

## UNIT 4. Language interference

### Exercise 1. Read the text and translate it.

#### Around the world in 222 days

The history of modern tourism began on 5 July 1841 when a train carrying 500 factory workers travelled from Leicester to Loughborough twelve miles away to attend a meeting about the dangers of alcohol.

This modern excursion was organized by Thomas Cook a young man with neither money nor formal education. His motive was not profit but social reform. Cook believed that the social problems of Britain were caused by widespread alcoholism. Travel he believed would broaden the mind and distract people from drinking.

The success of Cook's first excursion led to others and the success of the business was phenomenal. In 1851 Cook launched his own monthly newsletter. Cook's Exhibition Herald and Excursion Advertiser, the world's first travel magazine; by 1872, the newsletter was selling 100.000 copies a month and its founder was treated as a hero of the modern industrial age.

When Thomas Cook reached the age of sixty-three there was still one challenge ahead of him: to travel round the globe. The idea of travelling «to Egypt via China» seemed impossible to most Victorians. Cook knew otherwise. In 1869 two things happened that would make an overland journey possible: the opening of the Suez Canal and the completion of a railroad net work that linked the continent of America from coast to coast.

He set off from Liverpool on the steamship Oceanic, bound for New York. Throughout his travels his traditional views affected most of what he saw, including the American railroad system. Although impressed by its open carriages sleeping cars onboard toilets and efficient baggage handling he was shocked that men and women were not required to sleep in separate carriages.

Japan delighted him. It was a land of «great beauty and rich fertility» where the hotels served «the best roast beef we have tasted since we left England».

Cook and his party toured the city of Yokohama in a caravan of rickshaws. «We created quite a sensation» he wrote. Cook's love of Japan was equaled only by his hatred of China. Shanghai the next port of call offered «narrow and filthy streets» which were full of «pestering and festering beggars». After twenty-four hours there Cook has seen enough.

He travelled to Singapore and as he set off across the Bay of Bengal. Cook was full of confidence feeling that he understood «this business of pleasure». But nothing he had seen in Shanghai could have prepared him for the culture shock of India.

«At the holy city of Benares we were conducted through centres of filth and obscenity», he wrote. From the deck of a boat on the Ganges he saw the people washing dead bodies, before burning them on funeral piles beside the river. He found these scenes «revolting in the extreme».

By the time Cook left Bombay for Egypt, he was showing signs of tiredness. On 15 February 1873, while crossing the Red Sea, he wrote to *The Times* that he would not travel round the world again. «After thirty-two years of travelling, with the view of making travelling easy cheap and safe for others. I ought to rest». In Cairo, he fell seriously ill for the first time.

Cook arrived home in England after 222 days abroad. Although he never attempted another world tour, he continued to escort parties of tourists to continental Europe throughout the 1870s, and did not cease his seasonal visits to Egypt until the late 1880s. He died in July 1892 at the age of eighty-three.

**Exercise 2. Translate and transcribe the following words. Make up the sentences with these words (2-3 sentences with each word)**

*widespread    fertility    phenomenal    equal    view*  
*pleasure    efficient    obscenity    carriage    tiredness*

**Exercise 3. Mark the following statements as True or False.**

- 1) The history of modern mass tourism began on 5 July 1841.
- 2) Thomas Cook organized the popular excursion for factory workers to distract them from alcohol drinking.
- 3) Thomas Cook`s motive to organize this excursion wasn`t profit, but social reform.
- 4) When he was 63, there was still one challenge ahead of Thomas Cook for travel to Egypt via China.
- 5) Cook wasn`t impressed that men and women in America were not required to sleep in separate carriages.
- 6) China delighted him, because it was a land of great beauty and rich fertility.
- 7) Cook continued to escort parties of tourists to continental Europe throughout 1880s.
- 8) Cook was making travelling easy, cheap and safe for others for about thirty-two years of travelling.

**Exercise 4. Give Ukrainian equivalents to the following word combinations:**

- a meeting about the dangers of alcohol;
- to be caused by smth;
- to broaden the mind;
- to distract people from drinking;
- to be treated as a hero;
- to travel round the globe;
- to attempt another tour;
- to know otherwise;
- on the steamship;
- efficient baggage handling;

- *to create a sensation*;
- *love was equaled by hatred*;
- *filthy streets*;
- *revolting scenes in the extreme*.

## UNIT 5. Conflict resolution

**Exercise 1. Make questions to the text (in unit 4) out of the given words and then answer them.**

- 1) did, the, when, modern, begin, tourism, of, history?
- 2) many, on, workers, sis, Cook, factory, how, take; a, railway ride?
- 3) Why, phenomenal, was, of, Cook`s, the, business, success?
- 4) challenge, what, ahead, was, there, Cook, still, of?
- 5) What, contribution, Cook, did, bring, history, into, tourism, of, the?

**Exercise 2. Write questions to the answers.**

- 1) \_\_\_\_\_  
- The history of modern tourism began on 5 July 1841.
- 2) \_\_\_\_\_  
- Yes, it is. The success of Cook`s first excursion led to other successes.
- 3) \_\_\_\_\_  
- Two things in 1869 made an overland journey possible for Cook.
- 4) \_\_\_\_\_  
- Thomas Cook was not only impressed but also greatly shocked in his travel throughout America.
- 5) \_\_\_\_\_  
- His travel round the globe took him 222 days.
- 6) \_\_\_\_\_  
- Until the late 1880s Thomas Cook did not cease his seasonal visits to Egypt.

**Exercise 3. Write down the synonyms to the following words:**

- an *overseas* journey;
- to *start publishing*;
- a *newsbulletin*;
- travelling to Egypt *through* China;
- *groups* of tourists;
- to *accompany* tourists;
- to *stop* seasonal visits.

**Exercise 4. Write down the opposites to the following words:**

- to *attract* attention to smth;
- *starting* a railroad network;

- *original* views;
- *wide and clean* streets.

## UNIT 6. Power relationships

### Exercise 1. Fill in the correct preposition and make the sentences.

- 1) the dangers ... alcohol
- 2) to seem impossible ... most Victorians
- 3) neither money ... formal education
- 4) travel ... the view ... making travelling easy
- 5) to be treated ... a hero ... the modern industrial age
- 6) to prepare smb ... the couture shock of India
- 7) one challenge ... ... him
- 8) ... the late 1880s

### Exercise 2. Give Ukrainian equivalents to the following:

- *resort representative*;
- *a vast number of jobs*;
- *at a basic level*;
- *higher management position*;
- *the potential for changing career paths*
- *leisure facilities*;
- *to work on a regular basis*;
- *technical skills*;
- *skills sought after by employers*;
- *common sense*;
- *stamina*;
- *to work in a team*;
- *smart appearance*;
- *willingness to work unsocial hours*.

### Exercise 3. Mark the following statements as True or False.

- 1) The travel tourism industry is regarded as a people industry.
- 2) There are a vast number of jobs that involve dealing with customers in public.
- 3) There are many less jobs at a basic or operative level in tourism than there are in management.
- 4) The tourism industry offers good promotion prospects from basic jobs to supervisory and higher management positions.
- 5) The competition for jobs in tourism industry at all levels isn't intense.
- 6) Working unsocial hours may be a good attraction to people in tourism industry.

**Exercise 4. Fill in the correct preposition, make the sentences and write them down.**

- 1) to deal ... customers ... person;
- 2) to diversify ... different areas;
- 3) jobs ... basic level;
- 4) a range ... facilities;
- 5) apply ... company ... job;
- 6) a significant barrier ... people;
- 7) the potential ... changing career paths;
- 8) to work unsocial hours ... a regular basis.

## UNIT 7. Emotional competence

**Exercise 1. Read the text. Write down the words which you don't know. Translate the text in your native language. Retell it.**

### The Nature of Employment

The travel and tourism industry is regarded as a people industry and there are a vast number of jobs that involve dealing with customers in person, such as waiters, resort representatives and air cabin crew to name but a few. There are many more jobs at a basic or operative level than there are in management. The travel and tourism industry offers good promotion prospects and many people progress from basic jobs to supervisory and higher management positions.

Operative Level	Supervisory Level	Management Level
Travel agency sales consultant	Senior sales consultant	Travel agency manager
Waiter / waitress	Head waiter / waitress	Restaurant manager
Hotel receptionist	Front of house manager	Hotel manager
Holiday resort representative (rep)	Senior resort representative	Resort manager

For some people, promotion from operative to supervisory and management levels can be relatively quick, although competition for jobs at all levels is often intense. For example, thousands of people apply to airline companies every year for cabin crew positions, but only a small proportion is accepted.

Another feature of work in the travel and tourism industry is the potential for changing career paths. For example, if you work for an employer who owns a range of facilities, such as hotels, pubs, restaurants and leisure facilities, it may be possible to move from one to another. Even if this is not the case, there are numerous opportunities to diversify into different areas.

Finally, many jobs in the industry involve working unsocial hours, such as holiday periods, evenings and weekends. This may be a significant barrier for some

people entering the industry as they may not be available to work unsocial hours on a regular basis.

**Personal and technical skills** The personal and technical skills and qualities required by employers vary from job to job. However, many of the personal skills required by employers are common right across the industry. The list below gives an indication of the personal skills most commonly sought after by travel and tourism employers:

- good communication skills good customer service skills;
- common sense;
- good listener;
- literacy and numeracy skills;
- outgoing personality;
- sense of humour;
- enthusiasm;
- flexibility;
- stamina and good health;
- organizational skills;
- ability to work well in a team;
- smart appearance;
- ability to think quickly
- willingness to work unsocial hours;
- politeness.

**Exercise 2. Translate and transcribe the following words:**

resort	feature
although	hour
crew	relatively
leisure	available
operative	require
numerous	require
supervisory	enthusiasm
diversify	appearance

**Exercise 3. Answer the questions.**

- 1) What kind of industry is tourism regarded to be? Why?
- 2) What does the travel tourism industry offer to its employees?
- 3) The career growth in tourism industry can be relatively quick, can't it?
- 4) Why is the competition for jobs often intense?
- 5) What features of work in tourism industry attract people?
- 6) What features may be a significant barrier for people in tourism?
- 7) What personal and technical skills are common in most tourism jobs?

#### **Exercise 4. Write questions to the answers.**

- 1) Tourism industry is regarded as a people industry because there are a vast number of jobs dealing directly with customers.
- 2) People working in tourism progress from basic jobs to supervisory and higher management positions.
- 3) Yes, it is. Tourism industry is the potential for changing career paths.
- 4) Working unsocial hours means to work during holiday periods, evenings, weekends.
- 5) The personal and technical skills and qualities required by employers vary from job to job.
- 6) No, they are not. Many personal skills are common right across the industry.

### **UNIT 8. Executive functioning**

**Exercise 1. Study the following list of comments from people working in the industry who were asked, «What are the most important personal qualities, skills and knowledge requirements for your job?»**

1) «I must understand how to motivate people and this means finding exactly the right approach for each individual. The most important skills are the ability to communicate (sometimes in foreign languages), teach others and inspire confidence. I have to be physically fit as the job is very demanding.»

2) «I need business acumen and flair to develop new ideas and increase use of the facility. It is important to be able to handle people, both employees and customers. Good communication skills are important with staff and customers. Numeracy and information technology skills are needed in order to cope with the financial and management information aspects of the job. Finally, there is a high level of responsibility as I am accountable for the day-to-day running of the facility and for the health and safety of visitors and staff.»

3) «I have to be confident and outgoing whilst at work. It is important to get on well with people and deal tactfully and diplomatically with dissatisfied customers. I am very much in the public eye, so smart appearance and good social skills are vital. Also important are organizational ability, business skills, competence in financial matters and knowledge of a range of related practical skills such as cookery, food and beverage service and housekeeping. At peak times the work is hectic and the ability to work under pressure is vital.»

4) «Good customer service, communication and IT skills are essential for my job. I deal with customers face to face and I need to suggest the most appropriate products to meet their needs. It is very useful if I have specific knowledge about a destination or resort. Attention to detail is very important when making a booking.»

5) «Good customer service and communication skills are essential, combined with bags of enthusiasm. Many people regard the job as glamorous, but in reality its very demanding because of the unsocial hours and frequent stopovers away from home.»

6) «Many people think the work is glamorous, but it is frequently very demanding with long unsocial hours. The main requirement is the ability to communicate well with all types of people and deal effectively with customer complaints. It is very important to have a confident, outgoing personality and to get on with customers. Languages are also very useful.»

**The comments on knowledge and skills came from:**

- *a hotel manager;*
- *a holiday resort representative;*
- *a travel sales consultant;*
- *a tour guide;*
- *a skiing instructor;*
- *an air cabin crew member.*

**Match each description with the job role.**

**Exercise 2. Write and substantiate what knowledge and skills are common to all of these jobs.**

<b>Job role</b>	<b>Knowledge / skills required</b>
a hotel manager	
a holiday resort representative	
a travel sales consultant	
a tour guide	
a skiing instructor	
an air cabin crew member	

**Exercise 3. Give Ukrainian equivalents to the following word combinations:**

- *to choose the same positive about the job;*
- *person after person;*
- *to be grateful;*
- *fellow employee;*
- *to get experience in smth;*
- *to be available;*
- *to fall within the ... age group;*
- *workforce;*
- *quick advancement;*
- *at the ease;*
- *to pursue part-time job;*
- *to supplement the income with trips.*

#### **Exercise 4. Mark the following statements as True or False.**

- 1) People with different kinds of tourism jobs choose different positives about their jobs.
- 2) Most employees were grateful to be stuck in a routine job.
- 3) Many tourism employees felt good when they entertained the diverse group of customers.
- 4) People in tourism tend to be dynamic, interesting and upbeat.
- 5) There are a few career paths available to people in tourism.
- 6) Tourism skills are transferable all around the world.
- 7) To work in tourism at basic level you need get tourism training and education.

### **UNIT 9. Speech acts**

#### **Exercise 1. Read the text and translate it.**

##### **A Career in Tourism**

Here are the top 10 things employees like about their jobs. We asked people in the industry what they liked about their jobs. New employees, managers, people with very different kinds of tourism jobs all chose many of the same positives about their jobs:

1) The variety. Person after person said how much they enjoyed the variety in their jobs. Every day is different. «I rarely have a boring day» a lot of them said. «There is never a dull moment», others agreed. Tourism offers many different challenges. Most employees were grateful not to be stuck in a routine, predictable job.

2) Dealing with people. Tourism employees enjoyed the opportunity to meet and deal with people from all over the world. Many felt good when they knew they had helped or entertained this diverse group of customers.

3) Working with other tourism employees. Employees praised their fellow employees. People in tourism, they said, tend to be dynamic, interesting and upbeat. Many people liked the fact that tourism had a lot of younger employees. 50 per cent of the employees in the tourism industry fall within the 15 to 24 age group.

4) The opportunities. Because the industry is growing, employees said, there are so many different types of jobs and opportunities in the tourism industry. It is possible, they said, to get experience in many different kinds of tourism. There are lots of career paths available. There are so many opportunities to learn new skills.

5) Advancement potential. Employees were also enthusiastic about the opportunities for relatively quick advancement in tourism. If you work hard, they said, you can move up to the next level faster than you could in many other industries.

6) Developing global skills. Another positive was the fact that your tourism skills are transferable all around the world. Once you have experience, employees said, you can work in many different parts of the world.

7) Easy to get started. Many tourism employees were grateful at the case of getting an entry-level job in tourism. «You don't need post-secondary school education. It is desirable, however to get tourism training and education if you want to build a career in tourism», many said, «to get started in the industry».

8) Training opportunities. At the same time, employees were pleased that there were many tourism training and educational programs available to expand their knowledge about the industry. Many of these can be pursued part-time while you are working.

9) Tips! Many tourism employees were happy to supplement their income with tips. They enjoyed being able to influence their tip amount by providing good service.

10) Creativity. A great variety of tourism jobs, they said, allow you to think on your feet and be creative.

### Exercise 2. Translate and transcribe the following words:

employee	challenge
experience	desirable
variety	knowledge
enthusiastic	routine
rarely	pursue
transferable	diverse

### Exercise 3. Make questions of the given words and then answer them.

- 1) what, the, things, employees, are, job, top, tourism, ten, about, like?
- 2) did, people, why, job, their, in, variety, enjoy?
- 3) employees, praise, how, their, did, employees, fellow?
- 4) why, of, possible, experience, get, is, in, it, different tourism, kinds, many, to?
- 5) what, expand, helps, to, about, knowledge their, industry, the?

### Exercise 4. Write questions to the answers.

- 1) \_\_\_\_\_  
- People with different tourism jobs all choose the same positives about their jobs.
- 2) \_\_\_\_\_  
- No, they were not. Most employees were grateful not to be stuck in a routine job.
- 3) \_\_\_\_\_  
- Tourism employees enjoyed the opportunity to meet and deal with people from all over the world.
- 4) \_\_\_\_\_

- 50% of the tourism employees fall within the 15 to 24 age group.

5) \_\_\_\_\_

- There are a lot of opportunities to learn new skills.

6) \_\_\_\_\_

- If you want to build a career in tourism you need get tourism training and education.

7) \_\_\_\_\_

- The tip amount the people get depends on providing good service.

### **Exercise 5. Mark the following statements as True or False.**

1) At the interview the representatives of the company staff ask the interviewee some questions in order to assess him/her.

2) The interview is designed to find out more about your private life.

3) The way you answer at the interview will show your education, skills and experience.

4) If you sell yourself short, no one will employ you.

5) You should always ask the interviewer questions at the beginning of the interview.

6) You should appear cocky or argumentative.

## **UNIT 10. Communicative intentions**

### **Exercise 1. Fill in the correct preposition and make sentences.**

1) to like smth ... the job;

2) ... a whole;

3) many ... the same positives;

4) to get experience ... many different kinds ... tourism;

5) to be stuck ... a routine, predictable job;

6) ... the same time;

7) to fall ... the 15 ... 24 age group;

8) to think ... feet.

### **Exercise 2. Give Ukrainian equivalents to the following word combinations:**

- *to accept a resume;*

- *to invite smb for an interview;*

- *a representative of the company staff;*

- *to keep some tips in mind;*

- *to find a suitable job;*

- *education, skills and experience;*

- *to make a real effort;*

- *to shrug the shoulders;*

- *to make one's interests seem unimportant;*
- *at the close of the interview;*
- *for instance;*
- *to shake hands with smb;*
- *to give smb a hard time;*
- *sense of responsibility.*

### **Exercise 3. Answer the questions.**

- 1) What happens when your CV has been accepted?
- 2) Why do the panel ask the interviewee questions?
- 3) How should the interviewee answer the panel's questions?
- 4) What should the interviewee do if he doesn't know something about technical aspects of the job?
- 5) How do you understand the phrase "sell yourself"?
- 6) When is it better for the interviewee to ask the panel questions?
- 7) What three main advice can be given to any interviewee?
- 8) What things shouldn't the interviewee do at his interview?
- 9) How shouldn't the interviewee behave?
- 10) What should the interviewee show at the interview?

### **Exercise 4. Write questions to the answers.**

- 1) \_\_\_\_\_  
- The aim of the interview is to define if the interviewee is suitable for the job he is applying for.
- 2) \_\_\_\_\_  
- The interviewee should try to answer every question the interviewer asks.
- 3) \_\_\_\_\_  
- Yes, he / she should. He / she should admit that he/she doesn't know something about the technical aspects of the job.
- 4) \_\_\_\_\_  
- To show enthusiasm at the interview means to ask the interviewer some questions.
- 5) \_\_\_\_\_  
- There are three main recommendations for the interviewee how to behave at the interview.
- 6) \_\_\_\_\_  
- No, he / she shouldn't. He / she should show his / her best side and never stress poor aspects.

### **Exercise 5. Fill in the correct preposition and make sentences.**

- 1) to be invited ... an interview;
- 2) to get caught ...
- 3) to keep some tips ... mind;

- 4) ... the close ... the interview;
- 5) to find ... information about the interviewee;
- 6) ... a different angle;
- 7) to concentrate ... smth;
- 8) keenness ... work.

### Exercise 6.

**A) Read the text about writing cover letters and use the advice to complete the sentences below.**

When writing cover letters you need to use a standard format. Remember that the address of the person you are writing to always appears on the left-hand side of the page and your own address in the top right-hand corner. Put the date under your address.

Always make sure you start and end your cover letter correctly. If you are writing to Mrs. Linda Carr, then you should start the letter «Dear Mrs. Carr» and finish it with «Yours sincerely». Note that «sincerely» has a small 's', not a capital letter.

If the advertisement asks you to send application to Melanie Thompson, how would you begin your letter? «Dear Melanie?» «Dear Melanie Thompson?» «Dear Mrs. Thompson?» is not really appropriate as she might not be married. It is probably safe to put «Dear Melanie Thompson».

If the advertisement just says «reply to J. Brown» how would you address the letter? «Dear Sir» or «Dear Mr. Brown»? You should ring the company and find out J. Brown's full name and whether this person is a man or a woman. Remember that letter etiquette costs you nothing, but it can really pay dividends and you may be the only person who has made the effort to find out. This could help to make you different from all the other applicants and being noticed is important if you are going to get invited for interview.

If the advertisement just states: «Write to the Human Resources Department» or «Reply to Atlas Travel» it may not be possible for you to find out who will be dealing with your reply. In these cases you will have to start your letter «Dear Sir/Madam» and finish the letter with «Yours faithfully» with a small 'f'.

1) The address of the person the letter is addressed to appear\_\_\_\_\_.

2) If you begin a letter with «Dear Mrs. Healey» you should end with\_\_\_\_\_.

3) You should write your own address\_\_\_\_\_.

4) If an advertisement says «Reply to Vikki West» you should\_\_\_\_\_.

5) If an advertisement says «Reply to R. Simpson» you should\_\_\_\_\_.

6) If an advertisement says «Please send CV+cover letter to Marketing Director, Austravel» you should begin your letter with \_\_\_\_\_, and end with \_\_\_\_\_.

**B) Look through the list of 10 Golden Rules for your cover letter.**

- 1) Write clearly.
- 2) Keep your letter short and to the point.
- 3) State what a job you are applying for.
- 4) Make the information you give relevant to the job, and firm, so read the advertisement carefully first.
- 5) Use plain writing paper and ink, not pencil or type your letter if you cannot do it neatly.
- 6) Draft out what you want to say in rough first.
- 7) Give all the information you are asked for.
- 8) Check your spelling and punctuation.
- 9) State when you are available for interview.
- 10) Print your name clearly under your signature.

**C) Compile your own 10 Golden Rules for the cover letter. Use the information given in item A.**

## UNIT 11. Body language

**Exercise 1. Read the text about food and health. Write the essay about the danger of malnutrition (300-400 words). Try to use the words that are given in the text below.**

### Food and Health

The food we eat can affect our health in many ways. If we eat food that's **contaminated** with bacteria, we'll be sick and go to the toilet more often. We can also get sick if we eat dangerous foods like poisonous mushrooms or certain kinds of fish. These foods have short-term effects on our health, but food can also have long-term effects on our health.

These long-term effects vary depending on where we live and how much we eat. In a country with food shortages due to war or lack of rain, people might suffer from **malnutrition**. People with malnutrition lose a lot of weight and become very thin and weak. They can also develop long-term illnesses due to the lack of essential **nutrients** like vitamin C and iron. People in rich, developed countries can also develop food-related illnesses, but they're usually related to eating too much, or **overeating**, rather than eating too little.

The term *malnutrition* is made from the combining form **mal-** (bad) + the noun **nutrition** (food, nourishment, eating). It therefore means «bad eating», and

covers «wrong» eating, under-eating and over-eating. Other words formed with *mal-* include: *malpractice*, *malfunction*, *malodorous*.

### **Overweight and obesity**

People who overeat can become **overweight**, especially if they don't exercise. Being a little overweight isn't usually related to serious health problems, but putting on more weight and becoming **obese** definitely is. This is because **obesity** is a major **risk factor** for many serious illnesses that can be **fatal** and shorten our lives by many years.

People who are suffering from malnutrition can usually recover by simply eating **nutritious** food, but people who are obese face a far more difficult situation. To recover they must lose a lot of weight by eating less and changing to a healthy **diet**. This can be very difficult to do, especially if they live in a place full of Western-style **fast foods** and **processed** foods. And even if they lose weight by going on a **diet**, most people soon return to their usual diet and put the weight back on. So learning about food and health and how to prevent obesity in the first place is one of the most important things we can learn.

All the energy our bodies need comes from the food we eat, and it's measured in **calories**. If we balance the calories we get from food with the number we "burn" each day as energy, our body weight stays the same. But if we eat more food than we need, the extra energy is stored as body fat and we put on weight. You can check to see if your body weight is healthy or not by measuring your height and weight and then calculating your **body mass index (or BMI)** with a special formula. If your BMI is between 18.5 and 25, your weight is healthy. If it's between 25 and 30, you're overweight, and if it's over 30, you're obese and need to change your diet.

### **The obesity epidemic**

Before the 1970s obesity wasn't a serious problem, but in the mid-70s obesity rates began rising in Western countries like the USA, UK and Australia. These were the first countries in which major food companies began increasing their **profits** by selling more snack foods, fast foods and processed **junk food** than ever before. Fast food companies opened hamburger, pizza and fried chicken outlets in every big town and city and spent huge amounts of money **marketing** them. Major food companies filled supermarkets with frozen «TV dinners» and convinced families they were as healthy as home-cooked meals. They marketed more and more sweets, snack foods and sugary drinks to children even though they knew they were damaging their health and ruining their teeth. They spent millions of dollars **lobbying** governments in order to stop them from **regulating** their industry and reducing their profits.

In the 1990s Western food companies began targeting people in developing countries as well, and many are now eating hamburgers, pizzas and other Western foods instead of traditional local foods. As a result, obesity rates have increased greatly in those countries as well. According to the World Health Organization (WHO), only 1% of the world's children were obese in 1975, but the number is now 10 times higher. The number of overweight and obese adults has also increased

greatly since 1975 and is now over 2 billion people. The situation has become so serious that it's being called an obesity **epidemic**.

An epidemic usually involves just one disease, but the obesity epidemic is related to several diseases. It's a major risk factor for **heart disease** and heart attacks, **high blood pressure** and **strokes**, **diabetes** and kidney disease, and many kinds of **cancer**, all of which can be fatal. And our risk of developing one of these diseases increases every time we eat certain dangerous or fattening foods.

**Exercise 2. Look through the part of the article about dangerous foods. Think over what can be the other dangerous products for your health. Justify your point of view.**

## **Dangerous foods**

Most nutritionists now agree that a diet of Western-style processed food and fast food is one of the unhealthiest diets of all. This is because it's so high in **saturated fats**, **trans fats**, sugar and salt, all of which can be a danger to health.

### **Saturated fats and trans fats**

Saturated fats and trans fats are dangerous because they increase our blood levels of **cholesterol**, a substance that can form fatty lumps that block blood flow and cause heart attacks and stroke. The worst foods for saturated fats include bacon, sausages, hamburgers, fatty steaks, ham and salami pizzas, high-fat cream, etc.

Trans fats are even more dangerous and harder to avoid because food companies use them so often. They can be found in potato crisps, donuts, pastries, cookies and other processed foods as well as in margarine and oils used to make French fries, onion rings and other deep-fried foods. They're banned in New York City and certain other places, but still used elsewhere even though the WHO has said they cause over half a million deaths every year. (Source: WHO News Release, 14 May 2018)

Trans fats make cookies, donuts, French fries and many other foods taste better and last longer, but the World Health Organization (WHO) says they cause over 500,000 deaths EVERY YEAR!!

### **Sugar**

Sugar is a natural **carbohydrate** found in fruits and vegetables, but it's also added to thousands of products to make them taste sweeter. It's added to soft drinks and energy drinks, flavoured yoghurt, cereals, cookies, cakes, sweets and candy, and most other processed foods. Too much sugar can cause obesity and diabetes as well as heart disease. Just one soft drink or energy drink contains nearly half the sugar we should **consume** in one day, so anyone on a diet of Western-style processed foods is sure to consume too much. In 2014 Dr. Frank Hu, professor of nutrition at Harvard University, wrote, «The effects of added sugar intake — higher blood pressure, inflammation, weight gain, diabetes, and fatty liver disease — are all linked to an increased risk for heart attack and stroke.»

## Salt

We all need a little salt in our diets, but consuming more than 5 or 6 grams per day can lead to high blood pressure which is a major risk factor for heart disease, stroke and kidney disease. A high-salt diet is also a probable risk factor for stomach cancer. Salt is added to so many products (often listed as sodium or sodium chloride on the packet) that it's become yet another reason to avoid processed foods.

## Healthy diets and foods

To learn more about food and health, nutritionists have studied diets in places where people are healthier and live longer than usual. They've found that in Japan and Mediterranean countries in southern Europe, rates of heart disease, diabetes, stroke and cancer are among the lowest in the world. Even though their traditional cuisines look and taste very different, Japanese and Mediterranean people eat many of the same foods. They eat lots of fruits, vegetables, whole grains, beans and nuts, and they cook in vegetable oils rather than animal fats. Their traditional diets also include plenty of fish and seafood, but not many dairy foods or eggs, and little or no red meat.

## Mediterranean Diet

Mediterranean and Japanese diets are similar and both are linked to low rates of diet-related illness like heart disease. Should we use them as a guide to healthy eating? Many experts now think so.

- fresh vegetables
- fish and seafood
- grains (esp. wholewheat bread and pasta)
- beans, legumes and nuts
- fresh and dried fruits
- eggs and dairy foods in moderation
- olive oil

Many nutritionists now recommend low-fat diets like this, or the similar **pescetarian** diet that includes dairy products, fish and seafood, but no poultry or red meat like pork or beef. Some are even recommending a totally meat-free **vegetarian** or **vegan** diet, especially for people with heart disease or other diet-related illnesses. But if you become vegetarian or vegan, they say you must make sure you get all the essential amino acids from protein-rich plant foods like soybeans.

## Summary

If we eat healthy foods in a balanced diet, there's a good chance we'll live long and healthy lives. A balanced diet should provide around the same number of calories as the body uses each day. This allows us to maintain a healthy BMI by ensuring we don't lose or gain too much weight. Our diet should include a wide variety of fresh, natural foods with a good balance of nutrients plus all the essential vitamins and minerals. We should try to avoid fatty foods and processed foods that contain

substances that can be dangerous like sugar and salt, and additives such as **preservatives**, colourings and artificial flavourings that might not have been tested for long enough. And we should definitely avoid Western-style fast foods that contain saturated fats and trans fats.

**Exercise 3. Look through the first part of the words below and the examples of using them. Learn the words that you don't know yet. For better remORIZATION make your own sentences using all these words.**

**1) body mass index (or BMI)** (noun): a weight-to-height ratio that shows if you're overweight, underweight or at a healthy weight

- *Jason's body mass index is 27, so he's a bit overweight.*

**2) calorie** (noun): a unit for measuring the amount of energy we get from food

- *How many calories are there in a can of soft drink?*

**3) carbohydrate** (noun): a substance in foods such as bread and potatoes that is a major source of energy or calories

- *Is limiting carbohydrates a good way to lose weight?*

**4) cancer** (noun): a serious illness that is usually difficult to cure and often leads to death

- *My cousin died of lung cancer when he was fifty.*

**5) cholesterol** (noun): a substance in body cells that can cause heart disease if levels in the blood are too high

- *The test shows you have too much bad cholesterol in your blood.*

**6) consume** (verb): to eat or drink something

- *How many calories should we consume every day?*

**7) contaminate** (verb): to make something a carrier of disease

- *Food that isn't stored properly can become contaminated with dangerous bacteria.*

**8) diabetes** (noun): a serious illness in which your body cannot regulate the amount of sugar in the blood

- *Being obese is the most common cause of type 2 diabetes.*

**9) diet** (noun): all the foods a person normally eats

- *My doctor said a vegetarian diet rich in plant protein is best.*

**10) diet** (noun): a limited amount or range of food that someone eats to lose weight or become healthier

- *I've been on lots of diets but I'm still overweight.*

**11) epidemic** (noun): the sudden spread of a disease or medical condition

- *Processed foods are causing a global obesity epidemic.*

**12) fast food** (noun): food served quickly, esp. Western foods like hamburgers, pizzas, fried chicken and French fries

- *Fast food joints are everywhere around here.*

**13) fatal** (adjective): causing someone to die

- *The heart attack wasn't fatal. He survived!*

**14) heart disease** (noun): a medical condition in which the heart fails to work properly

- *Eating healthy food prevents heart disease.*

**15) high blood pressure (or hypertension)** (noun): a condition in which the blood pressure is higher than it should be

- *High blood pressure can cause strokes, can't it?*

**16) junk food** (noun): unhealthy food, esp. fatty fast foods and processed snack foods

- *Kids eat far too much junk food these days.*

**17) lobby** (verb): to contact people with power like politicians and try to influence them for your benefit

- *The food industry spends millions of dollars lobbying politicians.*

**18) malnutrition** (noun): a condition of weakness or illness caused by eating too much food, not enough food or unhealthy food

- *There are still many poor people who suffer from malnutrition.*

**Exercise 4. Look through the texts in exercise 1 and exercise 2. Make the tests below.**

1) Overeating can cause

- a) weight loss
- b) obesity
- c) contamination

2) What should we eat in order to live long and healthy lives?

- a) fast food
- b) processed food
- c) nutritious food

3) If we consume more \_\_\_\_\_ than we burn each day, we'll put on weight.

- a) body fat
- b) vitamins
- c) calories

4) If your BMI is over 30, you are

- a) underweight
- b) overweight
- c) obese

5) Obesity rates increased because food companies began selling more \_\_\_\_\_ in the 1970s.

- a) health food
- b) junk food
- c) fresh food

6) Obesity is a known risk factor for heart disease, diabetes and

- a) cancer
- b) influenza
- c) malaria

7) Which have been banned in places like New York City?

- a) saturated fats
- b) unsaturated fats
- c) trans fats

8) Saturated fats and trans fats can form deadly \_\_\_\_\_ deposits in the blood.

- a) sugar
- b) cholesterol
- c) preservative

9) Which has no fattening sugars or sweeteners?

- a) pure water
- b) fruit juice
- c) soft drink

10) Which diet includes fish and seafood but no other meat?

- a) pescetarian
- b) vegan
- c) vegetarian

**Exercise 5. Look through the second part of the words below and the examples of using them. Learn the words that you don't know yet. For better memorization make your own sentences using all these words.**

**1) market** (verb): to use advertising and other persuasive methods to make people want a product

- *Shouldn't people who produce and market dangerous foods be punished?*

**2) nutrient** (noun): a substance in food that is necessary for good health

- *A healthy diet gives us all the nutrients we need.*

**3) nutritious** (adjective): (of food or drinks) containing substances we need in order to be healthy

- *Japanese food is both nutritious and delicious.*

**4) obese** (adjective): very fat; far above a healthy weight (BMI >30)

- *Why are so many people in Australia obese these days?*

**5) obesity** (noun): the state of being very overweight, or the medical condition related to this

- *If marketing junk food to kids causes obesity, why isn't it banned?*

**6) overeat** (verb): to eat more food than the body needs

- *If I didn't overeat, I wouldn't be overweight.*

**7) overweight** (adjective): above a normal or healthy weight (BMI 25-30)

- *How can I stop my kids from becoming overweight?*

**8) pescetarian** (adjective): (of a diet) including vegetarian food and fish, but no other meat

- *My cousin thinks farming animals and chickens is cruel and bad for the planet, so he's pescetarian.*

**9) preservative** (noun): a chemical substance used for preventing food from spoiling or wood from decaying

- *Many processed foods have added preservatives and artificial colourings and flavourings.*

**10) process** (verb): to add chemicals or other substances to food to make it last longer or look or taste better

- *The processed food industry makes a huge amount of money.*

**11) profit** (noun): money made by selling a product or service

- *Companies will do whatever's necessary to increase their profits.*

**12) regulate** (verb): to use official powers or laws to control an activity, process or industry

- *The only way to prevent obesity is to regulate the food industry.*

**13) risk factor** (noun): something that increases your chances of developing a disease or being injured

- *Smoking is a risk factor for lung cancer.*

**14) saturated fat** (noun): a type of fat that's found in butter, cheese, red meat, etc.

- *Reducing the amount of saturated fat in your diet can help you live longer.*

**15) stroke** (noun): the sudden bursting of a blood vessel in the brain that can cause serious illness or death

- *After he had a stroke, Harry couldn't walk or talk normally.*

**16) trans fat (or trans fatty acid)** (noun): an artificial fat that makes food last longer and taste better but is very bad for health

- *Trans fats are banned in many places because they're so bad for our health.*

**17) vegan** (adjective): (of a diet) with plant foods only; without animal products, including meat, fish, seafood, eggs, milk, cheese, etc

- *Let's try sticking to a vegan diet.*

**18) vegetarian** (adjective): (of a diet) with plant foods and sometimes dairy products, but without meat, fish, or seafood

- *Most people I met in India were vegetarian.*

## UNIT 12. Spoken and written language comprehension

### Exercise 1. Fill in the words correctly.

*advance, bunk beds, dormitory, double room, family room, key, reception, single room, twin room, vacancies*

- 1) If you book a room for one person, you usually book a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2) If you want a room with a double bed, you book a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3) If you want a room with two separated beds, you book a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4) For families there are usually special offers if they take a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5) In youth hostels rooms are often shared by 10 or more people. This kind of room is called \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6) To get 10 people into one room, two beds are usually placed on top of each other. They are called \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7) No matter where you're staying, you usually have to fill in a form at the \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8) Then the receptionist tells you your room number and gives you the \_\_\_\_\_ for your room.
- 9) During high season it's advisable to book a room in \_\_\_\_\_.
- 10) If a B&B is fully booked, they usually have a sign in the window saying «No \_\_\_\_\_».

**Exercise 2. Read the text about the hotel. Make the short conspect. Write down the words you have learned. Make the questions to the text using these words.**

When you arrive at a hotel, you must check-in at the reception or front desk. The check-in process can take awhile since the receptionist has to find your reservation, request payment for the room, and then inform you about the hotel's policies and procedures. You are also given a key to your room at this time.

Hotels often distinguish themselves by the services they offer. Fancy hotels often have a concierge or porter to help you with a variety of tasks. They can help you get a taxi, make reservations at restaurants or plays for you, and give you advice about the city. Often, this person is also in charge of the bellboys, who carry your luggage or baggage up to the room for you.

In smaller and cheaper hotels, the job of concierge is done by the receptionist and a doorman, who opens the hotel doors and car doors for you.

These are nice services, especially after you've been traveling, but they're not free. It is common courtesy to tip the concierge and bellboys each time they help you.

Other features that are generally found in hotels are a lift or elevator to take you up to the floor your room is on; a lounge area or lobby where you can wait if you arrive before the check-in time; and a safe where you can store valuables.

In your room, there may be a single or double bed, depending on how many people are staying there. There may even be two single beds, or twin beds. Also in the room are a desk, a dresser to store your clothes in, a nightstand with a lamp beside the bed, a television with cable, heating and air conditioning.

If you're lucky, there may even be a mini-bar in your room. This is a small refrigerator that has tiny bottles of alcohol, as well as snacks. But beware: these are not free. In fact, they typically cost two to three times as much as they do in a grocery store. But many people pay the exuberant price for the convenience of not having to leave the hotel.

Another convenience that hotels offer is room service. To order room service, you call down to the reception and ask for a food item listed on the hotel's menu. The food is then brought to your room for you to enjoy. Remember, this is another service that deserves a tip.

Many hotels also have restaurants attached where breakfast is served in the morning. A hotel breakfast can range from a Continental buffet, which consists of you helping yourself to food that has been laid out for you and other hotel guests. The Continental breakfast is not very elaborate and is often included in the price of the room. However, you can also order prepared food from the restaurant's menu.

At the proper check-out time, which is often early, you must vacate the room so that the maids, or cleaning staff, can clean the rooms and make the beds. If you don't leave on time, charges may apply and you will have to pay extra money. Fortunately, you can ask for a wake-up call from the front desk so you won't sleep through check-out

To get to your next destination, you can take an airport shuttle, which will take you directly to the airport. If a hotel doesn't have its own shuttle, it can usually arrange for one to pick you up at the hotel.

**Exercise 3. Write the correct word to complete each of the following sentences. Choose from the following options:**

*changed, upfront, view, exchange, bring, noisy, free, mini, locked, reception*

- 1) Can you get someone to \_\_\_\_\_ our bags to our room?
- 2) Are the sheets \_\_\_\_\_ every day?
- 3) We didn't take anything from the \_\_\_\_\_-bar.
- 4) I \_\_\_\_\_ my key in my room.
- 5) Do I leave the key at the \_\_\_\_\_ desk?
- 6) Do I have to pay \_\_\_\_\_ (= in advance)?
- 7) Is there somewhere I can \_\_\_\_\_ money around here?
- 8) The fan is really \_\_\_\_\_. Can I turn it off?
- 9) Is this service \_\_\_\_\_, or do I have to pay for it?
- 10) The \_\_\_\_\_ is fantastic. We can see the whole city!

**Exercise 4. Write the correct word to complete each of the following sentences. Choose from the following options:**

*sheets, cost, maker, service, included, room, control, safe, call, comfortable*

- 1) Can I get a wake-up \_\_\_\_\_ at 6:30 AM?
- 2) Our (bed) \_\_\_\_\_ are dirty. Could you please change them?
- 3) How much does it \_\_\_\_\_ to make a call to Brazil?
- 4) The coffee-\_\_\_\_\_ doesn't work.
- 5) Is breakfast \_\_\_\_\_ in the price?
- 6) Do you have room \_\_\_\_\_ ?
- 7) The remote-\_\_\_\_\_ doesn't work.
- 8) What's the combination for the \_\_\_\_\_ ?
- 9) This \_\_\_\_\_ is too noisy.
- 10) Our bed is very \_\_\_\_\_ .

## **UNIT 13. Challenging behavior as communication**

**Exercise 1. Read the text about organic foods. Write down questions to the highlighted words.**

### **Organic Foods**

**Organic** food is very popular these days. It can also be very **expensive**. Some organic food costs twice as much as non-organic food. Parents of young children, and

even some pet owners, will pay high prices for organic food if they think it's healthier. But many others think organic food is just a **waste of money**.

There is one main difference between organic and non-organic food. Organic farms do not use **agricultural** chemicals such as **pesticides** that stop insects from damaging crops. In many countries foods that claim to be organic must have special **labels** that guarantee they're grown organically.

Some people think organic also means «locally grown», and originally this was true. But over time organic farming has become big business, with many organic foods now being grown by large agricultural companies that sell their products far from where they're grown. **Processed** food made with organic **ingredients** has also become more popular. At first, only small companies **produced** these products. But as **demand** overtook **supply**, big food companies that had been selling non-organic products for many years also began selling organic products. Small organic food companies found it difficult to compete with these big companies, and many didn't **stay in business** much longer.

Is organic food safer and more **nutritious**? This is an important part of the **debate**. Many farmers and **consumers** believe it is. They think agricultural chemicals can cause serious illnesses like cancer, but there isn't much **evidence** proving this is true. However recent studies have shown that eating organically-grown **produce** reduces your chances of developing heart disease. Many doctors think it's more important to stop dangerous bacteria from **contaminating** foods. These bacteria can contaminate both organic and non-organic fruit and vegetables, and doctors recommend washing produce carefully before eating it. Meat, fish and chicken can also become contaminated, so washing your hands before **handling** these foods is also very important. Many doctors also believe we should reduce the amount of sugar in our diets, and there is a lot of evidence to support this idea. They recommend carefully checking the list of ingredients on processed food and drinks for all the words that really mean sugar, like glucose, sucrose and fructose. And they remind us that the aim of most big food companies is to make lots of money, even if they damage our health while doing so. This means processed foods that are called «organic» can also be very unhealthy if they contain lots of sugar.

Most people agree that naturally grown food tastes better. Is tastier food worth the extra money? That's a matter of opinion. Whether organic food is healthier or not is still not clear, so more research is needed. However, consumers of organic food often say «**better safe than sorry**» when it comes to what we eat.

**Exercise 2. Look through the words below. Write the meaning of the words in English and in your own language.**

Word	Meaning
<b>agricultural</b> <i>adj.</i>	

Word	Meaning
<b>bacteria</b> <i>noun</i>	
<b>better safe than sorry</b> <i>idiom</i>	
<b>consumer</b> <i>noun</i>	
<b>contaminate</b> <i>verb</i>	
<b>debate</b> <i>noun</i>	
<b>demand</b> <i>noun</i>	
<b>evidence</b> <i>noun</i>	
<b>expensive</b> <i>adj.</i>	
<b>handle</b> <i>verb</i>	
<b>ingredients</b> <i>noun</i>	
<b>label</b> <i>noun</i>	
<b>nutritious</b> <i>adj.</i>	
<b>organic</b> <i>adj.</i>	
<b>pesticide</b> <i>noun</i>	
<b>produce</b> <i>noun</i>	
<b>produce</b> <i>verb</i>	
<b>process</b> <i>verb</i>	
<b>stay in business</b> <i>idiom</i>	
<b>supply</b> <i>noun</i>	
<b>waste of money</b> <i>idiom</i>	

**Exercise 3. Write down the tests below.**

1) What is the main difference between organic and non-organic food?

- a) use of pesticides
- b) size of the company
- c) location of the farm

2) Which is usually more expensive?

- a) pet food
- b) organic food
- c) non-organic food

3) Many small organic food companies found it difficult to \_\_\_\_\_ .

- a) waste money
- b) stay in business
- c) find cheap pesticides

4) Recent studies show that eating organic produce can \_\_\_\_\_ your chances of having heart disease.

- a) develop
- b) increase
- c) reduce

5) Dangerous bacteria can contaminate

- a) organic food only
- b) non-organic food only
- c) organic and non-organic food

6) All processed foods should have a label listing the product's

- a) ingredients
- b) pesticides
- c) organics

7) Many doctors now believe eating too much \_\_\_\_\_ food is bad for our health.

- a) fresh
- b) sweet
- c) organic

8) Processed organic foods can also be unhealthy if they contain lots of

- a) nutritious ingredients
- b) organic produce

c) glucose

9) The aim of most big food companies is to make the healthiest \_\_\_\_\_ they can.

a) profits

b) products

c) customers

10) Most people agree that naturally grown food tastes

a) safer

b) better

c) worse

**Exercise 4. Look at the meaning of the words that should be written. Write down the correct words.**

Word	Meaning
	to survive (of a company or person in business)
	the amount or number of products ready to be sold
	a poor choice when spending money
	food that comes from a farm, like fruits, vegetables, eggs, meat, etc.
	to make or create something
	to make something with technology and machines in a factory
	good for your health (of food and drinks only)
	grown naturally without the use of pesticides
	a chemical that stops insects from destroying crops
	related to farming
	tiny organisms that can live in our bodies
	being careful is better than taking risks
	a person who buys something

**Exercise 5. Choose any country you like to describe their cooking, traditions, cuisine. Write down the short essay and present it to the professor.**

### III. EXAM

#### Variant 1

**Look through the tests and choose the right answer.**

- 1) Buying large amounts of goods or services in order to get a lower price is a:  
a) bulk purchase;                      c) wholesale purchase;  
b) complete purchase;                d) bought goods.
- 2) Planned method of work is a \_\_\_\_\_ .  
a) strategy;                              c) aim;  
b) goal;                                    d) planning.
- 3) The last term when the product can be used is known as:  
a) expiry date;                        c) valid date;  
b) produce date;                      d) term date.
- 4) When I need a band-aid I go the:  
a) drug-store;                          c) grocery;  
b) butcher's;                            d) baker's.
- 5) You can improve the taste of the sauce with vanilla. It is:  
a) season;                                c) garnish;  
b) flavor;                                d) roast.
- 6) Remove the outer skin of the potatoes. It is to:  
a) peel;                                    c) dice;  
b) mash;                                  d) cut.
- 7) Could you remove the skin and bones from the fish, please? It is to make a:  
a) skeleton;                              c) fillet;  
b) soup;                                  d) sandwich.
- 8) Water required for a building may be stored in a:  
a) saucepan;                            c) tank;  
b) garage;                                d) bottles;
- 9) The restaurant is closed for two months while it is being:  
a) renewed;                              c) renovated;  
b) remade;                                d) reformed.
- 10) There will be ten new bedrooms when the builders finish the \_\_\_\_\_.

- a) extension;                      c) enlargement;  
b) extent;                          d) utility.

### Variant 2

**Look through the tests and choose the right answer.**

- 1) The chalets have everything a guest could require. They are:
- a) self-catered;                      c) self-made;  
b) self-formed;                      d) self-contained.
- 2) The building has fallen into a state of \_\_\_\_\_ and now need a lot of work.
- a) despair;                              c) disrepair;  
b) dispersal;                          d) distress.
- 3) This room is very quiet and it's not at the front of the hotel. It is \_\_\_\_\_ .
- a) back-looking;                      c) rear-looking;  
b) rear-facing;                        d) back-facing;
- 4) The expected number of guests is known as \_\_\_\_\_.
- a) estimated attendance;              c) list;  
b) guests listing;                      d) attendants.
- 5) The people who come to the conference are known as the \_\_\_\_\_.
- a) attendants;                        c) officials;  
b) delegates;                         d) participants.
- 6) All the tourists may enjoy a boat \_\_\_\_\_ on a river or canal.
- a) trip;                                  c) cruise;  
b) tour;                                 d) hike.
- 7) Many hotels will arrange \_\_\_\_\_ tours by coach, or on foot.
- a) escorted;                          c) escorting;  
b) guiding;                            d) guide.
- 8) Glove is an item of clothes that is worn on:
- a) toes;                                 c) a hand;  
b) a waist;                            d) a thumb.
- 9) The restaurant is closed for two months while it is being \_\_\_\_\_ .
- a) renewed;                          c) renovated;  
b) remade;                          d) reformed.

10) There will be ten new bedrooms when the builders finish the \_\_\_\_\_.

- a) extension;                      c) enlargement;  
b) extent;                          d) utility.

### Variant 3

**Look through the tests and choose the right answer.**

1) The town \_\_\_\_\_ under the rock of Cefalu on which the temple of Diana \_\_\_\_\_ .

- a) sits; was built;                      c) situates; was destroyed;  
b) sleeps; was built;                  d) sits; is destroyed.

2) Put yourself in the employer's \_\_\_\_\_.

- a) boots;                                  c) head;  
b) shoes;                                  d) mind.

3) Participation in sports can show your \_\_\_\_\_ for team work.

- a) capacity;                              c) availability;  
b) disability;                              d) power.

4) While filling in the form try to research the name ( \_\_\_\_\_ correctly!) of a specific person to write to.

- a) introduced;                          c) presented;  
b) spelt;                                      d) organized.

5) A return ticket is a ticket \_\_\_\_\_ the destination.

- a) from;                                      c) to;  
b) to and from;                          d) from Japan.

6) Braille's books are specially designed for people who can't:

- a) read;                                      c) taste;  
b) see;                                        d) understand.

7) This person directs a plane at take-off and landing:

- a) pilot;                                      c) cosmonaut;  
b) flight attendant;                      d) coach.

8) A person dealing with people arriving at a hotel is a:

- a) bell boy;                                  c) chambermaid;

b) receptionist;                      d) housekeeper.

9) If the weather is bad, the children at the hotel can use the \_\_\_\_\_ on the ground floor.

a) resident nurse;                      c) kitchen;  
b) playroom;                              d) lobby.

10) In order to cater for guests who have babies, we have installed facilities in the toilets.

a) high chairs;                              c) ramps;  
b) nappy-changing;                      d) necessary.

#### **Variant 4**

**Look through the tests and choose the right answer.**

1) Legal agreements between two companies are:

a) contracts;                              c) memos;  
b) decisions;                              d) reports.

2) An agreement to pay money as compensation for loss or accident (in tourist industry):

a) compensation;                              c) travel insurance;  
b) points;                                      d) insuring documents.

3) Company which transport passengers (such as airline) is known as:

a) Eurobus;                                      c) carrier;  
b) transporter;                              d) Lincoln airlines.

4) «Hard man» and «Soft man» is a:

a) tactic of behavior;                              c) way of signing an agreement;  
b) manner of dressing;                              d) way of looking at people.

5) \_\_\_\_\_ everyone Mackenzie Airport, I wish you a very pleasant journey.

a) on behalf of;                              c) on behalf to;  
b) at behalf of;                              d) due to.

6) The flight attendant tells the seat number while:

a) checking in;                                      c) landing;  
b) checking out;                              d) introducing herself.

7) You must declare any goods \_\_\_\_\_ the allowances listed on page 6.

- a) down;                      c) over;  
b) at;                         d) above.

8) If you arrive by air and are \_\_\_\_\_ a flight to another EU country ...

- a) transfer to;                c) transferred to;  
b) transferring to;         d) transferring at.

9) Payment for treatment or medication should be \_\_\_\_\_ on board direct to the medical personnel.

- a) paid;                        c) made;  
b) done;                      d) make.

10) Bed linen \_\_\_\_\_ twice a week.

- a) is changed;                c) has changed;  
b) is changing;              d) will change.

### Variant 5

**Look through the tests and choose the right answer.**

1) Cabaret \_\_\_\_\_ very evening in the cocktail lounge.

- a) is taken place;            c) will be taken;  
b) will take place;         d) will take places.

2) A large, single platform boat with most of the deck used for carrying cars and other vehicles is:

- a) catamaran;                c) landing craft ferry;  
b) hydrofoil;                 d) passenger boat.

3) Ticket prices are regulated \_\_\_\_\_ the government.

- a) by;                         c) with the help of;  
b) within;                    d) at.

4) I do want to relax. \_\_\_\_\_ the idea was that this would be a cheap holiday.

- a) so;                         c) though;  
b) nevertheless;         d) as.

5) You can have unlimited access to the Theme Park's facilities and enjoy them to your \_\_\_\_\_ .

- a) heart's disaster;         c) heart's content;  
b) heart's desire;            d) heart content's.

6) I can't find my handbag! It's got my \_\_\_\_\_ and all my money.

- a) credit vouchers;                      c) credit cards;  
b) credit bonuses;                      d) credit points.

7) All the rooms have \_\_\_\_\_.

- a) air bags;                                  c) aired ventilation;  
b) air-conditioning;                      d) aromas.

8) I am delighted \_\_\_\_\_ the travel documentation.

- a) to enclosing;                          c) to enclose;  
b) enclose;                                  d) to add.

9) Their car broke \_\_\_\_\_ on the way to the airport and they missed their flight.

- a) down;                                      c) too;  
b) into;                                        d) up.

10) Because of bad weather the flight was \_\_\_\_\_ for twelve hours.

- a) delay in;                                  c) holding up;  
b) hold up;                                  d) held up.

### Variant 6

**Look through the tests and choose the right answer.**

1) Decorate vegetables with some parsley: \_\_\_\_\_ .

- a) season;                                  c) bake;  
b) garnish;                                  d) mash.

2) Add salt and pepper before serving the food: \_\_\_\_\_ .

- a) season;                                  c) flavor;  
b) make spicy;                              d) simmer.

3) Cut the carrot into small squares: \_\_\_\_\_ .

- a) slice;                                      c) dice;  
b) carve;                                      d) cut.

4) We stayed in a marvelous hotel that even had \_\_\_\_\_ to keep your horse in.

- a) hive;                                        c) stable;  
b) room;                                        d) field.



- a) commission rate;                      c) points;  
b) bonus;                                      d) earning.

4) Notes and coins from another country are known as:

- a) cash;                                        c) foreign currency;  
b) money;                                      d) foreigners.

5) The hotel should \_\_\_\_\_ the bill so that guests can see the cost of each item.

- a) say;    c) explain;  
b) itemize;                                      d) underline in.

6) At the end of their stay, guests \_\_\_\_\_ at reception.

- a) checking out;                              c) check in;  
b) check out;                                  d) say good bye.

7) People who often use the same hotel are called:

- a) normals;                                    c) regulars;  
b) returners;                                  d) usuals.

8) Each day the \_\_\_\_\_ list shows the names of the guests expected.

- a) stop-go;                                    c) arrivals;  
b) records;                                      d) room.

9) People who have booked but don't arrive are known as:

- a) delays;                                      c) failures;  
b) no comers;                                  d) no shows.

10) One of the jobs of a receptionist is to \_\_\_\_\_ complaints.

- a) manage;                                    c) organize;  
b) deal with;                                  d) regret.

### **Variant 8**

**Look through the tests and choose the right answer.**

1) We decided that the cheapest way of giving people in wheelchairs access to the first floor was to install a:

- a) stair lift;                                    c) ramp;  
b) hoist;                                        d) fire exit.

2) Because many of our clients are elderly, we have a \_\_\_\_\_ in case they need medical attention.





### Variant 10

**Look through the tests and choose the right answer.**

1) With a \_\_\_\_\_ the current economic situation, we can expect fewer visitors this year.

- |               |             |
|---------------|-------------|
| a) demand to; | c) view at; |
| b) view into; | d) view to; |

2) \_\_\_\_\_ is a trip which informs people about resorts.

- |                          |                    |
|--------------------------|--------------------|
| a) business trip;        | c) luxurious trip; |
| b) familiarization trip; | d) holiday trip;   |

3) A plan of a journey is known as:

- |               |            |
|---------------|------------|
| a) itinerary; | c) scheme; |
| b) route;     | d) map;    |

4) A piece of advertising material sent to potential customers by post is called:

- |                  |                 |
|------------------|-----------------|
| a) mailing list; | c) post notice; |
| b) mailshot;     | d) advert leaf; |

5) If we had more money, we \_\_\_\_\_ our winters abroad.

- |                 |                  |
|-----------------|------------------|
| a) would spend; | c) are to spend; |
| b) will spend;  | d) had spent.    |

6) Mass-market tour operator is one who sells:

- |                         |                           |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| a) very cheap holidays; | c) very popular holidays; |
| b) very nice holidays;  | d) dangerous holidays;    |

7) A piece of paper exchanged for goods or services is:

- |             |                        |
|-------------|------------------------|
| a) voucher; | c) bill;               |
| b) receipt; | d) traveller's cheque; |

8) When you decide which room a guest will stay in, you:

- |                      |                     |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| a) give a room;      | c) allocate a room; |
| b) proscribe a room; | d) appoint a room;  |

9) «Sipping your cocktail» means:

- |           |           |
|-----------|-----------|
| a) drink; | c) smell; |
| b) spilt; | d) make.  |

10) T.Cook organized his first major continental \_\_\_\_\_ in 1885.



















- a) trekking;                      c) trek;  
b) jumping;                      d) exploring.

### Variant 19

**Look through the tests and choose the right answer.**

1) It was brought to our \_\_\_\_\_ that our tour information wasn't displayed last year.

- a) attention;                      c) direction;  
b) meeting;                      d) decision.

2) If they ask for \_\_\_\_\_, offer 80 p. to the person confirming the booking.

- a) incentives;                      c) privileges;  
b) discount;                      d) bonus.

3) One of the product weaknesses is lack of foreign language skills especially good quality, \_\_\_\_\_ interpretation in other language.

- a) on-site;                      c) respectful;  
b) qualified;                      d) intelligent.

4) There are four \_\_\_\_\_ tennis courts, which enables to play at night with pleasure.

- a) expensive;                      c) wonderful;  
b) floodlit;                      d) mysterious.

5) Would you like to visit a \_\_\_\_\_ area like the Antarctic?

- a) protected;                      c) designated;  
b) restricted;                      d) inhabited.

6) I'd like to give \_\_\_\_\_ to Mrs. Olsen. «Is there anything you would like to say?»

- a) the speech;                      c) the floor;  
b) the words;                      d) the deposit.

7) I'll \_\_\_\_\_ to France on the 1st of September.

- a) run towards;                      c) go to;  
b) buy in;                      d) set off;.

8) She can't \_\_\_\_\_ travel 1st class. She doesn't earn so much.

- a) afford to;                      c) leave to;  
b) advice to;                      d) afford too.



b) technology; d) cover.

8) «French Brasserie» is a:

- a) buffet, serving beer; c) café, serving liquor;  
b) buffet, serving wine; d) restaurant, serving oysters.

9) «High chair» is a special chair for:

- a) watching TV; c) feeding children;  
b) sitting in a café; d) resting in a lounge.

10) A good host should always be \_\_\_\_\_ and serve his guests first.

- a) courteous; c) rude;  
b) friendly; d) intelligent.

## REFERENCES

1. Английский язык для туристов в сфере профессиональной коммуникации. Часть I: English for Tourists in Professional Communication. Part I: учебное пособие. Москва: Изд-во «Директ-Медиа», 2016. 80 с.
2. Белеєнко Л.Б. Tourism Industry: навчальний посібник. К.: Видавничий дім «Слово», 2005. 168 с.
3. Богацький І.С., Дюканова Н.М. Бізнес-курс англійської мови. К.: ТОВВП Логос–М, 2006. 352 с.
4. Воробьева С.А., Киселева А.В. Деловой английский для гостиничного бизнеса. Business English for Hotel Industry. М, 2004. 336 с.
5. Губина Г. Г. Английский язык для туристов в сфере профессиональной коммуникации. English for Tourists in Professional Communication: учебное пособие. М.; Берлин : Директ-Медиа, 2020. 104 с.
6. Короленко Н. Є., Барсегян Е.З., Сербіновська А.М. Английский язык: сервис и туризм. Ростов на Дону: Феникс, 2008. 407 с.
7. Корунець І. В. Вступ до перекладознавства: підручник. Вінниця: Нова книга, 2008. 512 с.
8. Методичні вказівки до практичних занять з дисципліни «Іноземна (англійська) мова професійного спрямування (II рівень)» для студентів напряму підготовки 6.140103 «Туризм» / Д. В. Фурт; Донец. нац. ун-т економіки і торгівлі ім. М. Туган-Барановського, каф. іноз. мов. Кривий Ріг: ДонНУЕТ, 2016. 98 с.
9. Основи перекладу: граматичні та лексичні аспекти: навч. посіб. за ред. В.К. Шпака. К.: Знання, 2007. 310 с.
10. Сдобников В.В., Петрова О.В. Теория перевода. М.: АСТ Восток-Запад, 2006. 448 с.
11. Сербиновская А.М. Английский для турбизнеса и сервиса: учебник для ВУЗов. М.: Наука, 2006. 427 с.
12. Сидорук Г.І. Вступ до перекладознавства: навчальний посібник (англійською мовою). К.: НУБіП України, 2016. 320 с.
13. Смірнова Є.С., Михайлова Н.О., Юрчук Л.В. Professional English for Communication: навч.-мет. посібник. К.: НУХТ, 2012. 119 с.
14. Тарнопольський О.Б. Методика навчання іншомовної мовленнєвої діяльності у вищому мовному закладі освіти: навчальний посібник. К.: Фірма «ІНККОС», 2006. 248 с.
15. Тестові контрольні роботи з англійської мови для студентів спеціальності «Туризм» / уклад.: Л. М. Яценко, О. О. Черхава. К.: Вид. центр КНЛУ, 2018. 276 с.
16. Чужакин А. Мир перевода-7. Прикладная теория устного перевода и переводческой скорописи: курс лекций. М.: Р.Валент, 2003. 232 с.
17. Ashley A. Oxford Handbook of Commercial Correspondence. Oxford University Press, 2007. 304 p.
18. Brieger N., Sweeney S. The Language of Business English. L.: Prentice Hall, 1994.

19. Christopher S. Check in. English in tourism. Hertfordshire: Prentice Hall International (UK) Limited, 1992.

20. Duckworth M. High Season. English for Hotel and Tourism Industry. Workbook: Oxford University Press, 2002. 80 p.

21. English for Tourism Students: навч. посібник з дисципліни «Англійська мова за професійним спрямуванням» для студентів спеціальності 242 «Туризм» (англ. мовою) / С. Р. Бабушко. К. Звенигородка: КП «ЗВПП», 2016. 162 с.

22. English for the Travel Trade. Koln - Munchen, Naak, Stam Verlag, 1995.

23. Iwonna D., Margaret O. English for international Tourism. Edinbough: Longman, 2004. 144 p.

24. Leo J. English for the travel and tourism industry. Cambridge, 2001. 126 p.

25. Mariam J., Peter S. English for International Tourism. Harlow: Pearson Education Limited, 2007. 126 p.

26. Mike R. Tourism and cultural change. Clevedon: Channel View Publications, 2005. 181 p.

27. Robin W., Keith H. English for careers. Tourism. Oxford, 2010. 144 p.

28. Strutt P. English for international Tourism. Edinbough: Longman, 2003. 145 p.

29. Virginia E., Jenny D., Veronica C. Career Paths. Tourism. Berkshire: Express Publishing, 2011. 39 p.

30. Wood N. Tourism and Catering. Workshop. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2003. 40 p.

### **Internet-sources**

<https://headrushtech.com/blog/what-is-adventure-tourism.html>

<https://littlelosttravel.com/importance-of-ecotourism/>

<https://worldtraveltourismcouncil.medium.com/we-need-to-change-our-expectations-around-wildlife-tourism-707208f6ea72>

<https://www.owlgen.in/what-is-beach-tourism-mention-the-prerequisites-for-a-beach-to-be-considered-for-development-as-a-beach-resort/>

<https://www.npr.org/2020/01/23/798874112/trump-administration-targets-birth-tourism-with-new-visa-rule>

<https://www.news-medical.net/health/What-is-Medical-Tourism.aspx>

<https://uamt.com.ua/en/dental-tourism-in-ukraine.html>

<https://www.cnbc.com/2020/09/26/space-tourism-how-spacex-virgin-galactic-blue-origin-axiom-compete.html>

<https://dos.myflorida.com/cultural/info-and-opportunities/resources-by-topic/cultural-tourism-toolkit/what-is-cultural-tourism-basic-information>